

Twitter® FOR DUMMIES®

Learn to:

- Sign up, navigate the interface, and make connections
- Make your tweets unique
- Use the latest shortcuts and tools
- Promote your business or cause with Twitter

Laura Fitton, @pistachio
Michael E. Gruen, @gruen
Leslie Poston, @leslie



Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to
www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/twitter

Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes. *

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

Find out "HOW" at Dummies.com

*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.



Twitter®
FOR
DUMMIES®
2ND EDITION



by Laura Fitton, Michael E. Gruen, and Leslie Poston

@pistachio

@gruen

@leslie

Foreword by Jack Dorsey

Inventor, Founder, & Chairman, Twitter



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

Twitter® For Dummies®, 2nd Edition

Published by

Wiley Publishing, Inc.

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2010 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Trademarks: Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Twitter is a registered trademark of Twitter, Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ. FULFILLMENT OF EACH COUPON OFFER IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE OFFEROR.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit www.wiley.com/techsupport.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010930960

ISBN: 978-0-470-76879-2

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



About the Authors

Laura Fitton: Laura “@Pistachio” Fitton is leading the charge of sussing out intelligent and productive business uses of emergent technologies like Twitter, where she is read by thousands of community members. The first to publish a white paper on “Enterprise Microsharing” (popularly called “Internal Twitter”), she also writes for and runs the TouchBase blog and is an early beta tester of Seesmic and Qik. She relaunched Pistachio Consulting in September 2008 to connect businesses to new ideas and innovations using all the tools of microsharing. Pistachio comprises the TouchBase blog (covering business use of microsharing), the TouchBase Link Blog (stream of Twitter and microsharing articles for businesspeople, wherever they are published), and serves clients like Johnson & Johnson, Ford Motor Corporation, PeopleBrowsr, The Sister Project, Transplant-1, and CommuNteligence.

Laura is a magna cum laude graduate of Cornell University’s eclectic College Scholar program. In “past lives,” she studied science writing with Carl Sagan, rock climbed, sailed on a schooner, raised a niece, ran a hobby farm, traveled, and lived abroad.

Today she lives in Boston with two toddler daughters and a giant Leonberger. She practices Ashtanga yoga and plays ice hockey in her “spare” time and is a stroke survivor dedicated to raising awareness.

Michael E. Gruen: Michael E. Gruen has earned significant respect in the corporate sphere and within the startup community as a trusted advisor since 2003. In many cases, he has fulfilled the role of interim Chief Operations/Chief Technical Officer with several organizations in need of innovative leadership during crucial developmental periods. In 2006–2007, Michael briefly joined Morgan Stanley as an Analyst. Currently, Michael is CEO of a technology company in NYC and the Executive Director of Hamilton Venture Network.

Michael graduated cum laude from Hamilton College as a Senior Fellow with a BA in Computer Science. He lives in New York City and, on the off-hours, races taxis on his road bike through the city streets.

Leslie Poston: Leslie Poston is passionate about helping people and businesses find their way to success via technology. As a writer, she has more than 200 ebooks and books in her repertoire and several more in development.

As a speaker and leading authority in social networking, new media, brand and business development, she is the Founder and CEO of Uptown Uncorked social media and business development consultancy. She is also the cofounder of Film Pop!, a digital and new media services development agency for independent film as well as a long-time consultant to the entertainment industry for new media development and marketing.

A firm believer in translating online relationships and successes into the offline world, she has also founded Social Media Breakfast New Hampshire, PodCamp NH/ME, and the nationwide Strong Women in Tech initiative. Her educational background is in English Literature and Clinical Psychology.

When she isn't watching or playing sports (especially hockey and UFC/MMA), playing piano, hiking, sailing, skiing, supporting local bands, playing with her Rottweiler, or working, Leslie can be found on Twitter, meeting new people and making connections with the world.

Dedication

To our Twitter friends, thank you for your support, help, and assistance in writing this book. To our families, just plain thank you.

Authors' Acknowledgments

Writing and publishing this book was a team effort. The three of us would like to thank the Twitter community who have shared their ideas on BrightIdea (<http://tfd.brightidea.com> — thanks also to Matthew Greeley and the BrightIdea team for use of their Webstorm software) and have helped us target important facts to include in this book. We're also grateful to every follower on the @dummies account and everyone who retweeted for and about *Twitter For Dummies*.

If it were not for our wonderful editors and production team, this book would not have come together as quickly as it did. Thanks to Kelly Ewing, Beth Taylor, Jodi Jensen, Andy Cummings, Mary Corder, Mary Bednarek, Laura Miller, Elizabeth Kuball, Steven Miller, Mark Burstiner, and Jennifer Webb.

Many thanks to our acquisitions editor, Steve Hayes, for allowing us to write this book in the first place, and to Chris Webb and Ellen Gerstein at Wiley for tirelessly explaining Twitter to their colleagues and introducing Laura to Steve.

Laura particularly wants to thank her co-authors, mentors, friends, Twitter readers, and everyone who has written for, commented on, or read Pistachio Consulting's TouchBase blog. Special thanks to Alexa Scordato (@alexa), Alex Howard (@digiphile), and @mdy.

And a very special thanks to Caroline McCarthy (@caro) for lending an extra hand when we needed it most.

Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our online registration form located at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions and Editorial

Project Editor: Beth Taylor

Acquisitions Editor: Steve Hayes

Copy Editor: Beth Taylor

Technical Editor: Zachary Szukala

Editorial Manager: Jodi Jensen

Sr. Editorial Assistant: Cherie Case

Cartoons: Rich Tennant

(www.the5thwave.com)

Composition Services

Project Coordinator: Patrick Redmond

Layout and Graphics: Ashley Chamberlain,

Kelly Kijovsky, Ronald Terry,
Christine Williams

Proofreader: Shannon Ramsey

Indexer: Sharon Shock

Special Help

Elizabeth Kuball

Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies

Richard Swadley, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher

Mary Bednarek, Executive Acquisitions Director

Mary C. Corder, Editorial Director

Publishing for Consumer Dummies

Diane Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher

Composition Services

Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services

Contents at a Glance

<i>Foreword</i>	<i>xvii</i>
<i>Introduction</i>	1
<i>Part I: Twitter? Like Birds Do?</i>	7
Chapter 1: Sharing Your Thoughts, 140 Characters at a Time	9
Chapter 2: Hello, Twitter World!.....	19
Chapter 3: Stroll Around the Grounds: A Tour of the Twitter Interface.....	41
Chapter 4: Using Twitter Wherever You Think Best	61
<i>Part II: Joining Your Flock on Twitter</i>	73
Chapter 5: Tweeting It Up	75
Chapter 6: Who's Using Twitter	91
<i>Part III: Twitterring in High Gear</i>	103
Chapter 7: Tricks of the Twitter Gurus	105
Chapter 8: Twitter Minus Twitter.com	125
Chapter 9: Embracing the Twitter Ecosystem	139
<i>Part IV: Knowing Why We Twitter</i>	173
Chapter 10: Finding Your Tweet Voice	175
Chapter 11: Twitter for Business	195
Chapter 12: The Social Side of Twitter.....	215
Chapter 13: Changing the World, One Tweet at a Time.....	231
<i>Part V: The Part of Tens</i>	253
Chapter 14: Ten Twitter Tools	255
Chapter 15: Ten Useful Twitter-Based Services.....	261
Chapter 16: Ten Cool Ways to Use Twitter	265
<i>Glossary</i>	269
<i>Index</i>	273

Table of Contents

<i>Foreword</i>	xvii
-----------------------	------

<i>Introduction</i>	1
---------------------------	---

About This Book	1
New for Second Edition.....	2
Motivation.....	2
Conventions Used in This Book.....	3
What You're Not to Read.....	3
Foolish Assumptions.....	4
How This Book Is Organized	4
Part I: Twitter? Like Birds Do?.....	4
Part II: Joining Your Flock on Twitter.....	4
Part III: Twitterring in High Gear	5
Part IV: Knowing Why We Twitter	5
Part V: The Part of Tens	5
Icons Used in This Book	5
Where to Go from Here.....	6

<i>Part I: Twitter? Like Birds Do?</i>	7
--	---

Chapter 1: Sharing Your Thoughts, 140 Characters at a Time	9
---	----------

Figuring Out This Twitter Thing	10
How Individuals Use Twitter	12
How Organizations Use Twitter	13
Businesses That Use Twitter.....	14
Getting Your Tweet Wet	15
Tweeting Like a Pro	17
Branching Out with Third-Party Applications	17

Chapter 2: Hello, Twitter World!.....	19
--	-----------

Signing Up.....	19
Picking a Name.....	24
Finding Contacts	26
Using useful people-finding tools.....	27
Searching by using Twitter Search	29
Inviting Contacts.....	29
Say Hello! Your First Tweets	31
Customizing Your Profile.....	32
Changing your avatar	34
Changing your background	35
Using your background image to expand your profile	37

Adjusting Your Text-Messaging Settings	38
Controlling the text-message flow	39
Selecting your text notifications, person by person	40
Chapter 3: Stroll Around the Grounds: A Tour of the Twitter Interface	41
Starting Out on the Home Screen	41
The sidebar	43
The “What’s Happening?” box	44
The Twitter stream	45
Tweeting to One Specific Person: @Replies	46
Shhhh! Sending Private Notes via Direct Messages	48
Playing (Twitter) Favorites	50
Becoming a Renaissance Man via the Everyone Tab (RIP)	52
Seeing Who You Follow	54
Figuring Out Who’s Following You	55
Looking at What You’ve Tweeted	56
You’ve Been Listed	58
Chapter 4: Using Twitter Wherever You Think Best	61
The User Multi-Face: Interacting with Twitter Every Which Way	61
Text messages (SMS delivery)	62
RSS feeds	64
Desktop clients	65
TwitterFox	66
Widgets and gadgets	67
Preview: @anywhere	67
Going Mobile: The Key to Happiness	68
Part II: Joining Your Flock on Twitter.....	73
Chapter 5: Tweeting It Up	75
Finding People to Follow on Twitter	75
Look who’s talking	76
Searching for people	77
Using Simple Search	78
Inviting people personally, through Twitter	79
Checking out Twitter Lists	80
By following back	82
How to Follow People	83
Following People Even More Quickly with Hover	83
Replying to Tweets	84
Retweeting	86
Retweeting the old-fashioned way	87
Commentary on the retweet	87

Direct Messaging	88
Direct-messaging shorthand	88
Should I @ or DM?	89
Encouraging More Followers	89
Chapter 6: Who's Using Twitter.....	91
Tweeting with Regular People	91
Verified Accounts	93
Building Company Relationships with Twitter	94
Talking Politics with Actual Politicians	97
Following Celebrities on Twitter	98
Twitter Directories	99
Signing Up for Syndicated Material	100
Tweeting in Unison.....	101

Part III: Twittering in High Gear 103

Chapter 7: Tricks of the Twitter Gurus.....	105
Following Twitter Protocol.....	105
Language and abbreviations	107
Engaging others on Twitter	108
Tweeting frequency.....	108
Inserting Links into Your Tweets	109
Short-URL analytics	110
Using Your Twitter History and Favorites	111
Creating Lists	112
Following lists.....	114
GeoLocation.....	114
Erasing your tracks.....	116
Your Feeds, My Feeds, Everyone's Feeds.....	116
Deciphering Twitter Shorthand Code.....	117
D – direct message.....	118
F – follow	118
@ – reply.....	119
On/Off	119
Fav – favorite a tweet	119
Nudge	120
Stats	120
Get.....	121
Whois.....	121
Leave	121
On/Off username.....	121
Invite.....	122
Quit and Stop.....	122
Codes may come, and codes may go .. .	122

Chapter 8: Twitter Minus Twitter.com.....	125
Tweeting with Your Cellphone	126
Via text messaging	126
Via smartphones or PDAs.....	127
Location! Location! Location!	128
Using Twitter through Your E-Mail	128
Swimming Your Twitter Stream with RSS Feeds	130
Grabbing RSS feeds.....	131
Sending RSS feeds back to Twitter	131
Using Third-Party Services	132
Open Authentication – OAuth.....	134
Sharing Tweets All Around the Web	135
Auto-Tweeting.....	137
Chapter 9: Embracing the Twitter Ecosystem.....	139
Finding Interesting Twitter Talk with Search Tools.....	140
Twitter Search.....	140
TwitScoop	143
Hashtags.....	145
Expanding Your Twitter World by Using Clients	147
Desktop clients.....	148
Mobile clients	151
Keeping Your Tweets Short with URL Shorteners	154
Getting All Your Online Activity in One Place	
by Using Aggregators.....	156
Using Trending Topics: The Zeitgeist of Twitter	158
Playing with Twitter Games and Memes	159
Tag Clouds.....	161
Keeping in Contact with Visualization and Listening Tools.....	162
Google Alerts	163
Twitter Search.....	165
Radian6.....	167
Knowing Your Network with Follower and Following Tools.....	168
Part IV: Knowing Why We Twitter	173
Chapter 10: Finding Your Tweet Voice.....	175
Finding Your Voice, Whether for Business or Pleasure	175
Your business on Twitter	177
You as you on Twitter	178
Mixing business with pleasure.....	179
Identifying Your Audience.....	181
Viewing your network	181
Diversifying your network	182
Targeting specific networks	183
Measuring influence	183
Understanding your extended network.....	185

Keeping Your Tweets Authentic.....	186
Joining the conversation.....	187
Sharing links	187
Image is everything.....	188
Being genuine	190
Evangelizing your causes.....	190
Keeping Twitter Personal . . . but Not Too Personal.....	191
Protecting personal details	192
Maximizing privacy and safety.....	193
Chapter 11: Twitter for Business.....	195
The Business of Twitter.....	195
Putting Your Best Face Forward.....	196
Public relations	198
Customer service.....	200
Networking on Twitter	202
Offering Promotions and Products	203
Promoting Bands and Artists	204
Sharing Company Updates	206
Building Community.....	207
Conducting Research.....	210
Going Transparent.....	211
But, What If My Employees	212
Sharing Knowledge.....	213
Chapter 12: The Social Side of Twitter.....	215
Using Twitter as a Support System	215
Connecting with People.....	216
Making New Friends	220
Searching for topics of interest.....	221
Twitter-based events	222
To Follow or Not to Follow?	225
Getting Quick Answers.....	226
Accessing the experts	228
Information about breaking news.....	229
Getting recommendations	229
Sharing Information.....	229
Chapter 13: Changing the World, One Tweet at a Time	231
Twittering the Globe for Change	231
Charity events	232
Politics.....	234
Natural disasters	236
Helping others	237
Organizing People Online and in Real Life	238
Organizing on a small scale	240
Banding together for creative purposes	241
Planning an event.....	243

Engaging in Citizen Journalism	246
Citizen journalism hits the mainstream.....	246
Being a Twitter journalist	247
Tweeting accurate info.....	250
Gathering your journalistic tools.....	251
Part V: The Part of Tens.....	253
Chapter 14: Ten Twitter Tools	255
TweetDeck: Connecting with Many.....	255
Seesmic Desktop: Managing Multiple Accounts	256
CoTweet: Corporate Tweeting	257
Smartphone Clients Twitter, PocketTwit, and TwitterBerry	257
Twellow: Finding People to Follow.....	258
FriendorFollow: Managing Followers and Followings.....	258
TwtVite: Event Planning.....	259
Twitterfeed: Getting Your Blog Posts to Twitter	259
TwitPic and YFrog	260
Xpenser: Keeping Track of Your Expenses	260
Chapter 15: Ten Useful Twitter-Based Services	261
BreakingNews.....	261
StockTwits	261
Tweecious: Use Delicious to Organize the Links You Tweet	262
Tweetworks	262
ExecTweets.....	262
TweetGrid	263
Link Bunch.....	263
Tweetree	264
TwitterGrader	264
Blip.fm	264
Chapter 16: Ten Cool Ways to Use Twitter	265
Plain Old Networking	265
Breaking News.....	266
Travel	266
Finance.....	266
Food, Wine, and Spirits	267
Books.....	267
Music	267
Education.....	268
Charities and Causes.....	268
Event Planning	268
Glossary.....	269
Index	273

Foreword

Let's be honest: You're not a dummy.

Technologies are often designed to guard against the seemingly errant desires and mistakes of the commons. What's remarkable about this technology you intend to learn is its ability to immediately expose and evolve the true desires of the commons.

Although it may seem so, simple technologies like this don't happen over night. What looks like a story of 1 to 3 years actually has a shadow of over 15 years of work, dumb mistakes, false starts, late-night frenetic insight, and patient distillation. Twitter is a life's work built around three tenets: minimize thinking around communication, expose trends in local and global circles, and spark interaction. What you're holding in your hands describes an essence of communication upon which millions will build their own value.

While not everything can be conveyed in under 140 characters, the essence of Twitter can: "Expect the unexpected. Whenever possible, be the unexpected." I expect you to build something unexpected. Start small, start here.

Jack Dorsey
Inventor, Founder, & Chairman, Twitter
San Francisco, California

Introduction

H ave you heard? All the world's a-twitter!

Twitter is a tool that you can use to send and receive short, 140-character messages from your friends, from the organizations you care about, from the businesses you frequent, from the publications you read, or from complete strangers who share (or don't share) your interests.

As a user of Twitter, you choose whose updates you want to receive — which people you want to *follow*. In turn, other users can elect to follow *your* updates. You can send messages publicly for the entire Twitter community, semi-publicly to users whom you approve to receive your messages, or privately from one user to another. You can view these messages, called *tweets* (sometimes called *updates*), either on the Internet or on your cellphone.

Twitter has changed and enhanced the way that people communicate with each other, with brands and companies, and with social movements and initiatives. Twitter has empowered users to raise money for people in need, coordinate rescue efforts in the wake of a natural disaster, and alert authorities to emergencies and illegal activities both domestic and abroad.

Skeptical of what you can say in 140 characters? The first paragraph of the Introduction weighs in at 41 characters. This paragraph? 137.

You may also find, over time, that you communicate more effectively and that your writing becomes shorter and more to the point. You can say a lot within very little space; and because it takes only a little time to read and update, you may be surprised about how much value you, your friends, and your family can extract from Twitter.

About This Book

We, the authors (Laura, Michael, and Leslie), aren't employees, representatives, or shareholders in Twitter. The opinions that we give in this book represent what's worked for us and our networks, but not necessarily the Twitter world at large. We've been on Twitter for quite a while, and we have a good sense about how people are using it. But Twitter is a living, breathing,

and constantly changing dynamic community. Much of Twitter's value comes from the ecosystem of tools built by others to work together with Twitter. Hundreds of these new tools launch every month. Twitter itself may change its feature set, its privacy features, or general direction overnight, which changes the way that people use it.

In fact, since the first edition, Twitter has released a number of enhancements to its interface that make it even easier and more accessible to interact with the community. Although the layout and the exact location of everything may change around a bit, the basics of Twitter likely will always be the same. After you understand how the service works, you can pretty easily find any feature that may have moved since the publication of this book. **Note:** While things change, keep in touch with @dummies or our personal accounts (@pistachio, @gruen, and @leslie) for the latest on our thoughts about Twitter. You can also keep up with the Twitter For Dummies community at www.TwitterForDummies.org, or through the #dummies hashtag (if you're up-to-date on hashtags).

New for Second Edition

In this edition, we've updated our screenshots and how-to's to reflect the latest changes in the Twitter.com interface. (However, do remember that Twitter is an Internet product and is subject to change at any time, so please use our guides as guides, not the be-all and end-all of the Twitter experience.)

In addition to feature changes, we also included a smattering of new case studies and examples that we thought you'd find relevant in understanding how the world has adjusted to Twitter. We reached out to some of the companies, not-for-profits, and individuals who we feel are using Twitter in innovative and surprising ways, so look out for them in sidebars as you go through the book.

Lastly, the *Twitter For Dummies*, 2nd Edition, author team has had a few changes: Leslie, previously known as @geechee_girl, is now known as @leslie. Laura still goes by @pistachio, and is the Founder and CEO of oneforty (or @oneforty on Twitter). Michael now protects his tweets out of suppressed teenage rebellion and for no otherwise discernable reason.

Motivation

We wrote this book to help more people understand, try out, and benefit from the incredible results and opportunities that can happen on Twitter.

When we released the first edition, many considered Twitter a fad. However, Twitter's been changing lives and businesses for years now. Major news organizations and companies have adopted Twitter profiles and accounts to interact with their communities 24/7. Twitter can be fun, productive, supportive, and surprisingly powerful.

Just ask Laura. Before she "got" Twitter, she was practically homebound with two kids under two, trying to rebuild her personal and professional network in a whole new city. Twitter has been like a generous ocean. Treasured new friends, mentors, and incredible opportunities continually wash up on her beach. After 12 months of meeting incredible people and all her business leads, along with speaking at events all around the world, Laura finally took the hint and refocused her entire career on Twitter itself, to help others experience the benefits of mobile social networking. In 2009, she founded OneForty (oneforty.com), a company dedicated to enhancing users' Twitter experiences by providing Twitter with its missing App Store.

Conventions Used in This Book

In this book, we stick to a few conventions to help with readability. Whenever you have to enter text, we show it in **bold**, so you can easily see it. Mono font text denotes an e-mail address or Web site URL. We capitalize the names of Twitter pages and features — such as Settings. Numbered lists guide you through tasks that you must complete in order, from top to bottom; you can read bulleted lists in any order you like (from top to bottom, bottom to top, or any other way).

Note: Screenshots in this book show you what the interface was like in spring 2010, and significant changes took place four times during the writing of this book. If you ever run into Michael and he seems a bit agitated when you mention Twitter's ever-changing interface, it's because he had to re-shoot screenshots and rewrite descriptions three times each edition. He could certainly use a hug.

What You're Not to Read

We wrote this book for the first-time Twitter users. If you've already created an account that has some friends and followers, you can probably skip the chapters that talk about how to sign up and get moving — but you might find it useful to review the sections on how to dress up your profile. If you're a business and have already gotten rolling on Twitter, you can probably safely ignore many of the starting chapters and check out Parts III and IV. If you're a Twitter pro and could have probably written this book, feel free not to read anything, use this book as a doorstop, and recycle it when you're done. Okay, we're kidding — it'll make a great gift for the Twitter-skeptics in your life!

Foolish Assumptions

In this book, we make the following assumptions:

- ✓ You're at least 13 years of age. (You have to be at least 13 years old to have a Twitter account.)
- ✓ You have access to a computer and the Internet (and know how to use them!).
- ✓ You have a working e-mail address that you can access.
- ✓ You have a mobile phone and know how to send text messages (if you want to access Twitter by using your mobile phone).
- ✓ *Bonus:* You have a smartphone (if you want to use a mobile Twitter application).
- ✓ You can read.

How This Book Is Organized

Like other *For Dummies* books, each chapter in *Twitter For Dummies, 2nd Edition*, is self-contained, and you can read them in any order you want. However, we've organized the book into five parts; and, if you read them in order, you will gain a strong understanding of the Twitter landscape, from signing up to tweeting like a pro.

Part I: Twitter? Like Birds Do?

Part I introduces you to the very basics of Twitter, from understanding how the Twitter feeds work to getting up and running with an account. You can figure out how to find and invite your friends to Twitter and start communicating with them in public and in private. We also look at the different things that you can do with the Twitter.com interface, including some things that may not be immediately obvious.

Part II: Joining Your Flock on Twitter

After you become familiar with the basics of Twitter, you probably want to know how to find the sorts of people you want to follow and how you can start communicating with them in a way that makes sense on the medium. We give you all that information in this part, and we provide a list of many resources that you may find useful in getting Twitter to work best for you.

Part III: Twittering in High Gear

Part III goes in depth into all the ways that you can interact with the Twitter interface, from desktop clients to mobile phone tricks to short-hand commands that can drastically improve the efficiency and information that you can get from Twitter. We also go over third-party solutions, search tools, and other content discovery tools and metrics that you may want to try.

Part IV: Knowing Why We Twitter

In Part IV, we ask you to ask the big questions about why you'd want to use Twitter and what sort of presence you might want to cultivate. We go through the different ways in which people, businesses, not-for-profits, and other organizations can use Twitter. We also provide case studies and examples for how brands and organizational presences have benefited other users on Twitter and themselves, and how they've successfully used Twitter to improve their brands' transparency and customer relations. Lastly, we show how Twitter has started to effect social change and how grassroots efforts by users have helped raise money, expose news, and even elect presidents.

Part V: The Part of Tens

The final section is typical of every *For Dummies* book. In these chapters, we provide you with highlights of our ten favorite Twitter tools, ten favorite ways to use Twitter, and even some other applications that have the same or similar functionality as Twitter that you can check out.

Icons Used in This Book

Icons in this book point out important tidbits for you to look at, remember, and absorb. In this section, we go over the icons that we use throughout the book to guide you on your Twitter journey.



The Tip icon points out helpful information that's likely to improve your Twitter experience.



The Remember icon marks interesting or useful facts that we cover in detail in earlier chapters or something that's so important that you need to remember it while you're using Twitter.



The Privacy icon denotes that you should be careful about the Twitter activities that we're discussing. You may find yourself with a security or privacy concern.



The Warning icon highlights potential danger. When we use this icon, we're letting you know that you should proceed with caution.



Whenever you see this icon, rest assured that we're letting our inner geeks run wild. Here we point out information that's interesting but not absolutely necessary to your understanding of the topic at hand. If you want all the details you can get, read these paragraphs. If you just want to know the basics, skip it.

Where to Go from Here

If you haven't used Twitter before, mosey on over to Chapter 1 and start reading — we can get you up to speed in no time. If you've been using Twitter for a while and understand where everything is, but you want a better idea of how to use the service, head over to Part III, where we shift Twitter into high gear. If Part III is old hat for you, Part IV (particularly Chapters 11, 12, and 13) goes over some interesting business, personal, and not-for-profit stories that can help you grow as a Twitter user.

With that, we'll see you online!

Part I

Twitter? Like Birds Do?

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"This is getting downright annoying. He tweets me every time he's about to go down a chimney."

In this part . . .

Iou may find getting started with Twitter a bit daunting because Twitter.com doesn't make obvious why you'd want to use Twitter in the first place.

In this part, we cover the basics of why you may want to use Twitter and how to set yourself up with a Twitter profile that you can call your own. Additionally, we show you where to find all the basic stuff you need so that you can get started in no time.

Chapter 1

Sharing Your Thoughts, 140 Characters at a Time

In This Chapter

- ▶ Understanding what Twitter's all about
 - ▶ Seeing how individuals, organizations, and businesses use Twitter
 - ▶ Discovering what you can do with Twitter
 - ▶ Looking into third-party Twitter applications
-

Tou may have heard of Twitter but have no idea what it actually is. Twitter is basically a powerful *mobile* social network that allows you to keep up with the people, businesses, and organizations you're interested in — whether you know them personally or not. It also lets you share what you're doing with the world — everyone from your family and friends to complete strangers. (You'll have to bear with us to find out why you would want to do that.) Harvard Professor Andrew McAfee (@amcafee) describes Twitter this way: "With Twitter, my friends are never far away."

And www.twitter.com itself says that *The New York Times* calls Twitter "one of the fastest-growing phenomena on the Internet." *Time* magazine says, "Twitter is on its way to becoming the next killer app," and *Newsweek* noted that "Suddenly, it seems as though all the world's a-twitter." What will you think?

Every day, we see dozens of new ideas and ways to use Twitter. In this chapter, we do our best to introduce the basic ideas and explain how Twitter works and why it's so powerful.

Figuring Out This Twitter Thing

Twitter is a fast-evolving, surprisingly powerful new way to exchange ideas and information, and to stay in touch with people, businesses, and organizations that you care about. It's a social network — a digital abstraction that represents who you know and who you're interested in (whether you know them personally or not) — that you can access from your computer, your cellphone, or anywhere with an Internet connection.

Twitter has one central feature: It lets users instantly post entries of 140 characters or less, known as *tweets*, through the www.twitter.com site or your cellphone, or by way of the numerous applications that are available for both. (We talk more about the different ways to tweet in Chapters 8 and 9.)

On the most basic level, Twitter is a communications network that combines elements of Short Message Service (SMS or *texting*), instant-messaging communication tools, such as AOL Instant Messenger (AIM), and blog publishing software, such as Blogger or WordPress. Like blogging, your tweets are generally published to the world at large where anyone can read them on Twitter.com (unless you choose a private account, so that only those you choose can see your tweets). Unlike blogging, you're limited to just 140 characters. Like instant messaging, you can communicate directly with people (through direct messages), but unlike instant messaging, each message has its own unique resource locator (URL), so each message is actually a Web page. Instant messaging also lacks the social network "following" features of Twitter and basic ideas like "publish-subscribe" and one-to-many broadcasting of messages. Think you can't say anything meaningful in 140 characters? Think again. Not only are twitterers innovating clever forms of one-liners, haiku, quotes, stories, and humor, but they're including links — in 23 percent of all tweets by one measure — and links carry a lot more information and context. Writing 140-character messages seems trivial. But headlines and very short advertising copy are famously hard to do really well — and the right words can be quite powerful. Consider: "Man Lands On Moon."

The idea of Twitter sounds simple — deceptively simple. When you think about how millions of people around the world are posting Twitter messages, following other people's Twitter streams, and responding to one another, you can start to see the significance behind Twitter's appeal. In fact, Twitter has noticed that it acts like a "pulse of the planet," a zeitgeist of what everyone is thinking about and doing and feeling, right now. Now that's pretty interesting!

True, Twitter can look like it's full of noise. But, once you find interesting people and accounts to follow, your Twitter stream shifts from a cascade of disjointed chatter to one of the most versatile, useful online communications tools yet seen — that is, if you take the time to learn to use that tool correctly.

In the beginning was the word: The origins of Twitter

Twitter connects a wildly diverse array of people from all over the world, erasing barriers and boundaries all the way. Some of the media hype has called Twitter nothing short of revolutionary. And because Twitter is so easily customizable and open-ended, it has continued to become more and more popular with people and companies.

But Twitter's beginnings, like so many other digital innovations, were humble. Twitter was built in 2006 by three technology entrepreneurs — Evan Williams, Biz Stone, and Jack Dorsey. All three were then employed by a San Francisco-based Web company called Odeo, which specialized in publishing software for *podcasting* (audio broadcasting over the Web). Dorsey was the one who came up with the original concept, and the three subsequently built it as an internal tool for Odeo employees. At first, they had no idea that it would catch on the way it did.

A management breakup led to Twitter and Odeo's reincorporation under a new company, Obvious Corp., and shortly thereafter, Twitter was released to the public. Already a favorite among Silicon Valley's geek elite, Twitter

had its real coming-out party at the South by Southwest Interactive Festival (SXSWi) — an annual confab of tech and media innovators in Austin, Texas — in March 2007 when it was about a year old. Not only did it win the conference's Web Award honor, but its rapid-fire messages became the *de facto* coordinating and communicating tool for thousands of SXSWi attendees and the company became the digital world's new darling.

Shortly after SXSWi 2007, Twitter was spun off once again, becoming its own company separate from Obvious Corp. — Twitter, Inc.

Now, millions of people use Twitter to keep in touch with family and friends, to launch and expand careers, to connect businesses and reach customers, to build a brand, to report the news, and a whole lot more. No two people or businesses use Twitter in exactly the same way, and that fact is part of the secret to Twitter's success. You might argue there isn't really a wrong way to use Twitter, (as long as you mind the terms of service and don't try to actively do harm) so you get to completely tool it to your own needs.



Twitter is a great way for you or your company to connect with large numbers of people quickly and personally, just like you were having a conversation. In tech-speak, Twitter is a microblogging or microsharing tool; however, you can more easily think of Twitter as a giant cocktail party with dozens of conversations you can join (or start) at any moment. Or, if you prefer a work metaphor, Twitter is like the office water cooler where any number of informal (or formal) conversations can take place.

If you're familiar with blogs, instant messaging, and Web-based journals, you can start to understand what makes Twitter so unique. The Web offers a lot of information. Twitter can turn those long articles, lengthy conversations, and far-reaching connections into easily digestible facts, thoughts, questions, ideas, concepts, and sound bites. In other words, when you have only 140 characters, you have to be succinct.

How Individuals Use Twitter

Tomorrow I begin the archeological dig that is my desk. I will Twitter each item as I process it.

— Author and comedian John Hodgman via Twitter, December 4, 2008
(<http://twitter.com/hodgman/status/1039327071>)

Looking at Twitter for the first time, you might be compelled to ask, “But *why* are all these people, many of whom seem like just random strangers, talking?” At first glance, Twitter seems flooded with disjointed conversations, interactions, and information. You can find news headlines, political debates, observations on the weather, and requests for advice. The idea of Twitter can be a bit confusing for new *twitterers* (people who use Twitter).

People have many reasons for using Twitter:



- ✓ **To connect:** Most people start using Twitter to forge connections and be a part of a community. Others just want to be heard. Twitter lets millions of people around the world hear what you have to say; then it lets you connect with the ones who want to hear from or talk to you about your passions, interests, and ideas.
- For more on the social side of Twitter, check out Chapter 12.
- ✓ **To record:** Some people tweet as a way to take notes on life. They use Twitter at conferences, events, or just walking around and may even jog their own memories later about something that happened or what they’ve discovered. For example, if you’re walking down the street and you notice a new restaurant you want to check out when you have more time, you might tweet about that. Now everyone who follows you knows about this interesting-looking place, and you have a way of remembering to go back there yourself.
- ✓ **To share:** Some people use Twitter to share what they think, read, and know. They may tweet links to great articles or interesting items, or they may tweet original thoughts, ideas, hints, and tricks. Some tweet notes from speeches or classes, and others share choice bits of their inner monologue. Even when this information can get pretty obscure, with millions of listeners, someone’s bound to find it informative or interesting.
- ✓ **To stay in touch:** Whole families and groups of long-term friends use Twitter to stay in touch. Twitter can send public or private notes to your friends, and it stores all sent messages, which means that you don’t lose your thoughts when you close your browser (or your desktop application). Connecting to one another on Twitter is a great way to preserve an initial contact, such as at an event or conference, in a way that lets you gradually get to know them more over time.

Twitter is pretty easy to actually use, meaning everyone from your 8-year-old cousin to your 92-year-old great-grandma can figure out how to use Twitter and say hello. Because you can access Twitter by using either a computer or cellphone (or both!), it fits into mobile lifestyles and brings you closer to the everyday thoughts of those you're interested in.

How Organizations Use Twitter

Barack Obama's successful presidential campaign in 2008 was perhaps the best example of an organization using Twitter to solicit donations, raise awareness, and call people to action. During the campaign, tens of thousands of Twitter users followed Barack Obama at <http://twitter.com/barackobama>, where campaign staff used the service to provide the then-candidate's whereabouts on the trail and kick off new donation initiatives. (Even though election laws mean the account can no longer be updated, it has hundreds of thousands of followers at the time of this writing.)

The power of Twitter works for much smaller organizations, too. Groups such as churches and local charities can use Twitter to provide an additional way for members to connect, plan, and reach out beyond their immediate community. Preachers tweet about their planned sermons, youth group directors tweet about events, and local soup kitchens tweet when they need help. Whether it's extra hands for a project, far-reaching assistance with a fundraiser, or some other big idea, Twitter can enable organizations operating on a budget to think on their feet.

New organizations have also sprung up through Twitter. Some people have started their own donation campaigns on Twitter and encouraged other Twitter users to donate and then tweet about it. But Twitter isn't just for charities. Enthusiasts of just about any interest have banded together on Twitter. For example, you can find organizations for food and wine lovers, sharing recipes and swapping restaurant reviews on Twitter. (You can search for the subjects that interest you on <http://search.twitter.com>.)

For example, musicians use Twitter to spread the word about concerts, song releases, charitable efforts, and their daily lives as celebrities. (Even Britney Spears has an official Twitter account: @BritneySpears.) John Mayer (@JohnCMayer) live-tweeted from the GRAMMY Awards. Musicians working hard to make a name have used Twitter to engage thriving, and involved, fan bases.

Twitter has also been a big help for community efforts. Whether it's Amber Alerts, fundraisers, searching for kidney donors, or rescuing James Buck from an Egyptian jail (<http://twitter.com/jamesbuck/statuses/786571964>), Twitter has shone as a tool for social good. Plenty of people in the world want to lend a helping hand, and Twitter's platform makes it easy, in real time, with a global network of connections.

Businesses That Use Twitter



If individuals, community groups, and nonprofit groups can use Twitter (as we discuss in the preceding sections), businesses large and small can use it, too.

Discount airline JetBlue uses Twitter to advertise fare specials, put out weather alerts, and conduct customer service (<http://twitter.com/jetblue>). Coffee retailer Starbucks uses Twitter to connect with customers and spread company culture (<http://twitter.com/starbucks>), as does online shoe retailer Zappos.com (<http://twitter.com/zappos>). Early on, computer manufacturer Dell started a Twitter account (<http://twitter.com/delloutlet>) to promote special deals on returned equipment. It announced in December 2008 that its Twitter account has generated over a million dollars in revenue. Predictably, Dell now has many more accounts: www.dell.com/twitter.

So why would a business want to establish a presence on Twitter?

- ✓ To network with customers and see what they're saying.
- ✓ To answer questions.
- ✓ To finely tool a company image.
- ✓ To poll and pull in feedback.
- ✓ To take advantage of an innovative form of 140-character advertising.
If you have a limited quantity of something to sell in a short amount of time, you can't find a better channel than Twitter to make it known.
- ✓ Even a business with *no* customers on Twitter can take advantage of five off-platform benefits that we talk about in Chapter 11.

But none of these reasons really scratch the surface of why so many people use Twitter. Whether you want to use it for mostly personal or mostly business reasons, or even a blend of the two, you'll find that your reasons for tweeting multiply over time while Twitter becomes more and more useful to you. Each chapter in this book clearly explains why Twitter has caught on like wildfire and how you can join in the fun (and enjoy the business benefits) of this microsharing service.



If you're not sure where to begin, you'll be glad to know that many professions are comparing notes about the best ways to use Twitter. For example, ExecTweets (www.exectweets.com) shines the spotlight on executives who use Twitter. You can find dozens of industry-specific blog posts and guides on how to use Twitter most effectively. Laura's Twitter consulting practice, Pistachio Consulting, started one list of these guides here: <http://pistachioconsulting.com/featured-articles/industry-guides>.



For more on putting Twitter to use for your business, turn to Chapter 11.

Getting Your Tweet Wet

Having breakfast and getting ready to ride. 6 hours today...

— Cyclist Lance Armstrong via Twitter, December 20, 2008

(<http://twitter.com/lancearmstrong/status/1069006436>)

When you log into Twitter, a question appears in large print across the top of the screen: “What’s Happening?” The most basic activity on Twitter is to answer that question, whenever and however you feel like it. The beauty of this simple question is that you can answer it in so many different ways, and your answer can spark so many conversations.

Instead of “What’s Happening?”, Twitter’s prompt used to be “What are you doing?” As more people were using Twitter, the company realized that many of its users were ignoring the former question and instead reported on things more interesting to them, not necessarily about what they were doing. To that end, Twitter is inherently flexible and open-ended, so you don’t need to stick to a rigid set of rules. In effect, Twitter is what you make it. Feel free to tell us what you’re doing.

Sometimes, the Twitter prompt has users stuck in a rut, freezing up out of self-consciousness, concerned that they’re not doing it right, or are stuck with just plain old 140-character writer’s block. You know these Twitter accounts when you see them: The twitterers end up twittering only about what they had for breakfast, that they’re leaving the office to go home and watch 24, or various other mundane life updates that don’t spark much conversation. Many of these Twitter users don’t end up getting involved in the Twitter culture, and some then stop using Twitter altogether.



If you’re brand-new to Twitter and you’re ready to try it out, turn to Chapter 2 for information on how to sign up, customize your profile, and adjust your settings. Chapter 3 fills you in on the Twitter.com interface — it’s sort of a road map of the site, so you know where everything is.



You can get much more value from Twitter — and have a lot more fun — if you just let yourself relax and talk about what’s on your mind. Passionate about aardvarks? Send out a few tweets with aardvark facts and see who talks back to you. Have a burning desire to change careers from accounting to roadie for a rock band? Talk about it! You can probably get a response or two.

How Twitter differs from Facebook

“Facebook is closed, Twitter is open. Facebook is structured, Twitter is scattered. Facebook is people you’ve known, and many you might have wanted to forget; Twitter is people you never knew, but might have wanted to meet. And because of all of that, barring an acquisition or failure to execute . . . Twitter will overtake Facebook and become the backbone of the real-time web.”

— Brightidea.com CEO Matthew Greeley
(@brightidea)

If you’re a regular Facebook user, you may be wondering how Twitter is any different from the status updates that are part of Facebook. The main way in which Twitter differs from Facebook is that with Facebook, by default you’re broadcasting your status updates to people you’ve allowed to be your friend and view your profile on Facebook. On Twitter, you’re by default sharing your updates with the world. You can protect your Twitter updates so that only people you allow can see them, but that’s not very common. Instead, most people leave their tweets open to the public, which means anyone who’s interested in what you’re saying can follow you—and you can choose to follow them back or just ignore them. You don’t have to know the people you follow, and your followers don’t have to know you.

Replies work much differently on Facebook, and as a result, the system is much less dynamic. On Facebook when people reply to your status update, their replies appear with your update itself, which moves farther and farther down in the feed, until eventually it’s not even seen anymore. (These replies, however, are preserved on the profiles of the users who initially shared something.) On Twitter, the most recent replies are always at the top of the stream, which means the conversation continues to be relevant and visited for as long as people are talking.

On Twitter, people frequently repeat your tweets for their own followers. It’s commonly called *retweeting*. If your band is playing at a club on Friday, you might tweet, “MyBand rocks out Blondie’s, 123 Main St, LA, Fri 9/3 @ 9 pm www.myband.com for tickets”. If any of your followers want to spread the word, they might tweet, “RT @yourname: MyBand rocks out Blondie’s, 123 Main St, LA, Fri 9/3 @ 9 pm www.myband.com for tickets”. That RT is shorthand for *retweet*, and by putting your name after RT, they’re letting their followers know you’re the one who originally posted it (and that you’re the one whose band is playing at Blondie’s). If you want to encourage people to retweet something, you can even put something like, “Please RT” in the tweet. What all this means is that your tweets can spread like wildfire, and you can get the word out (fast!) about the things you want to share.

To make retweeting even easier, Twitter has a Retweet link right next to the reply link.

It’s really striking to see how much faster, more easily, and farther messages spread on Twitter. Sharing and passing along information is what makes Twitter a sensitive global news detector, a powerful tool for social change or marketing, and an interesting and dynamic flow of ideas and information.

Tweeting Like a Pro

We'd like to thank you in 140 characters or less. And we just did!

— Twitter co-founder Jack Dorsey, accepting Twitter's Web Award honor at the South by Southwest Interactive Festival in March 2007

Simply put, a *tweet* is what you call the 140-character message that you send out onto the Web by using Twitter.

Why call it a tweet? It's convenient, tying into the whole theme of birds chirping. Also, like much of the Twitter vocabulary, *tweet* is a term coined by the users, rather than the company — evidence of the playful loyalty that avid users have with the Twitter brand. In fact, it wasn't until late Winter 2010 that Twitter officially adjusted updates to tweets, based on how the world talked about tweeting.

Twitter limits the length of tweets to 140 characters (letters, numbers, symbols, and spaces), a length that may seem short at first. And it is. How in the heck are you supposed to say anything in this tiny bit of space? How can you distill your company pitch into 140 characters, review a book, or summarize a movie in so few words? With time, you get used to this length restriction. Perhaps one of the coolest things about Twitter is that the more you use it, the easier it is to write short, sharp, clear tweets. As you get more accustomed to tweeting, you find that squeezing thoughts into 140 characters often makes you refine the point in ways you wouldn't have thought of before.



Some Twitter users have reported becoming better salespeople offline, or better writers, because Twitter's mandated brevity forces you to focus your thoughts into concise, direct sound bites. Because Twitter's communication format encourages brief but engaging ideas, Twitter sparks conversations faster than almost any other Internet conversation format.

Branching Out with Third-Party Applications

At the risk of sounding like a Twitter cheerleader, don't ask "What *can* you do with Twitter?" Instead, ask yourself, "What *can't* you do with Twitter?" From its inception, Twitter has had a very open *application program interface* (API), which is the geek-speak term for code that lets external developers and programmers weave the Twitter service and functions into other applications and services on the Web. The open nature of the Twitter API has led some people to come up with very interesting uses for Twitter.

The most popular Twitter applications are downloadable client programs that let you manage and update your Twitter feed from your desktop; vying for most popular are TweetDeck (www.tweetdeck.com), Seesmic (www.seesmic.com), Twirl (<http://www.twirl.org/>), and Tweetie, (www.atebits.com/tweetie), but people access Twitter dozens of ways, including (about half of average use) Twitter.com.

On the iPhone, Tweetie 2 became such a dominant player, Twitter Inc. acquired the company as of April of 2010. By the time this reaches print, it should be the company's official iPhone Twitter client.

Thousands of tools already exist. Some are incredibly useful, like Co-tweet and HootSuite which help you manage multiple accounts and a lot of information, while others help you integrate with other social networks, like FourSquare or Facebook. (We cover these tools in Chapter 9.) The beauty of Twitter means that any application can be beneficial if Twitter users respond to it. Because Twitter can do so much, so simply, the array of third-party applications offers a nice balance of work and play.

If you want to stick with using Twitter just as a status update service, that's fine. In fact, many people do. But if you want to really maximize your use of Twitter, you may want to check out all the neat ways you can use it — for example, to track expenses, request restaurant reviews, follow gas prices, read the news, find out the weather in your area, give hurricane relief to people in need, fundraise, drive cancer awareness, and a whole lot more. This diversity of use makes Twitter a vibrant community that you can tap into both for fun and for business.

Where the name Twitter comes from

We want to get this out of the way: Yes, Twitter is a silly name. It calls to mind images of birds chirping, or the all-night gab-fests at junior high sleepovers. But to be fair, a whole lot of Web services have silly names — in an industry peppered with companies that have names such as Meebo and Veoh, a company called Twitter doesn't stand out as having a particularly odd moniker. (Bing and Google are chuckle-worthy too, if you think about it.) Co-founder Jack Dorsey has argued from the start that Twitter is a fitting name for the service. In an early interview with Jack, Ev, and Biz, (when Twitter was still owned by Obvious,

Inc.), the founders answered a question about where the name came from. Jack said, "If you look it up in the dictionary, it's actually just [a] short burst of activity, and it's something that birds do. It's just like chirping." In this case, the name Twitter reflects the short bursts of "noise" (or tweets) that Twitter users make when they conduct their digital banter. (If you haven't made the connection already, this definition explains why Twitter's logo is a cartoon bird. To watch a video of the interview in its entirety, go to www.podtech.net/home/?s=obvious%2C+twitter.)

Chapter 2

Hello, Twitter World!

In This Chapter

- ▶ Getting your Twitter party started
 - ▶ Coming up with a good Twitter name
 - ▶ Mixing it up: Making friends and saying hi
 - ▶ Standing out with a unique Twitter profile
 - ▶ Getting SMS tweets on your cellphone (or not)
-

Twitter is a deceptively simple, yet powerful conversation platform that enables users to broadcast short messages to the world and to connect more closely with people they care about. Intrigued about why this simple-looking tool is so well-loved and popular? Then this chapter is the place to get your feet wet. It usually takes a while of using Twitter to get what about it could be really interesting and valuable to your life. Luckily, Twitter is not only easy to use, but it's also quick to set up and a piece of cake to get going.

In this chapter, we go over the very basics of Twitter: getting a username, beautifying your profile, finding people to communicate with, and getting yourself situated and ready to start tweeting like a pro in no time.

Signing Up

For many Web services, signing up is the easiest part of an otherwise complicated process. With Twitter, using the site is just as easy as signing up.

To sign up for a Twitter account, follow these steps:

- 1. Use your Web browser to navigate to the Twitter Web site at www.twitter.com.**

The Twitter splash page appears, as shown in Figure 2-1.

2. Click the large green Sign Up Now button.

The signup page appears, as shown in Figure 2-2.

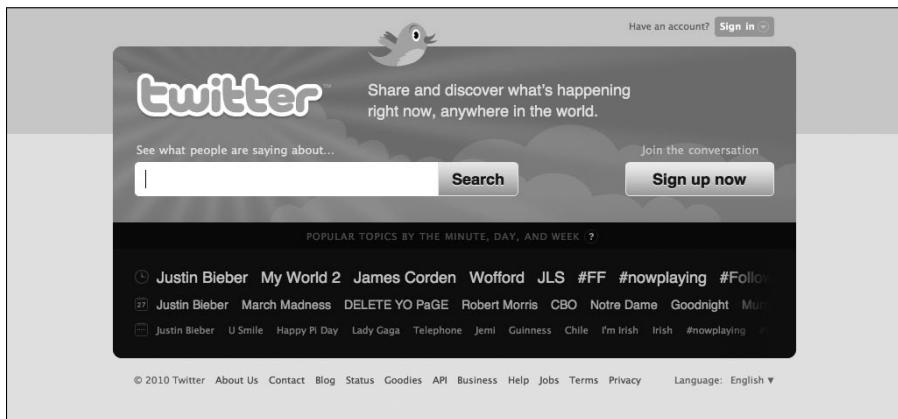


Figure 2-1:
The Twitter
splash page.

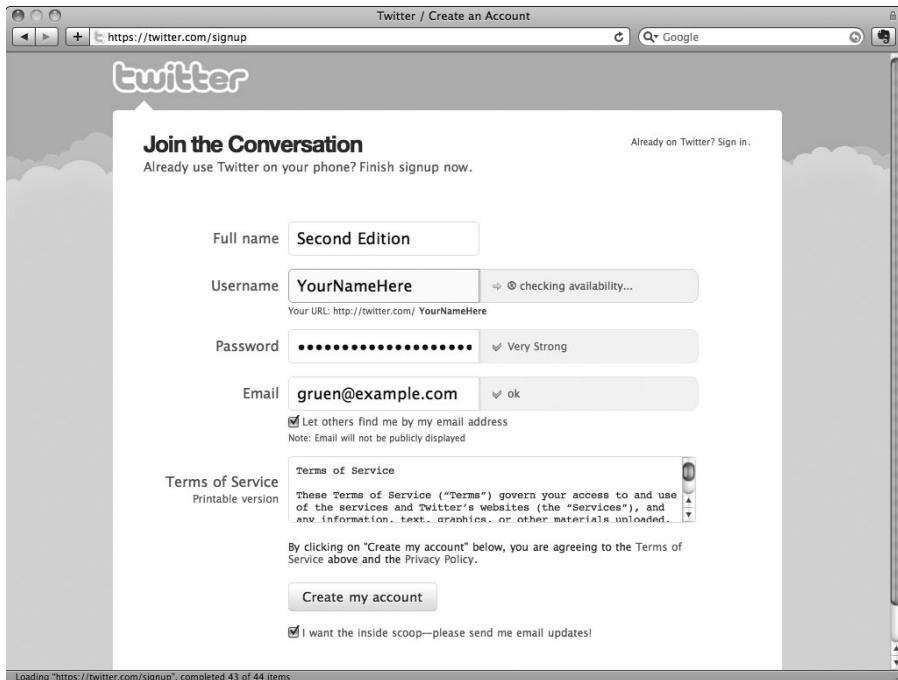


Figure 2-2:
The very
short and
simple
Twitter
signup
page.

3. Type your desired username and basic information in the appropriate text boxes.

The only information Twitter requires from you is a username, a password of your choice, and a unique e-mail address where Twitter can contact you for notifications. (You'll probably take longer to decide on a username than to actually sign up. We cover how to choose a good Twitter name in the following section.)

4. Click the Create My Account button.

Twitter either takes you to a CAPTCHA screen, or refreshes the page in case you didn't fill out any of the fields correctly. Those will be indicated with a red marker. (In most cases, it's because you're trying to sign up with a user account that's already taken or that you've mistyped your e-mail address.)



By clicking the Create My Account button, you're agreeing to Twitter's Terms of Service. You see a link at the bottom of the page where you can read those Terms of Service if you like, or you can go to <http://twitter.com/tos> to read them.

5. Type the CAPTCHA code in the Type the Words Above text box, if prompted.

This step is a standard Web tactic to prove that you're a human and not a spam program (see Figure 2-3). For more information on this code, see the "What's up with the CAPTCHA?" sidebar later in this chapter.

Figure 2-3:
Are you
human?

6. Follow the on-screen tutorial to find people you know.

To jump-start your Twitter experience, the sign-up process includes a way for you to find people you might want to follow based on category, and to automatically connect with people you know. If you'd like, you can follow the on-screen wizard, or if you want to get straight to Twitter, click on the Next Step button on the bottom of the screen until you get to the main Twitter screen. You'll know it when you see it (see Figure 2-4).

You're taken to your newly created Twitter account (see Figure 2-5).



Did you know you can register for Twitter entirely by text from any cellphone? Get a friend started while you're away from a computer — you can create a new Twitter account from any cellphone at any time. Just send an SMS text message with the word "join" to 40404 and follow the directions that are texted back to you to choose a username. Later, go to Twitter.com and look for the button labeled Already Using Twitter from Your Phone? Click Here. (To find out more about using Twitter on your cellphone, check out the section "Adjusting Your Text-Messaging Settings," later in this chapter.)

If you already have a Twitter account, do not text "join" to 40404 or you will associate your phone number with a separate new account. You will not be able to add your phone to your original account until you remove your number from the new account you inadvertently created. See instructions on how to set up your phone to work with your existing Twitter account later in the chapter.

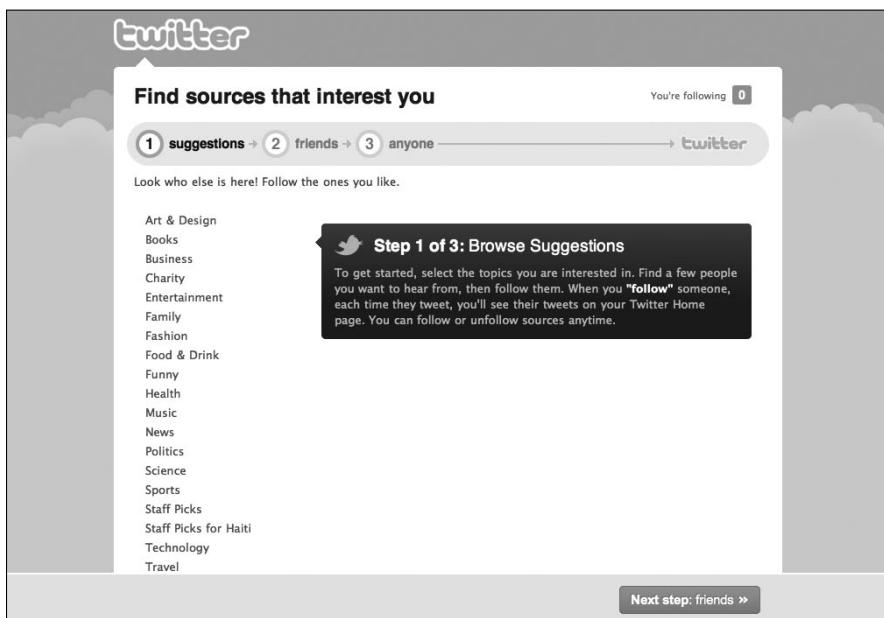


Figure 2-4:
The Twitter
Getting-
Started
Wizard. It's
magical!

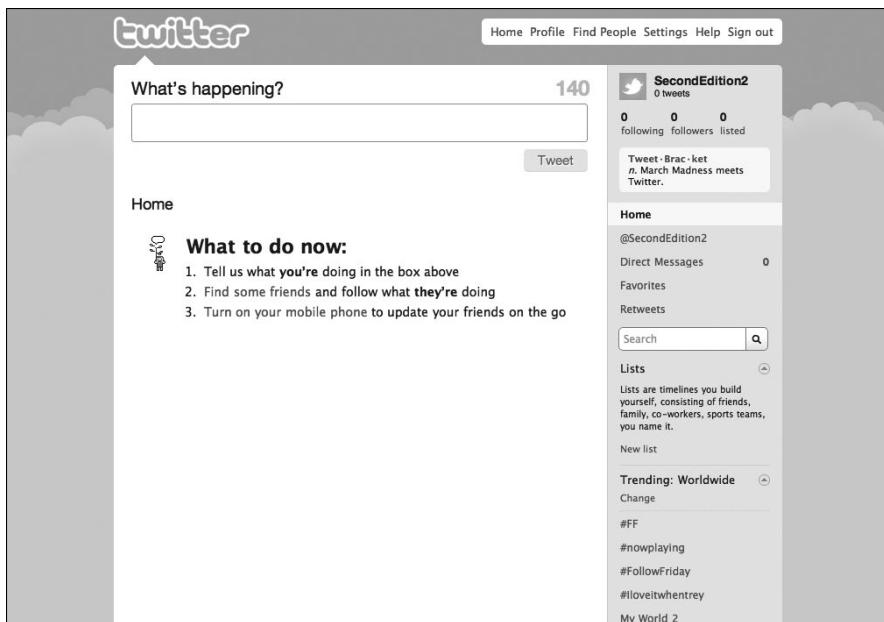


Figure 2-5:
A Twitter
blank slate.



What's up with the CAPTCHA?

A CAPTCHA is a quick check to make sure that an actual person, rather than a computer program, is using the Web site. Web applications use CAPTCHA (which stands for Completely Automated Public Turing test to tell Computers and Humans Apart) as a standard defense against spam and automatically generated user accounts.

You may find the CAPTCHA a bit tricky to read, but that's largely the point. Computers have a hard time reading text that's distorted in any way, but humans can adjust rather quickly.

Sometimes, you may run into a hard-to-read or ambiguous CAPTCHA. If you're having trouble reading the CAPTCHA, Twitter uses the popular reCAPTCHA tool, which can easily generate another CAPTCHA for you: Just click the Get Two New Words link to get another CAPTCHA. There is an audio version of the CAPTCHA on Twitter, but it really doesn't seem to work well.

If you can't read a CAPTCHA after a few tries, you may be a computer. If you think that you may, in fact, be non-human, please consult your doctor or trusted medical professional.

Picking a Name

On Twitter, your username is your identity. Laura's Twitter name, or *handle*, is @Pistachio, and it has become the way that many people know her. She's met thousands of people in real life after initially connecting with them through Twitter, and it's not unusual for her to hear, "Hey, Pistachio!" from across the street or across the room at a party. @Pistachio has, in effect, become her nickname. If you want a quick glimpse at the search engine "optimization" (SEO) value of Twitter, just run a Google search for the word pistachio and you'll find her Twitter account is one of the very first search results. Crazy.



When we refer to Twitter usernames in this book, we follow the convention of putting an at sign (@) before the name, because that's how you refer to other users on Twitter. (For example, if you want to say that you're reading Laura's book, you might say, "Reading @Pistachio's book." That way, people who follow you on Twitter can easily click over to Laura's Twitter profile, in case they want to follow her, too!) But when you're actually choosing a username, the @ isn't part of it. The only characters you can use are uppercase and lowercase letters, and the underscore character (_).

That story emphasizes that you should think about how you want to be perceived both on and off Twitter and how your username fits into that perception. Twitter is a far-reaching service, and if you get really involved in the culture of Twitter, like the rest of the social Web, it undoubtedly spills over into real life. The days of choosing anonymous handles such as sexybabe44, like you may have when you used instant-message programs or chat rooms in years past, are, for many, long gone.



If you can sign up for Twitter by using your name or a variation of it as your username (assuming somebody else isn't already using it), we recommend doing so. It makes your experience with Twitter much easier when the line between online and offline blurs.

For example, if your name is John Ira, you may want to pick a Twitter username such as @johnira or @john. If users have already claimed those monikers, try adding an adjective or descriptor, such as @handsomejohn or @johntheterrible. If you prefer for people not to know who you are, you can choose a name that's a bit more generic. You can also use a handle that you've established on other Web sites. You may also want your username to match your e-mail address — for example, if your e-mail address is doglover1980@example.com, you may decide to use @doglover1980 as your Twitter name.

Why @Pistachio?

Many people have asked where the username @Pistachio came from. Simply, Laura's first office was painted an unfortunate green color — that precise, indescribably ugly shade of Grandma's favorite ice cream on summer

nights at Friendly's by the rotary in Gloucester, Massachusetts. Laura first adopted the color as a company name in 1997, and over the years it has become part of her identity. Thus, she now is @Pistachio.



Be forewarned! If you choose to use your last name only, like Michael (@gruen), you may find that no one can remember your first name.

Using Twitter for your business? You can use your company or business name as your username, and you can fill in that business name in the Name text box on the Settings page for your account. But if you do, be sure to include the names of anyone who handles the company Twitter account in the 160 character “Bio” text box on the Settings page for your Twitter profile. (We cover how to customize your profile in the “Customizing Your Profile” section, later in this chapter.)

If you’re looking to be a bit more removed and really would prefer to use a nickname rather than your name, or your company or product name, choose a username that’s friendly and accessible to the people you want to interact with. On Twitter, you want people to respond to you, not be put off by a risqué or otherwise questionable handle. (If you want to be risqué, go for it – understand, however, that you’ll limit the other users who will be willing to interact with you.) Likewise, if you run into your Twitter pals at networking events or other real-life social situations, you want to make sure that you don’t mind having your username written on your nametag or shouted out in greeting.



Lean toward using a short Twitter username. **Remember:** Tweets are only 140 characters, so when people are replying to you, if you have a longer name, you leave them less room for message content. Twitter limits your username to just 15 characters for this very reason. (For more on how to reply to another person on Twitter, turn to Chapter 5.)



Your Twitter name has power and influence on *search engine optimization* (SEO), or how close to the top of a search results list you appear in a search engine such as Yahoo! or Google. Businesses should consider using valuable keywords as their Twitter names.

Finding Contacts

When you first sign up for Twitter, you're prompted to see if your friends are on Twitter (see Figure 2-6). Finding contacts on Twitter can be a lot of fun! The easiest way to find your friends is to import your friends and contacts from other services that you already use (such as Gmail, Yahoo! Mail, AOL, and Hotmail). You may be pleasantly surprised at how many people you know who are already busy tweeting away.

Figure 2-6:
See whether your friends are on Twitter by importing your e-mail address book.



To import contacts and make them part of your Twitter world during the registration process, follow these steps:

1. Select the e-mail account type from which you want to import on the left-hand side of the screen.
2. Type your e-mail credentials (username and password) in the Your Email and Email Password text boxes.

Having Twitter automatically find your contacts involves entering your e-mail account password. Although Twitter has established itself as a trustworthy service, in general, be very cautious about sites that ask you for your e-mail address and password.



3. Click the blue Find Friends button.

Twitter looks at your contact list from your e-mail account and gives you a list of all the people from your address book who are already on Twitter.

4. Select the people you want to follow.

If you click the Follow All button, everyone in your address book will be automatically followed for you. If you only want to follow some of the people in your address book, only click the gray Follow button for each person.



When you follow people on Twitter, you see their updates on your Twitter Home screen.

5. When you finish selecting people, click the Twitter logo on the upper left of the screen.

Alternatively, if you didn't find all the people in your address book that you would have liked to follow, you can invite them by using the Invite by Email tab along the page navigation. (For more on inviting people to join Twitter, see "Inviting Contacts," later in this chapter.)



If you're not careful about where you click, you can accidentally send an e-mail to everyone in your address book. However, if you want to invite all your contacts to join you on Twitter, go ahead and share the Twitter love!

6. Repeat these steps for all your other e-mail networks, if you have them.

If you skip this step during the registration process, you can always search for people by first name, last name, or e-mail address by clicking the Find People link at the top of any Twitter page.

Using useful people-finding tools

Jumping into random conversations is a great way to find like-minded Twitter users, but it's not the only way. You can use a few tools to discover people on Twitter who share your interests or live near you.

One of the more interesting tools out there, TwitterLocal (www.twitterlocal.net), helps you find Twitter users by geographic location. It's a great way for people interested in real-life meet-ups, as well as those in localized industries (such as real estate and car sales) who use Twitter to drum up business, to contact each other.

Everything in moderation: Making sure you don't follow too many people

Be cautious when following new people. You can easily get excited and start following a ton of random people, but this approach has some potentially negative consequences. It takes time and genuine interaction to build relationships on Twitter, so many of the initial people you follow (who don't personally know you) may not opt to follow you back immediately. As a result, you may at first find that you're following many more people than are following you, and your follower/following ratio is skewed heavily to the following side.

To some Twitter users, an account that's following 500 people with only 1 or 2 people following it back is a warning sign that it may be a spam account — and you don't want people to think that you're a spammer. Take a relaxed approach, following a few people at a time, talking to them, and giving them time to follow you back before increasing your follower circle. Over time, your numbers swell on their own just because you're building a network and interacting with it.

Twitter users are often interested in meeting and talking with new people and want to hear fresh voices. If you talk about your passions, interact with people in and out of your network, and are genuine, you'll have no trouble finding people to follow and getting them to follow you back.

If you have a blog or Web site, create a friendly "Hello, Twitter people!" Twitter landing page that introduces yourself to people you follow or who may want to follow you, and link to that page on your Twitter profile so that it directly welcomes curious new people. Companies that tweet should definitely mention it on their own website so that it is clear whether or not their account is authentic. Todd Defren of SHIFT Communications (@tdefren) has pointed out that it's a particularly good idea for businesses to use a Twitter landing page to explain how they are using Twitter and offer ways to opt-out of any connections or communications.

Twellow (www.twellow.com) is another handy tool for widening the scope of your Twitter universe (which, yes, some call a *twitterverse*). Twellow sorts Twitter users by categories based on keywords found in the Bio sections of their profiles. Users can also claim Twellow profiles for any Twitter user-names that belong to them, by proving who they are. Claiming lets you edit the entry to add more categories or remove incorrect categories. Twellow is searchable by name, location, or category, similar to an online yellow pages for Twitter (hence the name Twellow).

Part III explores more of these third-party tools.

Searching by using Twitter Search

Twitter also has its own search engine, known as Twitter Search, which you can access by clicking Search at the bottom of any Twitter page or by going to <http://search.twitter.com>. You can enter any keyword of your choice into the Twitter Search text box and click the Search button, and Twitter not only brings you results in chronological order (with the most recent at the top), but also lets you know when people have made new tweets that match your search criteria and gives you the option to refresh the search results page.



You can use Twitter Search to find new people on Twitter by typing keywords connected to your interests or profession in the text box. Bonus: Because Twitter Search sorts results based on how recent they are, the people you discover through this search are likely very active Twitter users.

Twitter Search was originally built by another Web startup called Summize, which had earned special privilege and access to Twitter's application program interface (API) to create a search engine for the microsharing service. Although Twitter officially acquired Summize and has since renamed it Twitter Search, Summize is still known to many (and affectionately referred to) by its original name. (Michael cried, longingly, over the name change, and Laura's been caught referring to Summize in her speeches frequently.)

Inviting Contacts

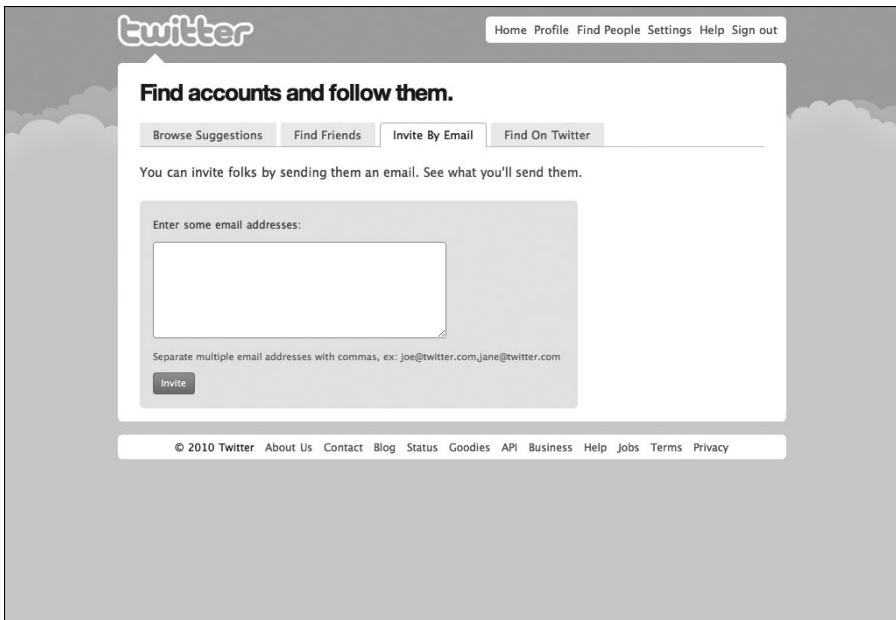
During the registration process, after you import your contacts from your e-mail address book, you have the option to invite any of your contacts who aren't yet using Twitter.

The process is really simple:

1. **On the Find Accounts and Follow Them screen (see Figure 2-7), paste or type the e-mail addresses of each person you'd like to follow in the box.**
2. **Click the blue Invite button.**

An invitation to join Twitter will be sent to the people you selected, letting them know that you're on Twitter and they can follow your updates by signing up for Twitter themselves. (If you're concerned, Twitter allows you to preview that e-mail if you click on the link at the top of this page.)

Figure 2-7:
Ask your
friends to
join the
party!



If you haven't found friends who you know are on Twitter, you can search for them by hand by using the Find on Twitter button.

1. **On the top navigation bar of any Twitter page, click the Find People link.**
The tabbed navigation loads below the navigation bar.
2. **Click Find on Twitter.**
A text box appears.
3. **Enter the name or screen name of the person or company you're looking for.**
If you're looking for co-author Michael, you might just try searching for "Gruen" as some people elect to omit some personal information, like first names.
4. **After you enter all the addresses you want, click the Follow button.**

The Follow button is a small, gray square with a silhouette and a plus button on it, as shown in Figure 2-8.

If you choose not to do this now, you can always go back and do it later. Simply click Find People in the toolbar at the top of your Twitter profile to make the input screen for e-mail invitations appear.

The screenshot shows the Twitter search interface with the query 'gruen' entered in the search bar. The results list includes several profiles:

- gruen** Michael E. Gruen | NYC (Follow button)
- nathallia.grun** Nathalia Grün | Porto Alegre-RS - BRASIL (Moda Insights 2010 link)
- NicholasGruen** Nicholas Gruen | Port Melbourne (Another post on the poverty of strategy link)
- arpades** Hartmut Grün | Germany (Golf around Valencia link)
- MaryAnneGruen** Mary Anne Gruen | New York

On the right side of the search results, there's a sidebar with options to invite people via email and links to other networks.

Figure 2-8:
Follow
people by
searching
for them.

If you don't opt to invite people during the registration process, or you want to invite people down the road, you can always e-mail people you know whom you think would most enjoy or benefit from Twitter, sending them a link to your Twitter profile and writing a note explaining what Twitter is. Many people choose this approach when they first join Twitter so that they can keep the invitation process personal.



It's become commonplace for many Twitter users to put Twitter handles on business cards and in e-mail signature lines. These actions are indirect invitations for the people who meet us in real life or interact with us in business to connect with us on Twitter, as well. The more people who join you on Twitter, the more effective your network becomes.

Say Hello! Your First Tweets

The entire premise of Twitter is to answer the question "What's happening?" in 140 characters or less. So, go ahead! Tell Twitter what's happening. Type a message in the text box directly below What's Happening?, keeping under the 140-character limit. When you're done, click Update. Congratulations! You've just made your first tweet.

If you're thinking, "Wait, that's it?" That's right: that's it. Tweeting is that simple. Though your first tweet was probably something mundane, such as, "Trying out this Twitter thing" or "Hello there, Twitter. I'm reading *Twitter For Dummies!*", there's something more interesting going on.

While you start to add more and more tweets, people can begin to see what's going on in your life and what you're thinking about. Twitterers following you or searching for keywords in Twitter, in all likelihood, start talking to you about what you're doing. The conversation starts with those simple exchanges: Talk about your favorite band's new album, your mechanic and how she fixed your car's catalytic converter, or really anything at all. If you've already found your contacts on Twitter, they probably respond to you pretty quickly. If you don't have any followers yet, don't worry; they'll come.

We discuss suggested Twitter etiquette, culture, language, and all that stuff in Chapter 7. This chapter simply tells you how to get your Twitter profile up and running so that it reflects who you are and what you want to get out of Twitter.



Your tweets, right now, are publicly visible and searchable, even if you delete them immediately after hitting Update. This situation isn't life or death, but be careful. If your updates are unprotected, what you tweet ends up in Twitter Search and on Bing, and on Google, sometimes even if you delete it almost immediately. (Chapter 9 discusses search tools in depth.)

Customizing Your Profile

Your public page on Twitter, also known as your profile, is other Twitter users' first impression of you, and it can make a big difference in whether they decide to follow you. Take a few minutes to dress it up a little! Making sure that it reflects you or your business makes all the difference when it comes to whether people stick around to see what you have to say.

After you sign up for Twitter, one of the first things you should do is personalize your profile. Make sure that you have

- ✓ An *avatar* (a picture that shows up to the left of your tweets, representing you or your company)
- ✓ A background image or background color for your Home screen
- ✓ A bio that's 160 characters or less
- ✓ A link to anything else you want to share

Editing photos for your Twitter avatar

Many of the photos that you want to use for your Twitter avatar may include other people. Or the picture composition may not allow you to get a good head shot. Thankfully, both Macs and PCs have tools available so that you can quickly put together an avatar without needing third-party photo-editing software. As an added bonus, these tricks show you how to take *screenshots* (pictures of what appears on your screen).

Start by finding a picture on your hard drive, the Web, or your digital camera and open the picture.

If you use Mac OS X, follow these steps:

1. **With the picture file open and visible on the screen, press ⌘+Shift+4.**

Your cursor changes into a crosshair.

2. **Click and drag your cursor over the area that you want to include in your profile picture, and then let go.**

On your desktop, a new file (usually titled something such as Picture 1) appears, ready for uploading.

On a Windows computer, follow these steps:

1. **With the picture file open and visible on the screen, press the Print Screen button on your keyboard.**

This button may read PRNTSCR or a similar abbreviation.

2. **Press Windows+R.**

The Run dialog box appears.

3. **Type mspaint at the prompt and click OK.**

MSPaint opens.

4. **Press Ctrl+V.**

A screenshot is pasted into MSPaint. By default, the Move tool in Paint is selected.

5. **Drag the screen shot up and to the left to mark the upper-left corner of the picture you want as your avatar.**

6. **Click outside the selection rectangle to deselect the screenshot.**

7. **Scroll to the bottom-right corner of the image.**

A small, dark blue box appears directly outside the bottom-right of the image.

8. **Click and drag that tiny blue box toward the upper-left.**

Stop where you want to mark the bottom-right corner of the image.

9. **Choose File→Save As.**

The Save As dialog box appears.

10. **Save the file as a .jpg, .gif, or .png, give it an appropriate name (such as twitteravatar), and save it in a place where you can find it later.**

You're ready to go!



Some of the best profile pages on Twitter are the ones that give you a look into that user's personality. Someone who loves to ski might upload an image of his favorite mountain range as the profile background and pair it with an avatar that depicts him in ski goggles. You don't have to bare your soul, but people on Twitter want to know something about you, and the public page is where they can first discover it.



After you log into Twitter, you can customize your profile at any time by clicking Settings in the top-right navigation bar.

Changing your avatar

Your avatar is displayed to the left of all your tweets, so it's your official face on Twitter. Some Twitter users change their avatars almost daily to different photos of themselves, some users leave their avatars the same all the time, and still others change their avatars according to a specific occasion — holiday-themed photos for Christmas or Halloween, for example. Your avatar is your face, some other picture, or the default glowing bird silhouette. It's your choice.



People don't like following back if your avatar is just the default. Show your smiling face and set others at ease!

To change your avatar, follow these steps:

- 1. Sign in to Twitter and click Settings in the top-right menu bar.**
The Settings page opens.
- 2. Click the Profile tab (see Figure 2-9).**
- 3. Click the Browse button and navigate to the picture that you want to upload.**
Currently, Twitter supports the .jpg, .gif, and .png file formats.
- 4. Click the Save button.**
Your picture is uploaded to Twitter.

The size of your profile image is restricted to 700 kilobytes (which is a rather large image), and Twitter crops it automatically into a square for your public profile. Choose an image that's square or close to square, or make sure that the part of the image you want featured in your avatar's thumbnail version is in the center of the image.

Try to find a picture that's at least 73 x 73 pixels. Otherwise, Twitter stretches the picture out, causing some distortion.



If you upload a photo and it doesn't look quite right, don't panic! Just find a new picture (or adjust the original file) and try uploading it again. You can upload a new picture at any time.

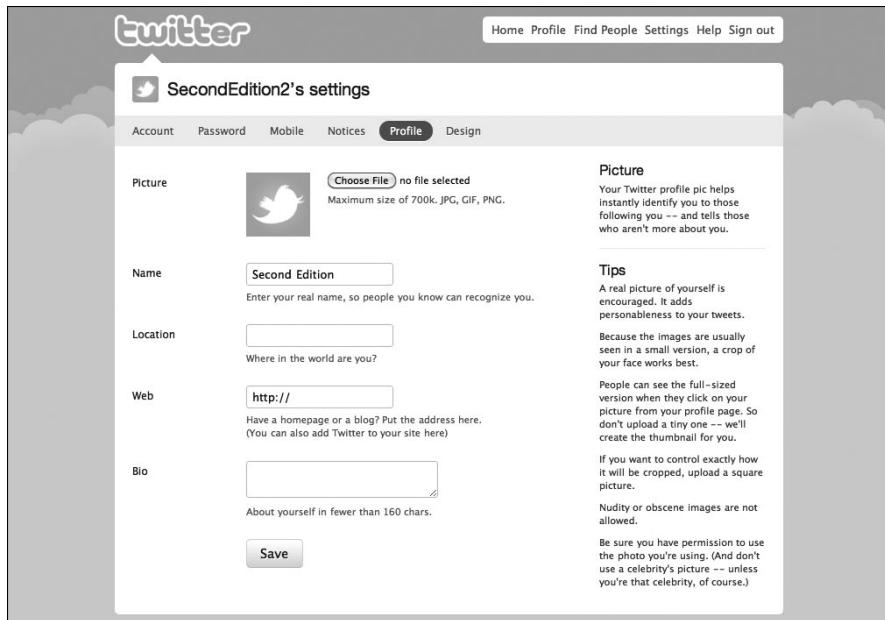


Figure 2-9:
Smile for
your Twitter
avatar
photo,
instead of
using the
default bird.

Changing your background

In addition to changing your avatar, you can change the background of your profile page from the default blue to another color. You can even upload an image of your choice (or do both!). You can *tile* an image (make it repeat, like tiles on a floor), make an image large enough to cover the entire background, or choose a smaller image that doesn't cover the entire background (and leaves a solid color behind it).

To change your background by using Twitter's tools, follow these steps:

1. **Sign in to Twitter and click Settings in the top-right menu bar.**

The Settings page opens.

2. **Select the Design tab.**

3. **Select a pre-made background or use your own image or pattern.**

The pre-made Twitter backgrounds appear in square thumbnail images inside the Design tab.

If you don't want a standard Twitter look, but instead want to use a background image or pattern from your computer, click the Change

Background Image link below the pattern images. Then, upload a file by clicking the Browse button and finding your image on your computer.

4. **(Optional) If you want your image to tile, click the Tile Background option.**
5. **If you want only to change your image, click Save.**
6. **(Optional) To customize your text and links, click the Change Design Colors link.**

You may want to make your Twitter page match the color scheme of your blog or Web site. If you can access the hexadecimal codes on your blog's color scheme, you can enter those same hexadecimal codes in the appropriate boxes. After you finish, click Save Changes to update your colors. If you mess up before you save your changes, you can always hit Cancel or navigate away to retain your current color settings.



Hexadecimal codes are the six-digit codes used in Web site design to assign colors; each combination of numbers and letters corresponds to a different shade. For example, 000000 is black, and FFFFFF is white. Plenty of places on the Web offer easy-to-understand guides to hexadecimal color codes. Check out Adobe's Kuler (<http://kuler.adobe.com>) if you're looking for a nice color palette.

7. **Click each of the color swatch squares that you want to change.**

A note above each square tells you what part of the text or design is affected.

8. **When you're happy with your color scheme, click Save Changes.**



If you're using Twitter for business purposes, use your background to reflect your company's identity — tiling your logo as the background, for example. Figure 2-10 shows an example of JetBlue's Twitter background.

If the default themes or images don't appeal to you, or if you're looking for something simpler or more casual, you can find free background images at sites such as TwitterPatterns (www.twitterpatterns.com). TwitterPatterns offers a variety of pattern graphics to choose from, all of which are sized specifically to fit Twitter profiles. If you're feeling adventurous, you can hunt online for interesting background images on your own and upload them yourself. Just make sure that they're the right shape and size.



Your background image is almost always overlaid with your Twitter stream, so people usually won't be able to see the middle of the image. Their screen width dictates how much of your background they'll actually see.



Figure 2-10:
A
customized
corporate
background.

Using your background image to expand your profile

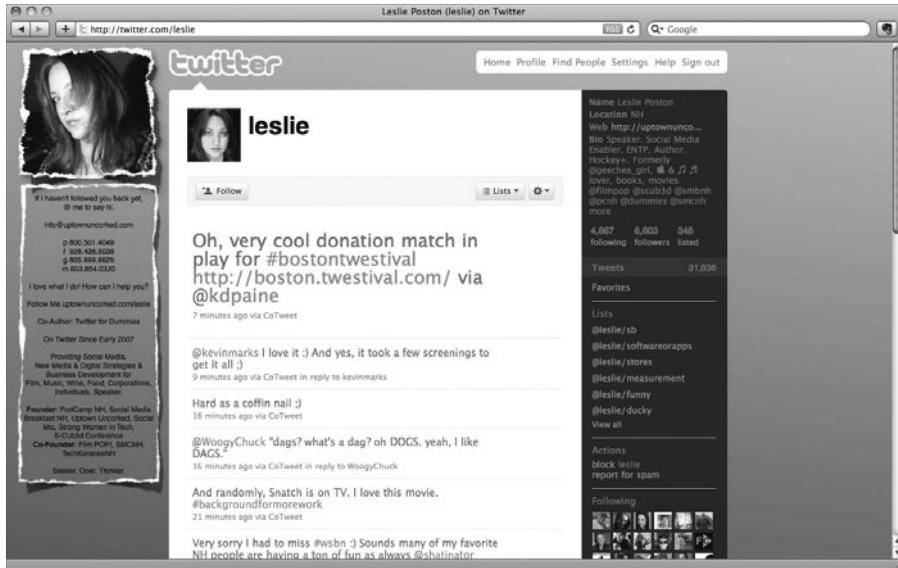
Because Twitter's user profiles are so limited, some avid Twitter users take advantage of the background image to add more information or personal links than Twitter allows for in its short Bio section. In many cases, a Twitter user includes a short professional biography, accompanied by more links and ways to connect with that user (see Figure 2-11). This idea is a great way to let people know where else they can find you.

To customize your background image, you need to use a custom template application or create your own template from scratch by using a program such as Photoshop or a free image editor such as Gimp or Seashore. You can also use Microsoft's PowerPoint.



If customizing your own background image from scratch isn't your speed, don't worry! Several sites generate free Twitter templates that are designed just for Twitter neophytes in your situation. One of these sites is TwitBacks (www.twitbacks.com), which offers you a fill-in-the-blanks form to create your own Twitter background. Alternatively, you can grab a template from BoinBlog (<http://boinblog.com/2008/07/02/twitter-profile-customization-photoshop-template>). You need Photoshop on your computer to open the file, but it's a fast and easy way to create a template for yourself or your company if you're pressed for time.

Figure 2-11:
@Leslie's
extended
profile
information
contained
in a
background
image.



Adjusting Your Text-Messaging Settings

By using Twitter cellphone notifications, you can keep tabs on your friends, your spouse, or someone who randomly says the funniest things. Some users, though, are more inventive: They use this feature to keep tabs on their current client roster to try to gauge those clients' happiness levels before calling them for project updates.

You can interact with Twitter on your cellphone via Short Message Service (SMS) text messages, on a mobile Web site, or by using a client application on your smartphone. You can opt for tweet notification from your network in several ways, as well.

Before you can do anything with your new Twitter account on your cellphone, though, you have to associate your mobile device with Twitter. Like most things about Twitter, it's pretty easy to do.

To associate your cellphone with Twitter, follow these steps:

1. Sign in to Twitter and click the **Settings** link in the top-right menu bar of your Twitter home page.

The Settings page opens.

2. Select the **Mobile** tab.

3. Enter your cellphone number in the text box and select the check box below it to confirm that you allow Twitter to send messages to your phone; click Save.

A screen appears giving you a code that you need to text to 40404 (brief instructions are provided).

4. Send the code to 40404 from your cellphone.

5. On the right side of your Twitter home page, under Device Updates, click the Phone radio button.

If you find the notifications overwhelming or need to stop them for a while, just turn them off, which we talk about in the following section.



You can turn on cellphone notifications even more easily if you sign up for Twitter by texting a message to 40404. But if you've already signed up at the Web site, use the Web site to add your phone. If you sign up both on the Web site and by using your phone, you end up with two accounts that aren't connected to each other.

Controlling the text-message flow

If your account has text-messaging device updates set to On, you receive a text message each time someone in your network sends a tweet. (To find out how to turn on cellphone notifications, see the preceding section.)

At first, receiving text-message updates from all your new Twitter friends is fun. But when your network grows, you may find all those tweets a bit noisy, to say the least — not to mention the fact that your cellphone plan may charge you for each text message you receive. To change this, look at Settings and then the section called Mobile. We give you more details on what you can adjust, and how to do it, in Chapter 4 and Chapter 7.



Plenty of avid users of Twitter never even receive SMS updates; others swear by them. Part of the beauty of Twitter is the many different ways that you can access it. You always have a choice.

You can also set quiet time, which (in our opinion) is a very underrated feature. Basically, quiet time can ensure that your phone doesn't wake you up in the middle of the night when tweets come in from the other side of the world.

To set up quiet time, follow these steps:

1. Click the Settings link on the top navigation bar.

The Settings page opens.

2. Select the Mobile tab.
3. Select the check box labeled Turn Off Updates During These Hours.
4. In the drop-down menus directly below the check box, select the times between which you don't want text messages to come into your phone.
5. Click Save.

Selecting your text notifications, person by person

If you start following hundreds of people, you probably don't want to receive text-message tweets from all of them. (You might, we don't!) Thankfully, Twitter lets you receive texts only from users of your choice so that your phone isn't vibrating and beeping all day.

To turn off device notifications for some of the people you're following, follow these steps:

1. Go to your friend's page who you want to change the mobile tweet delivery option.
2. Below the person's avatar and name, you'll see the word Following, followed by a small mobile phone icon in a circle.
3. If you'd like that person's tweets to be forwarded to your mobile phone, make sure that circle is colored green. If it isn't, click on it!

You'll now receive that person's tweets on your phone.



You can use the mobile tweet delivery for VIP notifications of the people in your life. Know where your boss is at all times, what your better half is up to, or keep tabs on your grandkids. For example, Michael's grandfather is on Twitter (@rdgruen) and elects to receive all of Michael's tweets on his iPhone, much to Michael's chagrin.

Chapter 3

Stroll Around the Grounds: A Tour of the Twitter Interface

In This Chapter

- ▶ Reading the feed on your Twitter Home screen
 - ▶ Making a Twitter conversation personal by using @replies and direct messages
 - ▶ Marking your Twitter favorites
 - ▶ Viewing who you're following and who's following you
 - ▶ Reviewing your past Twitter updates
-

For the power it wields, Twitter is one of the simplest and, we think, most elegant Web sites for mass communication. The interface makes interacting with other people — some you already know and others you'll meet — incredibly easy, and it cleanly organizes a lot of information.

As you use Twitter more and more, you may want to know where to locate things quickly and manage your communication flow more intelligently. In this chapter, we dive down into each Twitter page view, showing how it relates to the conversations going on around you and the conversations you're having directly.

Starting Out on the Home Screen

When you first log into Twitter, the Home screen is your first stop. After you set up your account, you go to this screen to touch base with your followers and the people you're following. On the Home screen, you can also see who's talking to you directly through *@replies*, which are tweets in response to individual users, and *direct messages* (DMs), which are private, one-to-one tweets. (For more on using @replies and DMs, see the sections “Tweeting to One Specific Person: @Replies” and “Shhh! Sending Private Notes via Direct Messages,” later in this chapter.)

Additionally, the controls along the top of the Home screen let you change your settings, update your profile background, upload your avatar, toggle your SMS notifications, and more. (Chapter 2 covers most of these setup features.)

The Home screen, shown in Figure 3-1, has a standard layout. The header has a Twitter logo on the left and a list of links on the right, which appears on all Twitter pages. Those links' names describe where they take you:

- ✓ **Home:** Your Home screen. Clicking on the Twitter logo at left also takes you to your Home screen.
- ✓ **Profile:** Your Profile page.
- ✓ **Find People:** The people search tool.
- ✓ **Settings:** Where you can configure your Twitter account (see Chapter 2).
- ✓ **Help:** FAQs and support.
- ✓ **Sign Out:** Exactly what you think it is — signing out of your Twitter account.

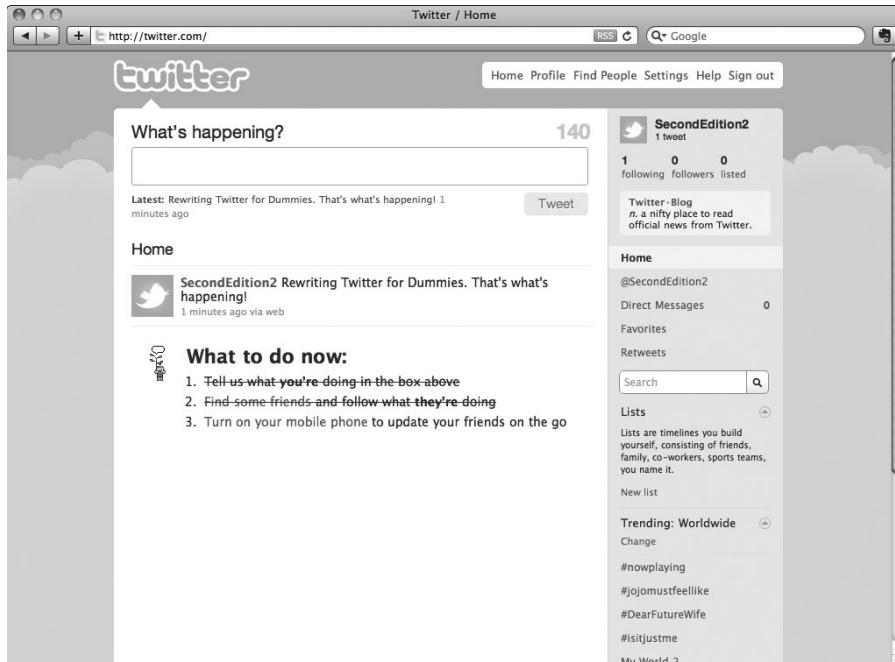


Figure 3-1:
The Twitter
Home
screen,
where you'll
spend a lot
of time.



Twitter is a living Web application. Its interface changes from time to time, so if you can't find something immediately, it's likely taken on a different name or moved to a different location on the interface. For up-to-date information about what's going on with Twitter, visit the company's blog (<http://blog.twitter.com>).

The sidebar

The area on the right side of most Twitter.com screens (Home, Profile, Replies) is called the sidebar. It's both a reference for what you're looking at in the main content area and a controller for the Web site, and it's configured a little differently in each view. Here's a breakdown of what's on the sidebar. Except where noted, this description applies to the sidebar on your Home screen:

- ✓ **Your information:** Your avatar picture and username. When you're logged in to Twitter and on your Home screen, you'll see only your avatar and username. Your Name, Location, Web, or Bio appear only on your Profile page. Click your avatar, the Profile link, or any @username link for your name to see your Profile page.
 - ✓ **Your stats:** Your following and follower counts, the number of updates you've posted, and the lists you're on (we'll get into that momentarily) followed by a box that displays definitions of various Twitter related words, tools, and services.
 - ✓ **Your communications:** @username is a link to your *mentions* (all the tweets posted by other people that either mention you or are replies to you), and underneath it you will find your Direct Messages, and Favorites. (@username will be your username: for example, @pistachio)
- For more on using favorites, see the section "Playing (Twitter) Favorites," later in this chapter.
- ✓ **Your searches:** Next is the Search text box, followed by several sections that you can expand to a bigger view or shrink down to a single line by clicking a down or side arrow in a small circle to the right of each heading. As soon as you save a search to refer to it later, Saved Searches becomes the first of these sections.
 - ✓ **Your Lists:** Lists are timelines you build that consist of friends, family, coworkers, sports teams, and other interests. After you create some lists, you can quickly access them right from that sidebar area at any time you're logged-in to Twitter. (We cover lists in depth in Chapter 7.)
 - ✓ **Trending Topics:** Trending Topics shows you the most commonly tweeted words and hashtags at any given time. The Trending Topics view is a surprisingly powerful peek at what is going on in the world (at least, the world according to twitterers) at any given moment.

- ✓ **Following:** Following is the last section on the sidebar, and it shows a grid of the avatar photos of those you follow (or a random sampling of them if you follow more than it can display).
- ✓ **Your community:** A grid that shows a number of avatars from the roster of other Twitter users you follow.

The Twitter Lists, Trending Topics, and Following Boxes can be shown and hidden with the small triangles to the right of the words signifying the start of each section. Go ahead and give it a try!

The “What’s Happening?” box

Directly atop the wide left column, you find a box in which you can post your latest update (or tweet). If you continually use Twitter’s Web interface to post updates, you’ll become very well acquainted with that box. (We go over how to update without using Twitter’s update box in Chapter 8.)

You’ve probably noticed a light-gray 140 sitting on top of the upper-right portion of the update box. While you type in your message, that number decreases, letting you know how many more characters you can type before you go over the limit. When you get to 19 characters remaining, the number turns burgundy, and when you get to 9 characters remaining, the number turns red; if you go over 140 characters, the number starts counting into the negatives. If you can’t click the Update button, you’ve likely gone over the limit, so be succinct!

As soon as you type a new tweet and click the Update button, your tweet appears in the area directly below the “What’s Happening?” box and in the Twitter feed below that.

If your last tweet was on the long side, you might notice that it was shortened and an ellipsis (...) is at the end of your tweet. If it was abbreviated, you can click that ellipsis to see your full tweet. If you replied to anyone or included a link in your tweet, you can now click that link. Additionally, the timestamp saying how long ago you posted that update in fact contains that update’s *permalink*. Click that link and a page dedicated to that tweet — and that tweet alone — opens. Cool, huh?



This seemingly subtle fact is a big part of what makes conversations on Twitter different. Unlike IM or a chat room, every single tweet can be uniquely bookmarked, linked to, replied to, and archived. Right now, you can go online and view famous tweets you may have heard about, such as @JamesBuck’s “Arrested” at <http://twitter.com/jamesbuck/statuses/786571964> or @JanisKrum’s “There’s a plane in the Hudson . . .” at <http://twitter.com/jkrums/status/1121915133>.

The Twitter stream

All the action on Twitter, appropriately, lives front and center on your screen. This stream of Twitter updates doesn't have an official Twitter-sanctioned name. It contains your tweets and the tweets of those you follow in a chronological order, with the most recent tweets at the top.

This update stream goes by several names including stream, timeline, or sometimes feed (not to be confused with RSS feeds, which you can read about in Chapters 4 and 8). Some people who follow thousands of Twitter users call it a river — the tweet stream flows faster the more people you add to your list of friends and the more people you follow.



The stream only "flows" when you refresh your Web browser — it doesn't automatically display new tweets. Words like stream and flow most likely derive from the more dynamic moving displays on many third-party Twitter clients.

This is where the conversations happen; it's your home base for connecting with people and businesses on Twitter. By reading your stream, you can find new people to listen to (friends of your friends and connections) and a place to jump in and participate.

Each tweet appears in its own little rectangular box. If you hover your cursor over the box, a Star and an Arrow icon (or, if it's your tweet, a Star and a Trash Can icon) pop up on the right side of the tweet. These icons act like function buttons:

- ✓ **Star:** Clicking the star button adds that tweet to your Favorites list (which you can get to by clicking Favorites on the sidebar). When you mark something as a favorite, you make it easier for yourself to find that tweet in the future.
- ✓ **Arrow:** Clicking the arrow sets up the tweet entry field so that you can reply to that user with an @reply.
- ✓ **Trash Can / Delete:** This icon appears next to only your own tweets. Not surprisingly, clicking it lets you delete the tweet from the feed. (**Note:** If you're not seeing a Trash Can icon next to your own tweet, odds are Twitter is working on something. Occasionally, the Trash Can icon disappears, and you have to wait to delete a tweet — all the more reason to make sure that you don't tweet anything you don't mean to tweet!)
- ✓ **Retweet:** You can forward the tweet you're reading to your Twitter followers by clicking the retweet button. Your Twitter followers see that tweet as coming from the user who first said it, along with a note along the bottom of the tweet mentioning that the retweet came from you. (Note that if the tweet came from a user who protects his or her updates, this feature will be unavailable. You have to "RT" that tweet the old-fashioned way, described later in the book.)

Tweeting to One Specific Person: @Replies

The little Arrow icon on the Home screen that appears when you hover your mouse over a Tweet is the force behind one of Twitter's most powerful conversational features: @replies. Taking its format from a syntax used in text chat rooms, @replies is a tweet that, although public and visible to all Twitter users, is directed specifically to one Twitter user. Twitter has ramped it up by automatically detecting when an @ symbol is placed directly in front of a word (with no space in between) and adds a link to the Twitter user who has that word as his or her handle. More than just a way to direct a tweet to one person, @replies can also help you find new people to add to your network when you see one of your contacts conversing with someone you don't know and decide to check that person out.

For every publicly-viewable tweet that includes a user's handle, that user can view those tweets in the @replies link. So, anytime your @username appears in a tweet, it gets collected here. Some heavy users don't like this setup because it can get cluttered fast if you're lucky enough to get mentioned a lot. Even though the page is now considered the Mentions page, most Twitterers still call them @-replies or @-mentions, so we use that here.

If you hover your cursor over the tweet that you want to respond to, the Arrow icon appears, which you can then click to reply to that tweet. Clicking the Arrow icon makes the user's Twitter handle appear in the "What's Happening?" window, and the words "What's Happening?" change to "Reply to" followed by the username of the person you're replying to, and the Tweet button becomes, effectively, a Reply button. Twitter then associates your reply with the original tweet in the Twitter system. The person can see what tweet prompted your reply by clicking the In Reply To link at the bottom of your tweet to him or her. This In Reply To link is helpful, especially when you're responding to people who are frequent Twitter users and may have already put out more tweets since the one you're replying to — it lets them see specifically what you're responding to.



Here are some tips on how to make the most of your Twitter Mentions page (like the one shown in Figure 3-2), which you can open by clicking the @username link (with your own username) in the sidebar:

- | ✓ **Send @replies anytime.** You can send an @reply to someone by just typing the @ symbol and, without a space, his or her username (for example, @leslie). Then type your message and click Update. (See Chapter 5 for more on replying.)

Figure 3-2:
The @
mentions
screen,
where your
ego can get
a boost—
or not.



If you just do your reply manually (as opposed to clicking the Reply icon on a specific tweet that you want to reply to), your reply won't be linked to any particular tweet. This may be exactly the case — @replies actually do initiate a conversation as much as they act as actual replies. But if you really want to reply to a specific tweet, you're usually better off clicking the Reply icon.

✓ **Read (or don't read) other people's @replies.** Some more conservative Twitter users prefer not to read @replies that don't concern them. In the Notices tab on the Settings page, you can opt to

- Not display any @replies
- Display only @replies directed at other Twitter users in your network
- View all @replies from your contacts

If you don't really care which @replies you see, try the last option: Seeing what your friends and followers are talking about with other Twitter users can help you get more value out of the service and is one of the very best ways to discover new people to add to your network by jumping into conversations.

Because of the recent shift to collecting mentions on the @username tab, it's interesting to note that the preceding settings apply only to tweets that begin with an @username, not those where the @username appears anywhere else in the tweet.



✓ **Join a conversation.** If you see that one friend or colleague on Twitter has responded to someone in his or her network who wants to know where to get the best pizza in Boston, and you have a recommendation, you can share it. You just have to click the Twitter handle that your friend is @replying to and throw in your two cents. By starting conversations with friends of your friends, you bring new people into your own stream.



Keep in mind that @replies are public tweets. So, unlike text that you send in an instant message program, which you may be used to, other people can always read your @replies, and they'll be stored by search engines. If you have something private that you need to tell someone, use another feature of Twitter, the direct message (which we talk about in the following section).



In Twitter's early days, anytime you sent an @reply to someone, all of your followers would see that reply in their tweet streams. However, some time ago, Twitter adjusted the way that @replies work: Say you are following Bill and Christy, but Christy isn't following Bill. If you send an @reply to Bill, that reply won't show up in Christy's feed. However, if Christy did follow Bill, she would see that reply in her stream. Twitter does this to protect against disjointed conversations so some of the more vocal and @replying twitterers don't overly flood their follower's feeds.

Shhh! Sending Private Notes via Direct Messages

Direct messages (DMs) let you send your contacts private notes through Twitter. Just like regular tweets and @replies, they're limited to 140 characters. Unlike regular tweets and @replies, the only person who can see a DM is the recipient.

You can send a DM only to a Twitter user who's following you (but you don't have to be following that user), which is designed to prevent spamming and other unwanted messages by ensuring that people get direct messages only from people they actually want to follow.

The easiest way to see whether someone is following you and to send them a direct message while you're there is to simply go to that person's Profile page. You can get to the Profile page by either clicking that person's @username anywhere that you see it or by typing the username into the URL bar on your Web browser after [Twitter.com](http://twitter.com) (<http://twitter.com/username>). Then follow these steps:

1. Look for the Message link in the right sidebar under Actions.

If the only action visible is to block the person, he does not follow you, and you can't DM him.

2. Click the Message link.

The screen changes to a single text box over the user's Twitter background that is labeled Send Username a Message.

3. Write and send your message.

Compose your direct message in this box and then click Send.

You can also send a DM using the main Direct Messages interface:

1. If you're not on the Direct Messages page on Twitter, click the Direct Messages tab on the sidebar of any Twitter page.

The Direct Messages page opens (as shown in Figure 3-3), displaying

- The Inbox tab, which shows all the direct messages you've received over the course of your time using Twitter
- The Sent tab, which shows you all the DMs that you've sent
- A tweet input box that's specifically for DMs

Above the text field, you can find a drop-down menu from which you select the recipient of your DM. That menu lists only the Twitter users who are following you and hence can receive DMs from you.

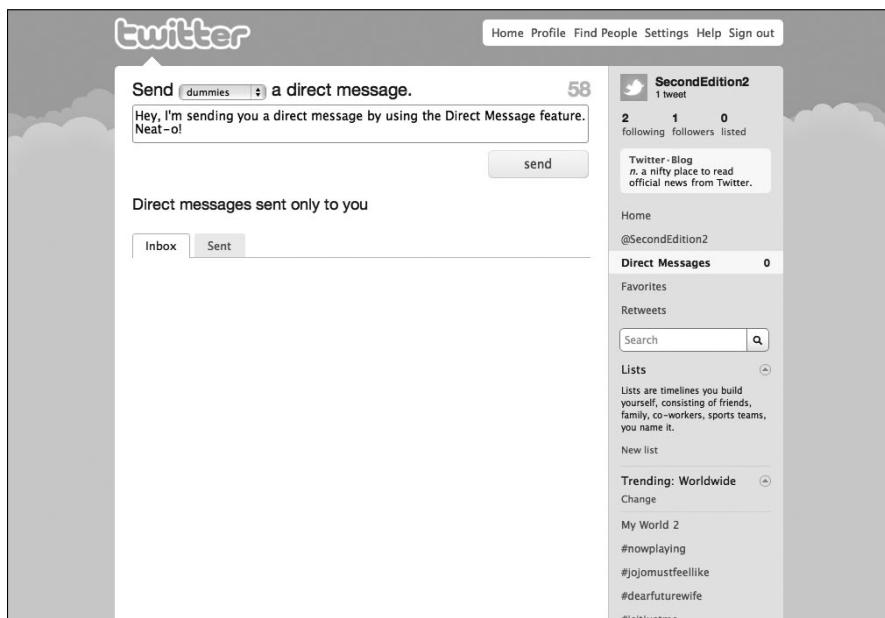


Figure 3-3:
The Direct
Messages
panel,
which lets
you have
private
Twitter con-
versations.

2. Select a name from the drop-down menu.

Note: If a lot of people follow you, your drop-down menu doesn't contain every single follower's name. After recent Twitter changes, the list now appears to show you the list of people you've most recently been DMing with, which is a great solution.



The only problem is that when a name doesn't appear in your Direct Message drop-down list, you may assume that it's because the person no longer follows you. The Direct Message interface can even mistakenly return an error message saying that a given person doesn't follow you. It's just not true. The only reliable way to see whether someone follows you back or not is to visit that person's Profile page. (These steps are described in the preceding list.) Laura has actually had people get sort of mad at her about this, which is ironic because she goes really far out of her way (following everyone back) to make sure that any reader can send her a DM.

3. Type a message in the Send a Direct Message box.**4. Click Send to send the message.**

You can send DMs from any regular Twitter input source — text messages, third-party apps, or the main Twitter interface — by entering **d [username]** and then typing your tweet. For example, if you want to send a direct message to our Dummies account (@dummies) to ask when the next edition of *Twitter For Dummies* is coming out, you format the DM as **d dummies When's the next edition coming out?**



Sending DMs is easy, but proceed with caution! Many Twitter users have embarrassing tales of DMs that they accidentally sent as public tweets because they formatted the tweet incorrectly or sent it from the Twitter Home screen instead of from the user's Profile page (best bet) or the Direct Messages page. Double-check, just to be sure.

Playing (Twitter) Favorites

One of the icons that appear when you hover your mouse over a particular tweet is the Favorites star. It's basically Twitter's equivalent of a bookmarking tool, and twitterers often overlook it. When you mark a tweet as a favorite, it appears on your Favorites page (see Figure 3-4). You may want to mark a tweet as a favorite to:

- ✓ Save it for later.
- ✓ Acknowledge that it helped you or that you found it amusing.
- ✓ Mark it so that you can reply to it later.
- ✓ Remember it so that you can reference it in a blog post or article.
- ✓ Save it to quote later.

Learn to:

- Set up Twitter and build a following
- Find a unique voice for your tweets
- Take advantage of business opportunities
- Use third-party tools to link Twitter

Your Favorites

User	Tweet Content	Date
KikiValdes	Celebrity and tattoo most notable http://bit.ly/4z2u08	2:57 PM May 30th, 2009 via web
BeABetterFather	DadSez quote: "Patriotism is often an arbitrary veneration of real estate above principles." http://post.ly/hWm	10:10 AM May 30th, 2009 via Posterous
joehutsko	@dummies to learn what @<twitteruserhere>; you fill it in> means right away, vs. not knowing what it meant, in my case, for weeks...	8:47 PM Jan 14th, 2009 via web in reply to dummies
mariaschneider	@dummies Keep a low-profile until you've observed for awhile.	1:58 PM Jan 14th, 2009 via web in reply to dummies
JonathanDeamer	New to Twitter? Follow looooads of people to get a feel for the place, find out what you enjoy about it, cut back later if need be. #dummies	1:58 PM Jan 14th, 2009 via Echofon in reply to dummies

dummies
158 tweets

3,488 3,250 81
following followers listed

Tweet - i - val
n. a way to take part in a global event that transforms lives.

Home
@dummies
Direct Messages 350
Favorites
Retweets

Search

Saved Searches
"Twitter for Dummies"

Lists
programs
authors

New list | View all

Trending: Worldwide
Change

My World 2
#nowplaying
#jojomustfeelike

Figure 3-4:
Your favorite tweets are stored forever.

Ari Herzog (@ariherzog) pointed out that favorites are an untapped opportunity to collect testimonials and other tweets that might have value for your company. Innovation software company Brightidea (@brightidea) uses it to curate a great collection of tweets about innovation, drawing upon Twitter search results for keywords related to innovation.

Our point is, don't limit yourself to using Favorites only as literal favorites. Use Favorites whichever way works best for you!



If you start using the Favorites icon on a regular basis, you'll soon have a large collection of tweets that you can gather data from for various projects or reference when you need to remember a particular joke or comment. You can also use it for bookmarking links so that you can visit it later — many of your best links and referrals will come from your fellow Twitter users.



One way to find more people on Twitter is to visit the Profile pages of your friends on Twitter and look at *their* Favorites, to see which tweets they liked the most. If your best friend marked a particular tweet as a favorite, and you're not yet following the person who posted that tweet, you may want to start following that person.

Searching favorite tweets

At the time we write this book, Twitter doesn't yet offer a way to search within your list of favorite tweets and hasn't announced any plans to do so. While your list grows, you may want to find some way to catalog your tweets. Some people use a spreadsheet in a desktop program such as Microsoft Excel or a Web-based one such as Google Docs. Some keep a record of their favorite tweets' permalinks (permanent link URL) pages and tag them by topic, using bookmarking services such as Delicious (www.delicious.com) or Diigo (www.diigo.com).

Indexing your favorite tweets takes a bit of hacking:

- 1. To get to a tweet's permalink, find the tweet in your Twitter stream and click the small link below it that shows the time the tweet was sent.**

That link loads the tweet on its very own page, which you can bookmark for later because that page has a standard Web URL that always leads to that specific tweet.

- 2. Add that URL to your favorite bookmarking service.**

Follow the directions that your bookmarking service offers for how to add a URL.

- 3. If the option is available, tag the link so that you can search by topic later to find it again.**

After you have a system in place for keeping track of tweets that you want to save by using the favorite feature, you can then find them whenever you need them.

Becoming a Renaissance Man via the Everyone Tab (RIP)

The Everyone tab used to lead to Twitter's Public Timeline, which contained all tweets from all twitterers everywhere. It's no big surprise that the Public Timeline was always pretty crowded and random, and that it became ever more so during the meteoric growth leading up to our publication deadline.

As we go to press, you can peek at the Public Timeline in two ways, neither of which appears anywhere in Twitter's interface. The original link (http://twitter.com/public_timeline) still works for now. Rumor has it that you can also still access the timeline by running a search with no terms in the search box (<http://twitter.com/#search?q=Search> — thanks @krystyna81 for this tip!) So although the true Public Timeline is gone, for old time's sake, we left this section in the book for you to play with and think about.

The timeline includes all Twitter users who haven't opted to protect their updates: people you follow, people you don't follow, and people who don't follow you. You can use the timeline to broaden your network, finding new conversations and topics, and generally expanding your presence on Twitter.

If you can get to the Public Timeline through the preceding links, it shows the most recent tweets from everyone who uses Twitter, in real time (like the page shown in Figure 3-5). It looks a lot like your own Twitter stream on your Home screen, but with more content to discover.

After you get to the Everyone timeline, spend a little time either scrolling from page to page and tweet to tweet manually or skimming for interesting conversations. (Refresh your Web browser to see the latest tweets.) If you find an interesting person or conversation, just click that Twitter handle to find out more about that user. You can also send an @reply to the tweet, which lets you just jump into the conversation, even if you don't yet follow any of the people in it. Or, if you like what you see, you can follow someone without replying to them — follow whoever looks interesting to you!



You can check in on the Public Timeline periodically, even after you start to grow your network into the triple digits and higher. Even people who have thousands in their personal Twitter network can find fresh ideas and interesting people on the Public Timeline once in a while, which keeps their Twitter experience the most varied and interesting it can be.

Figure 3-5:
Looking
at the
Everyone
timeline on
Twitter.

Seeing Who You Follow

After you start using Twitter to its full potential, you may want to see a list of whom you follow. To see whom you follow:

1. Log in to Twitter.

On any page in Twitter, you find the sets of numbers in the upper-right sidebar labeled Following, Followers, and Updates.

2. Click Following.

A list of people you're following appears (as shown in Figure 3-6). Currently, Twitter sorts your Following list chronologically by when you started following them, with the most recent at the top.

3. Scroll through the list manually, page by page.

This process works fine until you start to follow many more people. Without a way to sort or search — which Twitter still doesn't have (hint, hint, Twitter!) — finding out if you follow someone specifically can become tedious after you start following more than 100 people.

If you have a particular user in mind and you're not sure if you're following him, go that person's Twitter page. If you're following him, under his avatar, you'll see "Following." If you're not following him, you'll see a Follow button, which you can click to follow him.



Figure 3-6:
Check
out the
twitterers
whom
you're
following.

The screenshot shows the Twitter interface with the following details:

- Header:** Home, Profile, Find People, Settings, Help, Sign out
- Section Title:** You follow 255 people add or invite more
- User List:**
 - LastAdventurer:** Nigh upon the horizon. Coral! So much damn coral! 7:45 PM Mar 20th. Your lists: crushes
 - acoolong:** Amanda Coolong | West Hollywood, CA. @rabelidoh would love to join you, but I'm at #demo w/ @fren and @heman. Back tomorrow nite. 18 minutes ago
 - amandarykoff:** Amanda Rykoff | New York, NY. Life interferes with tv plans. No 24 live blog tonight due to celebration of friend's engagement. *clink* about 2 hours ago
 - S v:** I'm at Club De Ville (900 Red River Street, E. 9th Street, Austin) w/ 38 others. http://4sq.com/62W3Wo 9 days ago
 - JetBlue:** JetBlue Airways | 11375 @JamieAudreyJamie, please follow us so we may DM. about 2 hours ago
 - marilynnyc:** Marilyn Mally
- Right Sidebar:**
 - Name: Michael E. Gruen, Location: NYC, Web: http://michaelgruen.com, Bio: laconic, incorrigible, place (diacope) place.
 - Metrics: 255 following, 1,479 followers, 51 listed.
 - Tweets: 3,673
 - Favorites
 - Lists: crushes, propaganda, technologists, articulate, hubs, groggers. View all...
 - Following: A grid of 25 user avatars.
 - View all...



For a more consolidated view of your users, click the second button in the gray box just below the You Follow notification at the top of the page. If you hover over the button, it will say List. Click that, and your followings list will be much more manageable.

After you break the 100-following mark, you probably want to find another method for figuring out whom you follow. You can figure out whom you follow in a few ways, using third-party applications built on Twitter's API, which we cover in Chapter 9.

Figuring Out Who's Following You

You may also want to see who's following you on Twitter — maybe you want to find new people to follow, or you're just curious who's reading your tweets. You can pull up the list of your followers on any Twitter page. Find the sets of numbers in the upper-right sidebar labeled Following, Followers, and Updates, and click Followers.

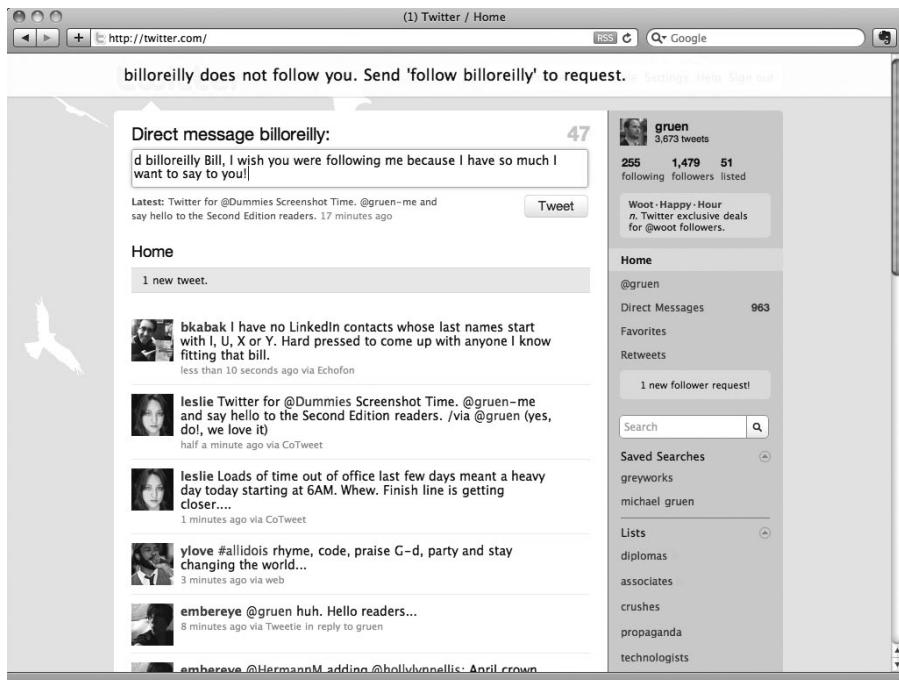
Similar to the Following link (which we talk about in the preceding section), it brings up a list of people who are following you. Twitter sorts the list with the people who've started following you the most recently at the top.

Just like the Following list, you have to click through the Followers list page by page. Chapter 9 suggests some tools, such as TwitterKarma (<http://dossy.org/twitter/karma>) and FriendorFollow (<http://friendorfollow.com>), that can show you both who you're following and who's following you, which is considerably easier than scrolling through your followers page by page.

If you don't want to have to constantly use a site such as FriendorFollow to keep up with your followers, you have several options:

- ✓ **Turn on e-mail notifications in the Settings area.** Click the Notices tab, check the Email When Someone Starts Following Me check box, and click Save. The e-mail notification authorizes Twitter to send you an e-mail alerting you about each new follower. Then, you can just click a link in the e-mail to that user's profile and see right away whether you want to follow them back.
- ✓ **Try to send a user who may be following you a direct message.** If she is following you, you're able to send that direct message. If that user isn't following you, you get a User Does Not Follow You error message (as shown in Figure 3-7). Then you have to decide whether you want to try to get that user's attention in another way. Be sure to check for the Action message on her actual Profile page when you do so, as the Direct Messages interface has been buggy in the past.

Figure 3-7:
A notification of a direct message failure.



Looking at What You've Tweeted

You can see what you've tweeted in the past in a variety of ways. The first place to check is your own profile: Click the Profile link in the top-right corner navigation bar (or just click your avatar) to open your Profile page. Your Profile page, in addition to displaying your short bio and profile information, displays a feed of all your public tweets in chronological order. Just like the pages showing your followers and who you follow (which you can read about in the preceding sections), you can keep clicking the More button on the bottom of the page to see older posts.

Also, your profile is a publicly accessible URL. If your username is @dummies, navigate to <http://twitter.com/dummies> to jump directly to your Profile page.

If you're looking for a specific tweet, you can first look for it by using Twitter's search page (<http://search.twitter.com>). Do a search for your username — if it's a common name, you might want to include the @ — plus a keyword from the tweet. The tweet you're looking for is most likely in the search results. Figure 3-8 shows a Twitter Search results page.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Mountain Biking – Twitter Search". The URL in the address bar is <http://search.twitter.com/search?q=Mountain+Biking>. The Twitter logo is at the top left. Below it is a search bar with "Mountain Biking" and a "Search" button. To the right of the search bar are links for "Advanced Search", "RSS", and "Google". The main content area displays "Realtime results for Mountain Biking" with a timestamp of "0.06 seconds". There are five tweets listed:

- kalypso_hotel:** #Trekking & #Mountain Biking in #Kalypso Hotel #Plakias Rethymno-<http://bit.ly/bcSzqg> (expand)
- bradkane:** Mountain biking with @dr_nicolekane ! [#mountainbiking](http://twitgoo.com/lgnqx)
- Katherine_011:** Non-motorized travel (hiking, snow shoeing, cross country skiing, **mountain biking**, etc) is permitted. The Na... [\(expand\)](http://tinyurl.com/yldgyaf)
- Mtbdonald:** Trying to find some peeps to go **mountain biking** with so hit me up.
- SFO_EduHelp:** Mountain Biking Clinics and Tours #SFO #cl #education #lessons [\(expand\)](http://3taps.com/p/BEMVLY)
- kevin_priest:** Mountain biking to avoid homework is definitely the way to go
- wilkersongary:** The beginners Guide - Introduction To Mountain Biking [\(expand\)](http://bit.ly/btuGKj)

On the right side of the search results, there are several sidebar options:

- Feed for this query**
- Tweet these results**
- Show tweets written in:** Any Language
- Translate to English**
- Trending topics:**
 - #nowplaying
 - My World 2
 - #ijomustfeelike
 - #dearfuturewife
 - #isitjustme
 - #atImoment
 - Justin Bieber
 - DWTS
 - #musicmonday
 - Nurse Jackie
- Nifty queries:**
 - cool filter:links
 - "is down"
 - movie :)
 - "happy hour" near:SF
 - haiku
 - "listening to"
 - love OR hate
 - flight -l

Figure 3-8:
Twitter
Search
results.



If you protect your updates, searching by using Twitter Search doesn't work because the tweets aren't indexed in the search engine. It's a small price to pay for privacy.

You can also search for specific tweets by using Bing, Google, or another search engine. Bing and Google actually purchase data from Twitter.com and offer advanced search terms so that you can really focus the search. Additionally, both Google's and Bing's search interface makes it possible to see who else is talking about your tweets, in addition to the tweets themselves.

Tracking trends

If you're interested in searching for more than just what you've tweeted about yourself, you can see what the rest of the world is tweeting about on Twitter's Search page and in the new Trending Topics part of the Home screen sidebar. Go to <http://search.twitter.com>, and below the Search button, you see a list

of links to "trending topics." If a new movie is coming out, or the World Series is on TV, or a major news event is happening somewhere in the world, you're likely to see it as a trending topic. Sometimes the trending topics can introduce you to topics of conversation you didn't even know about.



Google and Bing do such a good job of indexing Twitter that it remains (at this writing) the best way to find out whether someone is on Twitter or not. At Bing.com or Google.com, run a search for Firstname Lastname Twitter, and usually you can find out right away whether a person is a tweeter. Bear in mind that very famous people who appear to be tweeting may be fan pages or other hoaxes, though — unless @DarthVader actually does exist, in which case, be very afraid!



Your public tweets are indexed by search engines. You can delete your tweets on Twitter by clicking the Trash Can icon, but if you don't do it within a few seconds, Bing and other search engines, as well as Twitter's own search tool, have already indexed those tweets. So, sometimes tweets are forever. On one hand, this indexing is good for your visibility online. Because Bing and other search engines index your tweets, those search engines can bring more people to your Twitter profile, which can then possibly bring those people to your Web site. On the other hand, you need to be cautious: if you're tweeting as 'you', we advise not saying anything on Twitter that you wouldn't want your mom, your boss, or your child to stumble across later on the Internet while searching for something else. Also take great care with names, as tweets about a person may actually show up closer to the top of search results than mentions of her name on other types of Web sites.



If you imagine that someone whose opinion you value is looking at what you write, you can avoid getting in any trouble. Twitter is so easy to use that it's equally easy to slip up, and because of its conversational nature, you can sometimes forget that it isn't a private room, and that it isn't an "inner monologue." A Ketchum PR executive famously upset his client — FedEx — when he tweeted a snide remark about Memphis on landing there for his meeting with them. Ooops! Remember the context you're tweeting in (he was on a client visit) and also remember that people may assume that you're talking about them when you're not. You also may not be thinking today about what may be findable weeks, months, and years from now.

You've Been Listed

Santa's not the only one who gets to check things twice these days.

Twitter users also get to make Lists of people. When you're added to a List, it is kind of like being followed in that a user has identified you as a person to follow. But, instead of getting a new follower, Twitter identifies you as *Listed*, and adds that on to your Twitter profile in the upper-right corner.

Someone may have listed you for a few reasons. You may have gone to school with that person. You may have met that person at an event, and they think you have entertaining tweets. In any case, you must have done something right for them to have listed you!

To see who's listed you (and what list you've been put on), click the Listed button on the upper-right.

The list names are structured in a neat way: they are written as the user who made the list, followed by a slash, followed by the name of the list itself (see Figure 3-9). So, the list @dummies/authors means that the user @dummies created a list called authors.

What's particularly neat about this is that if you click on the list name or visit <http://twitter.com/dummies/authors>, you'll see the stream of tweets written by the people in that list.

Lists add a little bit of complexity and subtlety to the Twitter experience, and they can be pretty powerful tools to help you manage your Twitter experience.

We go into Lists a bit more in Chapters 5 and 7.

The screenshot shows a Twitter interface with the URL <http://twitter.com/gruen/lists/memberships> in the address bar. The main content area is titled "gruen's lists". It displays a list of Twitter users who have created lists that include the user "gruen". Each list entry includes the list name, a brief description, the number of users it follows, and the number of users it has been followed by. To the right of this list, there is a sidebar with the user's profile information: Name (Michael E. Gruen), Location (NYC), Web (http://michaelgru...), Bio (laconic, incorrigible, place (diacope) place.), and statistics: 257 following, 1,482 followers, and 51 listed. Below this are sections for Tweets (3,700), Favorites, Lists (which shows crushes, propaganda, technologists, articulate, hubs, groggers, and View all), and Following (a grid of small user avatars).

Figure 3-9:
Where
you've been
listed.

Chapter 4

Using Twitter Wherever You Think Best

In This Chapter

- ▶ Getting with the Twitter program
 - ▶ Considering third-party interfaces
 - ▶ Using Twitter everywhere
-

Twitter's a great tool for providing friends, family, and followers with updates on what's going on in your life. But, as you've probably noticed, life occurs in a lot of places, not just on the computer. Don't worry, though, because Twitter's got you covered. The folks at Twitter have designed their application so that you can use it in multiple ways.

In this chapter, we go over all the ways that you, as an individual, may want to use Twitter, and we also give you some pointers for maximizing the application, based on your needs.

The User Multi-Face: Interacting with Twitter Every Which Way

If you want to get the most out of Twitter, you need to figure out how you prefer to access the service. Some people use the Twitter Web site or the Twitter Mobile Web site, text messaging, or any number of third-party services built by using Twitter's application program interface (API). You can use widgets, gadgets, browser plug-ins, and in short, a huge array of ways to interact with Twitter at your convenience and on your terms. This is a big reason for Twitter's popularity.

Like most users, you probably started by logging into Twitter.com and using the basic Web interface, shown in Figure 4-1, to manage your Twitter stream and communicate with your contacts. It's simple, no-frills, and convenient: Most of what you need is right there in the sidebar or in the top toolbar, and roughly half of all twitterers (probably more now with Twitter's extraordinary recent growth) use Twitter.com to access the service. But what happens if you need more functionality, mobility, versatility, or you just want more bells and whistles?

Some Twitter users prefer not to access the service through a browser window, need a few more organizational options than the Web page affords, or just want to share Twitter on an external Web site or blog. You can find plenty of options out there for doing all this and more.



Figure 4-1:
The Web
interface,
which is
just one of
the ways
you can use
Twitter.

Text messages (SMS delivery)

You can fairly simply opt into receiving Twitter via text messages (SMS delivery). First, you have to set up a mobile device so that Twitter knows where to send your tweets:

1. Click the Settings link at the top-right of your Twitter Home screen.

The Settings page opens.

- 2. Click the Mobile tab.**
- 3. Enter your mobile phone number in the text field, check the box granting Twitter permission to send you a text message, and click the Save button.**

You're given an alphabetical code and instructed to text this code from your phone to 40404.

- 4. Send the code from your phone as a text message to 40404.**

You'll receive a text message from Twitter confirming that your device has been verified and SMS alerts have been enabled.

- 5. Refresh the page until you see your cellphone number listed.**

Now, you can choose to have text-message notifications on, off, or direct messages only. You can also opt to have them turned off during a specific time (say, while you're usually sleeping or at work).

- 6. Turn on SMS device updates for your Twitter account and then click Save.**

In the Device Updates drop-down list, select On if you want to receive tweets as text messages on your phone or direct messages if you would like to receive only your direct messages. Then click Save.

- 7. (Optional) Select a sleep period when you prefer not to receive updates and click Save.**

If you're enabling device updates, but you don't want them coming in 24 hours a day, under the heading Sleep, select the Turn Off Updates During These Hours check box and select the hours during which you don't want to receive updates on your phone. Click Save when you're done.

- 8. Choose whose device updates you want to see.**

Click Home and then click Following (or just go to www.twitter.com/friends) to view a list of the people you follow. When device updates are on for your account, you'll see toggle buttons next to each person on your following list.



Make sure that your cellphone carrier has an unlimited text-messaging plan — or that you're willing to pay for a lot of extra texts — before setting Twitter device notifications to On. Twitter doesn't charge for texts, but your carrier might! Laura has unlimited texting even though she doesn't receive any text updates from Twitter, because she loves to use the text commands to add people, send tweets, and send direct messages.



You don't automatically receive device updates from everyone you follow on Twitter. You have to manually turn these device updates on for each individual. To check and see whether any given individual is set to device updates ON or OFF:

1. Go to that user's profile on Twitter.

You can access a user's profile by clicking the user's @username in one of his tweets.

2. Just under their avatar photo look for the device updates status.

The red dash and OFF means you won't get this person's tweets as SMS messages even when SMS device updates are turned ON for your account. The green check and ON means that you will.

3. Turn an individual's device updates on or off.

First, enable all device updates on your phone. Then on Twitter.com, go to the user's profile page ([twitter .com/dummies](http://twitter.com/dummies), for example) whose tweets you want sent to your phone. From there, you can toggle Device updates On and Off for many users at a time right on one page with the round button with a cellphone icon on it.

Of course, you can also control this setting using SMS on your phone. Send an **on username** message to turn Device updates on and **off username** to turn them off.



If you forget who you've set to receive mobile device updates from, you can always go to the list of people you're following by clicking Following (see Chapter 3 for more instructions) to find that information. It's listed underneath the person's username. If you turn device updates off, you won't be able to view it, but the information is still there and will reappear when device updates are turned back on for your account.

RSS feeds

You can receive updates from Twitter via an RSS (Really Simple Syndication) feed, much like you would for any blog or news Web site that you follow.

An RSS feed delivers the content to you so that you don't have to constantly be logged into the Web page. You just need a way to see the feed: Most people use something called a feed reader. You don't have to know much about technology to get one of these and set it up. You can choose from many feed readers out there, but we recommend Google Reader (<http://reader.google.com>). You already have one of these accounts if you use Gmail, Picasa, iGoogle, or other Google-owned services. Follow Google's pretty easy instructions to get started with Google Reader. Then come back to Twitter and set up your RSS feeds.

What can you see with a Twitter RSS feed? You can set up a feed for your @replies so you never miss a message, one for your DMs (direct messages), or one for the people whom you follow. After you get your RSS feed reader set up, you just have to look for the feed symbol in your browser's URL entry field (see Figure 4-2), click it, follow the instructions, and the feed shows up in your feed reader.

Figure 4-2:

An RSS button, which varies by browser.



The feed symbol is universal, not unique to Twitter. If you see one on a Web site, that means you can add its content to your feed reader.

To get your @replies RSS feed:

1. Click the Profile link in the upper-right of any Twitter page.

Your Profile page appears.

2. Click the Mentions tab in the right sidebar (which is marked with @username).

Your Mentions page appears.

3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click the orange RSS button.

You can also click the RSS logo in your browser. This logo is usually all the way to the right in the text field where you enter URLs, but it may differ, depending on which browser you use.

Clicking this button (or logo) automatically prompts you to add the feed to the feed address into Google Reader if you have it set up. If you use an application other than Google Reader, you may have to copy and paste the RSS feed's URL into your reader.

Desktop clients

You can access Twitter through one of the many downloadable desktop applications that third-party developers have created using Twitter's API. We cover these desktop clients more thoroughly in Chapter 7. Some of the most popular applications are Twhirl, Twitterrific, and TweetDeck (shown in Figure 4-3).

Basically, a Twitter client allows you to use Twitter from your desktop without having a browser open. Many of these clients also offer features that Twitter doesn't, including the ability to thread tweets and track conversations, create groups, filter content, open simultaneous accounts, delete direct messages, and more.

These services work by talking to Twitter to get the information they need. So, they don't work if Twitter isn't working; they rely on it to gather and relay the data you see and use.



Figure 4-3:
You can get
your Twitter
info by using
TweetDeck.

TwitterFox

A third-party application created for Twitter is TwitterFox (<http://twitterfox.net>), which is a plug-in that you can use with the Mozilla Firefox Web browser. *Plug-in* just means that the application gets installed right into the browser and runs from there. It won't run on Safari or Internet Explorer, and you can't use it if you don't use Firefox.

Subscribing to RSS feeds

If you want to set up an RSS feed for your direct messages or all your followers' tweets, simply repeat the steps to get your @replies RSS feed, clicking the link for your direct messages page or Twitter Home screen in Step 2. Now, you

can read Twitter from your RSS reader alongside blogs and news outlets, and you don't have to be logged into any service to stay on top of who's talking to or about you.



Although most plug-ins and add-ons made for Twitter are safe to put on your computer, always be careful any time you install something new. A good way to tell whether an application is okay is to ask your friends on Twitter whether they use it. Most active Twitter users are happy to provide tips and recommendations.

Mozilla approves plug-ins that have been submitted to its developer program. Plug-ins that are proven not to be harmful are endorsed by Mozilla.

Widgets and gadgets

Twitter and other sites offer widgets (or, as Google calls them, gadgets) that let you embed information from a service such as Twitter onto other sites so that you can share Twitter more easily. Sometimes, widgets come in the form of HTML code that you can copy and paste into a MySpace profile or blog template. Other times, they come in the form of an application that you have to install on a social-network platform, such as Facebook. You can use dozens and dozens of official and unofficial widgets for Twitter. Using free widget-building tools, anyone can build a widget using any RSS feed as the content supply, so there's no telling how many thousands of Twitter widgets actually exist.

Twitter has an official page where you can find the code for an embeddable widget, complete with step-by-step instructions for installing it. Just go to <http://twitter.com/goodies/widgets>.

You can find an official Twitter application for Facebook, too, which means that you can make your Twitter updates show up as your Facebook status updates, or you can display a badge of your tweets on your Facebook profile. You can find the Twitter application for Facebook at <http://apps.facebook.com/twitter>.

The Google gadget works on Google Desktop, as well as the iGoogle personal home page product. You can install the Google gadget by clicking the download button at <http://desktop.google.com/plugins/i/twitter.html>.

Preview: @anywhere

At the 2010 South by Southwest Interactive festival, Evan Williams (@ev) announced the creation of a new Tweeting platform called @anywhere. The idea is to recreate the experience of communicating with Twitter users on Twitter.com, but within the context of another Web site, article, or event.

For example, Twitter users could live-discuss the latest headlines on *The New York Times* (www.nytimes.com) or products they're considering purchasing on eBay (www.ebay.com).

Putting Twitter on your site

You might want to go a bit beyond run-of-the-mill widgets if you're hoping to put Twitter on another Web page seamlessly. If you have technical expertise or access to a good Web developer, you can build your own widget or plug-in for your site that uses the Open Twitter API. You can find details on building a widget at <http://apiwiki.twitter.com>.

If you're not a computer programmer or developer, you probably won't ever touch the Twitter

API directly, but you will be using it — without even knowing it — every time you use a third-party application. We mention Laura's company www.oneforty.com a handful of times in this book because its mission is to help those new to Twitter find the very best and most useful applications, services, and tools within the Twitter ecosystem. Please let her know whether it's helpful to you.

As this feature was announced just as this book's second edition was going into print, there are few sites using @anywhere. For more information about @anywhere, follow @anywhere on Twitter.com (twitter.com/anywhere) or check out the Twitter's Development portal at <http://dev.twitter.com/anywhere>.

Going Mobile: The Key to Happiness

In our experience, the key to Twitter happiness is Twitter mobility. You should be able to use Twitter anywhere, anytime, and any way that you want, particularly on your phone. You can get this mobility via SMS (which we talk about in the "Text messages (SMS delivery)" section, earlier in this chapter) or on the Twitter Mobile Web site at <http://m.twitter.com>. Depending on which mobile device you're viewing the mobile site, the interface might be missing a few of the regular, Web-based Twitter site's features (for example, you can't see your favorites or a list of your followers), but you can use it pretty much as you do the normal site (see Figure 4-4).

If you have a higher-end phone, such as the iPhone or BlackBerry, you can try out a few downloadable Twitter apps. Apple's iPhone has a nice interface for Twitter, and you can find several options in the iTunes App Store that you can download to make Twitter on the go even easier. Some of these apps (such as Twinkle and TwitterFon) are free, some (such as Tweetie, which you can see in action in Figures 4-5 and 4-6) cost a few bucks, and some (such as Twitterrific) have both free and paid versions.



Figure 4-4:
The robust
iPhone
m.twitter
.com
Web site.



Figure 4-5:
You can
read your
tweet
stream with
the Tweetie
iPhone
application.

BlackBerry users have fewer applications at their disposal, including the extremely popular TwitterBerry (shown in Figure 4-7). BlackBerry users also have a challenge — the device's specialized browser can't display all the content on Twitter, such as photos and some links.



Figure 4-6:
You can post new tweets by using Tweetie.



Figure 4-7:
TwitterBerry, a Twitter BlackBerry application



If you have a Windows Mobile phone, we recommend an application called ceTwit if you don't have a touch screen. If you do have a touch screen, look into an iPhone-like interface client called PocketTwit (made by Google Labs). Android users, try Twitroid (www.twitroid.com).

Everyone pretty much swears by the apps they love the best, and no user group is more enthusiastic than the iPhone crowd, whose debates over Twitterfon (free), Tweetie (\$2.99), and Twittelator Pro (\$4.99), among others, can keep a conversation going through several pints of beer at a tweetup.

These mobile Twitter apps barely scratch the surface of what you can find out there, and new ones are created fairly regularly. There's no real consensus on which is the best. Try out a few to see which ones you prefer.

Laura's company, oneforty (www.oneforty.com), has a much more complete list of Twitter applications that enhance your tweeting experience, answering your perennial Which app is best for...? questions.

The open-API difference

Twitter's open API fuels its flexibility, and that flexibility is a big part of what keeps Twitter users loyal through all its growing pains. The API is so customizable that you can create a completely new service for Twitter on a whim, based on what you want to do with it — which is a big plus, especially if you plan to mold Twitter to fit a specific company goal or make

it a big part of a marketing campaign or promotion. If you can't find an existing application that works with Twitter to make it do exactly what you need, you can either make one yourself or hire someone to do it. Full customization is rare on the Web, but with Twitter, you can mold it to work anywhere you need it to: at work, at home, or even while rock climbing.

Part II

Joining Your Flock on Twitter

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"Here's an idea. Why don't you start a social network for doofuses who think they know how to set a broken leg, but don't."

In this part . . .

After you set up a Twitter account and know how to find everything Twitter-related that you might need, you probably want to know and find the people you want to communicate with.

In this part, we show you how to find the people you may know outside of Twitter on Twitter, locate people who share your interests, and identify other personalities and brands that you may want to connect with using Twitter.

Chapter 5

Tweeting It Up

In This Chapter

- ▶ Following people
 - ▶ Scouring Twitter for interesting people to follow
 - ▶ Replying to messages, privately and publicly
 - ▶ Attracting new followers
-

One of the neatest byproducts of the Twitter experience is that your conversations, your followers, and your ability to interact with your network extends far past the Twitter.com interface into other platforms and even into the real world due to Twitter's ability to facilitate communications to plan both formal and spontaneous events. But equally important to accessing your Twitter account from virtually anywhere is understanding how to interact within the community.

In this chapter, we go over the nuts and bolts involved in discovering, managing, and interacting with your network: the people you follow on Twitter and the people who follow you. Additionally, we give you some hints about how to play well with others within the twitterverse so that you can start having conversations right away!

Finding People to Follow on Twitter

A key part of getting the most out of Twitter is knowing where and how to find people whose Twitter streams are of interest to you. Most people start by following their friends, associates, and people they know. However, millions of people use Twitter, so you might consider scouring Twitter.com for other people who can add value to your stream.

You can easily find and follow people on Twitter: You naturally browse to people's profiles when you think that something they say is interesting or relevant to you. But, when you start accumulating updates from the people you follow, you'll quickly realize that you need to figure out who's worth following. That process can become complicated because of the large size and diversity of the Twitter ecosystem.

Avid users have countless theories and strategies about the best ways and reasons to follow others. But, remember, Twitter is for your use, so you can make up your own rules as you go along, creating your own criteria for building up a Twitter stream.

Twitter is a very personalized experience. No two people use Twitter in exactly the same way, and no two people follow a given account on Twitter for exactly the same reasons. Quite literally, no two people experience the same Twitter because everyone is consuming different streams, and publishing to, and interacting with, different sets of readers.

Twitter is not a single village, as the term *Twitterville* implies. When Laura wrote “Twitter is my Village,” (<http://pistachioconsulting.com/it-takes-a-village-to-understand-twitter>), she meant that each tweeter’s personal community on Twitter functions like a village. Even now that Twitter has entered the mainstream, you’re still able to shape your experience by selecting who you listen to and interact with.

As you become better at your entire Twitter experience, you naturally develop and change your own guidelines for building your network. Luckily, Twitter is built to allow for these changes, so you don’t have to miss a beat.

Whether you’re looking for business associates, news sources, friendly conversation, or anything else, Twitter can help you surround yourself with people and companies that can enrich your stream.

Look who's talking

When you want to start looking for people to follow, see whether anyone’s already talked back to you. If you’ve already posted some tweets, people may have replied to you. (If you haven’t yet tweeted, what are you waiting for? Dive in and start tweeting!)

When someone wants to address you directly on Twitter, that user does so by replying to you. They simply put the @ symbol before your Twitter handle at the beginning of a tweet — that’s all it takes to reply. As a subtle point, if someone includes your name preceded by an @ symbol anywhere in their tweet, it’s more generally considered an @-mention. Either way, you can view any tweets that mention you on the Mentions tab in the sidebar (it’s the tab with @ followed by your username on it), assuming that those tweets are public or the person mentioning you has authenticated you to view their tweets (if their account is private).



If you’re completely new to Twitter and you’ve only posted a handful of tweets, you probably won’t have any mentions yet. That’s okay! You have plenty of other options for finding people to follow (see the next sections).

Searching for people

You can best search for people on Twitter by using one of two methods: Twitter Search (<http://search.twitter.com>) or the People Search function (<http://twitter.com/search/users>). You can also reach Twitter's People Search page (as shown in Figure 5-1) by clicking Find People in the upper-right corner of your Twitter screen's toolbar.

Another, lesser-known way to find people on Twitter is by simply using the Google search engine at www.google.com. Because Google indexes every public tweet, you can use it to find twitterers by interest or by name. To use Google to find twitterers that you might want to follow, either search their firstname lastname and the word Twitter or do a slightly more specific search this way:

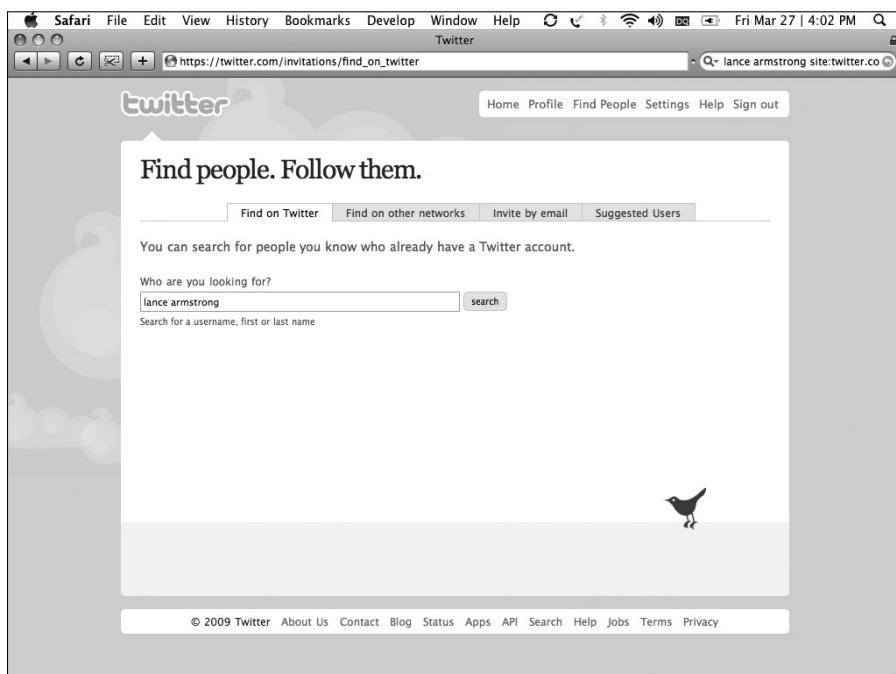


Figure 5-1:
Search
for Twitter
users on
the People
Search
page.

1. Type your keywords or the username you're looking for in the text box.
2. Add site:Twitter.com at the end of your search query.
3. Click the Search button.

See what pops up! Figure 5-2 shows the results of a search for Lance Armstrong.



You probably want to conduct people searches and keyword searches periodically to make sure that you continue to cultivate your Twitter experience's richness and value with new voices. Although Twitter is great for reconnecting with old friends and keeping up a conversation with existing business associates, it's also a fantastic way to reach out and find new people and companies to listen to.



A great way to get started following people on Twitter is to import your contacts from your Web-based e-mail account (like Yahoo! Mail or Gmail). We cover this in detail in Chapter 2.

Google search results for "lance armstrong site:twitter.com":

- Name Lance Armstrong: Location Austin, TX; Web http://www.livest... Bio 7-time Tour de France winner, full time cancer fighter - LIVESTRONG! ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong - 35k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** Getting a CT scan now. ... Twitter is a free social messaging utility for staying connected in real-time. ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong/statuses/1385004510 - 11k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** Whoa!! They just came to m ... Wtf?? APPS out to the twitter! 8:14 AM Feb 15th from TwitterBerry - Dpp_0063_pr_bigger - lancearmstrong, Lance Armstrong ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong/status/1212580498 - 11k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** http://twitpic.com/1i8t1 it in the world therefore hard to pawn it off. Reward being offered8:44 AM Feb 15th from TwitPic - Dpp_0063_pr_bigger - lancearmstrong, Lance Armstrong ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong/status/12125845744 - 11k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** Happy Birthday Mom!!! Love ... In other words, please do!!10:07 AM Feb 12th from TwitterBerry - Dpp_0063_pr_bigger - lancearmstrong, Lance Armstrong ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong/statuses/1203487166 - 11k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Lance Armstrong (lancearmstrong) on Twitter**
About lancearmstrong. Lance Armstrong (lancearmstrong), Austin, TX. 7-time Tour de France winner, full time cancer fighter - LIVESTRONG! web ... m.twitter.com/lancearmstrong - 7k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** Anti-doping control. I thi ... Anti-doping control. I think this is #15 but I'm losing count.3:17 PM Jan 28th from TwitterBerry - Dpp_0063_pr_bigger - lancearmstrong, Lance Armstrong ... twitter.com/lancearmstrong/status/1156844849 - 11k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)
- Twitter / Lance Armstrong:** Found "The Redneck" Horner ... At blast with him now. He just put 9 sugar packets in his tea. Wow.9:05 AM Feb 14th from

Figure 5-2:
The Google
results of
a Twitter
user search
for Lance
Armstrong.

Using Simple Search

Twitter's main search page (<http://search.twitter.com>) is great for advanced searching. But, sometimes, a quick search is what you need. Twitter makes it easy to do this, as well as save that search for immediate future use.

In the right-hand column, you can see a search field immediately below the Retweets link (shown in Figure 5-3). You can type anything you want there and when you press enter or click the magnifying glass, your Twitter feed turns into a live search result of all the tweets that match your search query.

If this is a search you think you'd be doing often, you can save that search by clicking on the Save this search button, marked by the green plus sign, on the upper-right hand corner of the feed. That search term sits inside of your right-hand sidebar for quick access to live search results. (You can find it under the search box.)

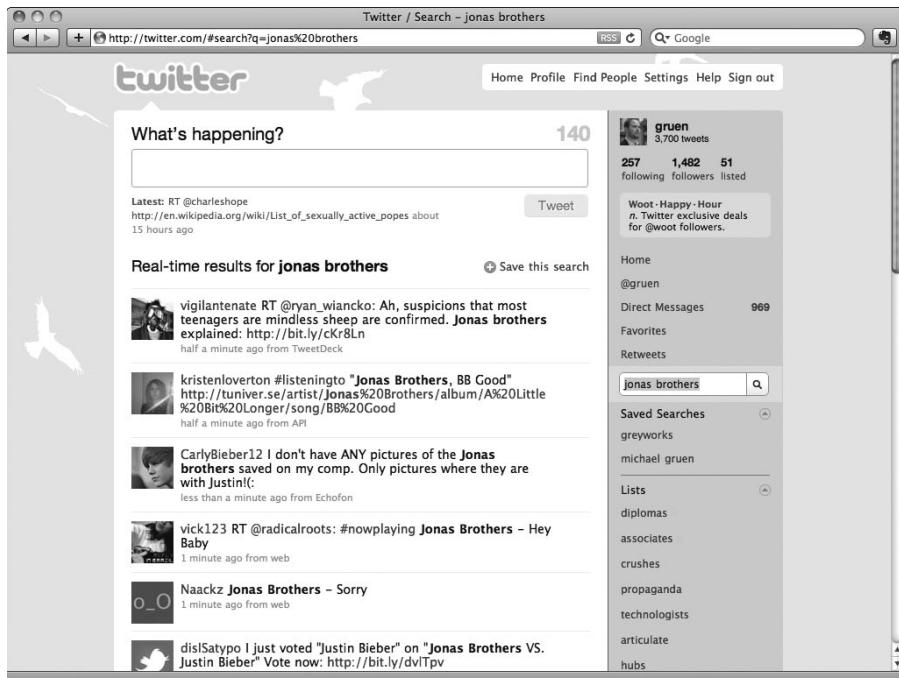


Figure 5-3:
Fast Twitter
Search for
the Jonas
Brothers.

Inviting people personally, through Twitter

Another option for inviting people to Twitter is to do it personally, directly to their individual e-mail addresses. You can find this tab (Invite By Email) on the Find People page (as shown in Figure 5-4), and it gives you a way to hand-pick people from your e-mail address book. You can also text Twitter at 40404 at anytime with the words **invite yourfriend@yourfriend.com** substituting in your friend's e-mail address, of course.

Keep in mind that Twitter doesn't offer you a chance to customize what the e-mail says. The person or company you invite gets a generic e-mail that mentions your Twitter handle and some basic information about how to sign up for an account. If you have people you want to invite to Twitter whom you think may not respond well to a generic e-mail, you can use the method described in the following section to invite them, instead.



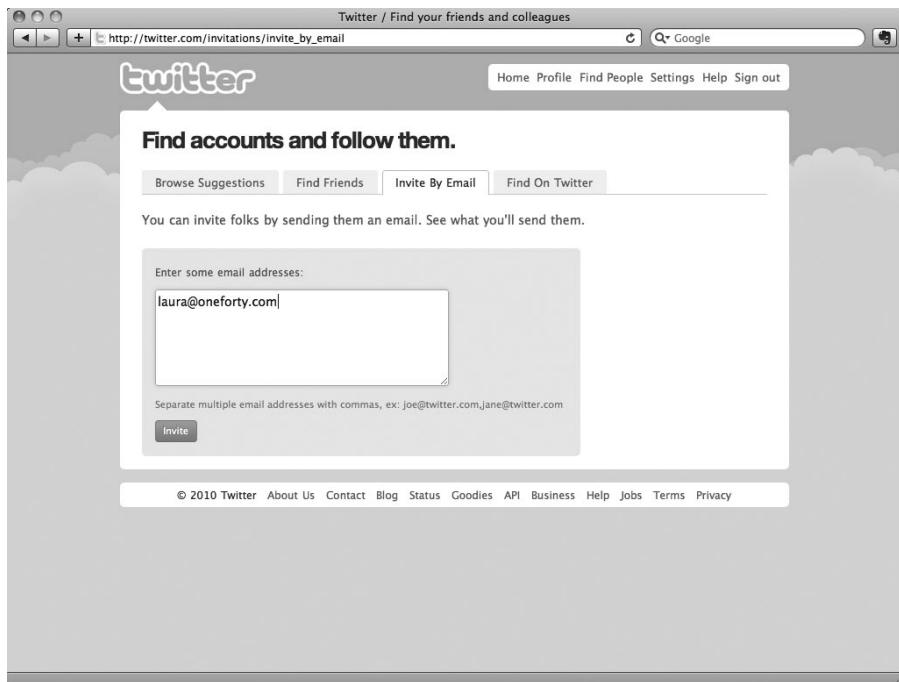


Figure 5-4:
The Twitter
Invite
By Email
screen.



The main drawback to any of the invitation options in Twitter's Web interface is that none of them offer a custom message option. If you know people whom you want to invite, and you think they'd respond better to a private or more personalized note, just shoot them a normal e-mail that includes a link to the Twitter main page (www.twitter.com) and a note about why they might benefit from signing up and joining in. It's often more effective to e-mail them a link to an article that is going to help them understand what uses of Twitter they may find valuable. Twitter is definitely a minute-to-learn, lifetime-to-master type of system.

Checking out Twitter Lists

One of Twitter's newer features is the ability for users to create lists of accounts. Unsurprisingly, they're called Twitter Lists, and they can provide some structure to the people that you follow in allowing you to categorize them.

For example, you may have a few different types of people you've followed: some are celebrities, some are friends you went to school with, others are people you work with. By using the Lists feature, you can assign those people to lists. You can view these lists as discreet Twitter streams so that when you view them, the only tweets that show up are from the person in that list.

You can use this feature to your advantage when finding other Twitter users to follow. For example, if a classmate of yours has found you on Twitter, you

may visit her profile and notice that she's created a list of people that went to your alma mater. By clicking on that list, you can see the usernames of everyone she has found on Twitter who went to your school. Or, your news-junkie friend may have a list of the best breaking-news Twitter accounts. You can go into that list, curated by your friend, and select the breaking news outlet that works best for you.

In short, you can use other people to help find accounts that can add value to your experience.



If you find a list that you really enjoy, you can add that list to your own Twitter List collection.

We cover Lists more in-depth in Chapter 7.

A community leads

Twitter users have come up with an interesting way of recommending people to follow — something called FollowFriday. It uses a community-driven system called hashtags, which we cover in Chapter 9. Our friend Micah Baldwin (@micah, pronounced *Me-ha*) started it, and he has this to say about it:

In January of 2009, I sent a simple tweet: "I am starting Follow Fridays. Every Friday, suggest people to follow, and everyone follow him/her. Today its @jeffrey and @dannynewman." After a suggestion to add the hashtag #followfriday and four folks retweeting it, FollowFriday was born.

After a few months, more than 100,000 tweets with more than 300,000 recommendations are sent each Friday (it actually begins on Thursday U.S. time because it's Friday overseas!) and it's growing each week.

FollowFriday mirrors what happens in the real world. One person suggests a book to read, or a restaurant to go to, or a person you should meet, and if you trust them, you take their word. The concept is very simple: Write a tweet listing two or three people you follow that you think others should follow as well, and provide a bit of an explanation. (Remember: It's only 140

characters, so be brief both with your recommendations and with your explanations!) For example, "@pistachio @micah @gruen are three people that make me laugh every day. #followfriday." That's it!

If you're new to Twitter and you're looking for people to follow, you can search for #followfriday at <http://search.twitter.com> to see people who have been recommended, or check out sites like <http://followfridays.com> and <http://topfollowfriday.com> to see frequently recommended Twitter users.

FollowFriday is exactly what makes Twitter great. It gives you the ability to participate, it's easy, and you can share people you're proud to know (even if it's just on Twitter) with other people. After all, Twitter is about sharing information and experiences with people you're proud to be associated with, in a very easy, participatory way.

Why Fridays? Fridays seem to work well because it's the end of the week, and people have the time to think about whom they would like to recommend. Plus, FollowTuesday just doesn't have the same type of ring, now does it?

By following back

By default, Twitter sends you an e-mail every time someone follows you. This is a useful starting point for finding people to follow because there's likely a reason why they followed you in the first place. It may be because they know you, or it may be because they think you're a good person to follow. Either way, it's nice to know when someone's following you.



Twitter.com, like any popular online communication tool, has spammers. Although Twitter has aggressively fought spam accounts, they still crop up from time to time. They're pretty easy to spot, usually offering you the usual fare of online deals or bedroom-related drugs. You can safely ignore them, but if you'd like to help Twitter identify these accounts, you can click the Block and Report for Spam button on their profiles.

If you find receiving Twitter notices a bother, you can turn them off:

1. Click **Settings** in the top-right navigation bar.

The Settings page opens.

2. Click the **Notices** tab (see Figure 5-5).

You see a list of e-mail notification options.

3. Select any of the e-mails you'd rather not receive.

Twitter / Notices

gruen's settings

Account Password Mobile Notices Profile Design Connections

New Follower Emails: Email when someone starts following me

Direct Text Emails: Email when I receive a new direct message

Email Newsletter: I want the inside scoop—please send me email updates!

Save

Notices
These settings control how much we bug you about various things.

Tips
Nudge only works if you have a registered device and it is on.
Be sure your email is correct in account settings to receive emails.

© 2010 Twitter About Us Contact Blog Status Goodies API Business Help Jobs Terms Privacy

Figure 5-5:
On the
Notices
screen, you
can choose
which, if
any, e-mails
are sent
to your
mailbox.

How to Follow People

Mechanically, following people on Twitter is dead simple. After you navigate to a person's Profile page, click the Follow button just below her avatar. And, you're done! Give it a shot:

1. **Browse to <http://twitter.com/dummies>.**
2. **Click the Follow button.**

The button changes to the word Following. Cool!

Alternately, you can post this message from SMS or any Twitter interface by typing **Follow username** or **F username**.

Following people on Twitter is straightforward. On the most superficial level, you just have to pay attention. Twitter is full of thousands of great conversations going on all around you. If you open yourself up to them, you may find that hundreds of excellent people are thrilled to meet you.

Following People Even More Quickly with Hover

When you're operating on Twitter-time, sometimes you may feel that it takes you too long to decide whether or not to follow someone when you see their username show up in your Twitter feed. For these reasons, Twitter developed the Hover feature.

The Hover feature is really straightforward: hover your mouse over anyone's username in the feed and a box pops up, giving you a quick summary of who that user is, giving you an easy way to understand the tweet in context, and allowing you to follow them right from the hover box!



The Hover feature has been known to be a little buggy, so if your Internet connection is slow or Twitter.com simply doesn't feel like it, you won't get the hover. However, the feature's only meant to make it easier for you to figure out who users are without navigating away. Visiting that user's profile will do the same thing, in any case.

Replying to Tweets

So, what happens when you receive an @reply, and you want to respond — or if you just want to respond to any tweet, for that matter? Hover your mouse cursor over the right side of the tweet in question when you see it in your stream on Twitter's Home screen, and images of an arrow and a star appear (as shown in Figure 5-6).

Clicking the Star icon bookmarks that tweet as a favorite — which we cover in Chapter 3. But clicking the Arrow icon sets up the Twitter entry field so that you can reply to that individual tweet. When you send your response, it says In Reply To below the tweet and includes a live link to the standalone page (also known as a *permalink*) for the tweet you responded to. Figure 5-7 shows a typical Twitter @reply.

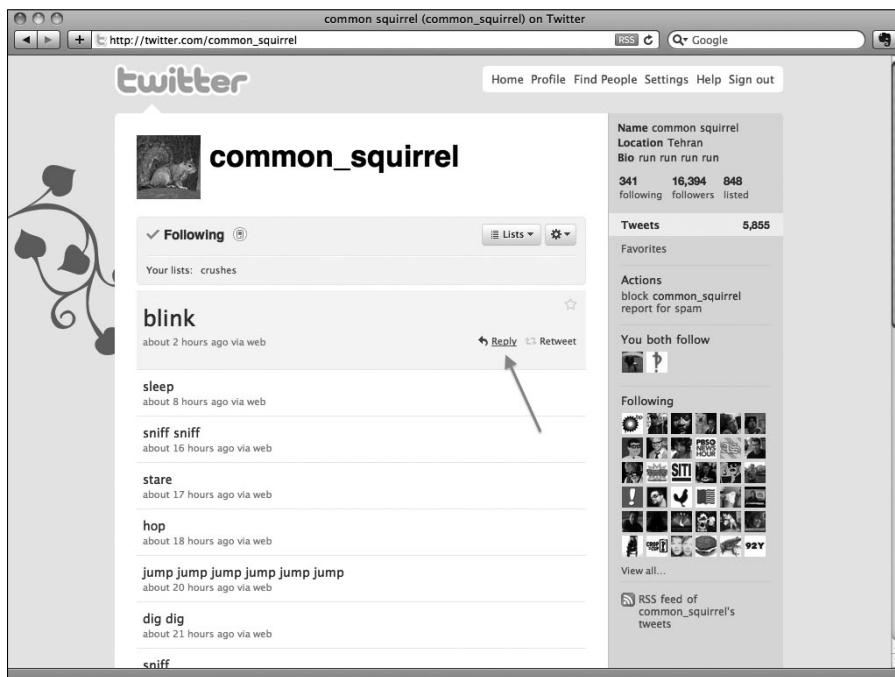


Figure 5-6:
Don't miss
the Reply
arrow!

You may find these permalinks helpful because Twitter is not great at threading tweets together by conversation. If you're familiar with a set of @replies and the links associated with them, you can much more easily navigate the conversation later. When you know how to access the individual page for each tweet, you can also link to that tweet directly if you choose to respond to it in a longer format outside of Twitter, such as a blog post.

You can reply to any tweet that you can see, and the procedure is the same, whether you're following the person or not. But, assuming your Twitter account is public, your @replies are public, too. If you want to use Twitter for private messages, the protocol is a little different, as we talk about in the section "Direct Messaging," later in this chapter.

The screenshot shows a Twitter search results page for the query '@gruen'. At the top, there's a search bar with the text 'Reply to amandalee:' and a reply box containing the message '@amandalee your last @-reply to me is going into Twitter For Dummies as you were the last person to @ me. Book goes to production tomorrow!'. Below this, there's a 'Tweet' button. To the right of the reply box, there's a user profile for 'gruen' with 4,023 tweets, 269 following, 1,514 followers, and 58 listed. A tooltip for 'Follow Finder' is visible. The main content area shows several tweets mentioning '@gruen': one from 'amandalee' (@gruen) about oil spills, another from 'bryanthatcher' (@gruen) about a Tesla, and others from 'greendreamin', 'adamhobson', 'soulfulness', and 'bryanthatcher' (@gruen) about electric cars. On the right side, there's a sidebar with navigation links like Home, Direct Messages (887), Favorites, Retweets, a search bar, and a list of saved searches including 'greyworks', 'michael gruen', '@namedrop', and lists named 'testing', 'diplomas', 'associates', 'crushes', 'propaganda', and 'technologists'.

Figure 5-7:
You can
respond
to tweets
by using @
replies.

Go ahead and jump right in

Given the casual and conversational tone of Twitter, you can pretty easily jump into an existing conversation on Twitter, and (unless you're trying) you don't look like you're barging in. Twitter users are aware that this is a public forum and contributions can come from anywhere and at anytime. Start by clicking one of the usernames involved in the conversation, or enter one or both usernames manually in the Update window. (**Remember:** The format for addressing a Twitter user is @username.) Then chime in by saying something relevant to their discussion.

Don't rush to be conversational to the point that you end up being irrelevant. If the conversation is about something you don't know anything about, hold off. But if it's about a movie that you've seen or a business theory that you've put into practice, pipe up!

It may take a few tries with a few different people to get the ball rolling. Don't be discouraged if you send out a few @replies and don't

get responses; some Twitter users, especially relatively new ones, don't always pay close attention or respond to @replies either from people whom they're not following or those who don't seem particularly perceptive to them. Many people on Twitter, however, respond very quickly to new voices in their Twitter stream because, for many on Twitter, the point is to be conversational.

Be patient about expecting replies to questions that are easily answered using Google or other resources. Also please be patient with people that a lot of people talk to. Demi Moore, for example, does a great job of conversing with the hundreds and hundreds of people who write to @mrskutcher every day, but if she tried to answer everyone, she would have no time to be with her family (or for that matter, to be beautiful and entertaining in her films!). To see how busy her @mentions tab is, just search @mrskutcher (<http://search.twitter.com/search?q=%40mrskutcher>).

Reteeting

In the early days of Twitter, it was commonplace for people not to just reply to tweets they liked, but to forward that tweet on to their own followers. This practice grew to be known as retweeting (RT or R/T for short) and was so popular that Twitter built that functionality directly into their interface.

To retweet a link, follow these steps:

- 1. Hover over the tweet that you'd like to forward on to your followers.**
- 2. Click the Retweet button.**

A confirmation dialog pops up, so click yes, and that tweet will be forwarded on to your followers.

To your followers, that tweet looks as if it came from the person who wrote the tweet in the first place, complete with their avatar picture and username. To credit you for the retweet, Twitter places your name directly below the tweet.



If the user has marked their updates as private, you won't see the retweet button. However, you can, of course, retweet them as you would before Twitter implemented the Retweet feature.

Rewetting the old-fashioned way

Although the Retweet feature is pretty neat, some users prefer the old way of doing things. (In fact, some Twitter API applications, which we cover in later chapters, don't include the retweet functionality, so it's good to know what the manual RT looks like in these cases.)

To retweet someone's tweet, simply retype or copy and paste that tweet into your Tweet prompt at the top of the page and format it like so: *RT @dummies This Tweet was written so you can practice retweeting.*

Some people (not us) prefer to retweet people this way:

This Tweet was written so you can practice retweeting. (via @dummies)



In our minds, Twitter etiquette says to make every effort to credit the original speaker of the tweet. When reviewing Twitter, many readers will read the beginning of the tweet and ignore the remainder or anything in parentheses following the tweet. Therefore, in our minds, it's more polite to recognize the speaker upfront.

Commentary on the retweet

Rewetting the old-fashioned way has some advantages. One compelling reason is that users can comment on the original message. Using Twitter's built-in retweet function, that's not possible as the original message is preserved and forwarded as-is. Therefore, to add commentary, you must either write it in another Tweet and link to the original, or use the old RT method if there's room for comment.

For example, one might say:

@neilarmstrong: That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.

Only to be retweeted with addendum:

@buzzaldrin: That was supposed to be "a man". Sheesh! RT @neilarmstrong That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.

(Note: we are as certain that these Twitter accounts are those of the famous astronauts as we are that the moon landing wasn't faked in a Hollywood basement.)

Direct Messaging

Private messages on Twitter are called direct messages (DMs). Like any other kind of tweet, they're limited to 140 characters in length. You can't send a DM to someone unless that Twitter user is following you — likewise, only your own followers can send you DMs.



What do you do if you want to get in touch with someone privately on Twitter but that person isn't following you? New Twitter users are often tempted to send @replies to that person saying "tried to DM but you don't follow" or something of the sort. Some Twitter users don't mind receiving those kinds of tweets, but many others see them as rude or as blatant attempts to get new followers.

So, if you're trying to get in touch with someone who doesn't follow you, you have some options:

- ✓ **Check the user's Profile page.** See whether he has made available some other form of contact information — a Web site URL, an e-mail address, or a blog. You can often find this info in a user's short bio section.
- ✓ **Conduct a Web search.** Try searching for the user on your favorite search engine.
- ✓ **Tweet a polite question publicly to the user.** While the you-don't-follow-me approach is a little obnoxious, most twitterers will make a reasonable effort to respond if you respect their time and make it clear why they should answer you. Send a message to @username expressing why you're requesting their time and attention, and ask that they respond privately. Just try to differentiate between the ability to reach out to someone and the right to demand a response.

Direct-messaging shorthand

When you're truly connected, you start to find going to the Direct Messages page every time you want to send someone a message a bit tedious. Thankfully, the folks at Twitter have come up with a shorthand. To send a DM without going to the Direct Messages page:

1. **Click in the What Are You Doing? window.**
2. **Type d, followed by a space, and then the username of the person to whom you want to send a direct message.**
3. **Type a space after his username and then write a message.**
The update should have this form: d dummies Hey, there!
4. **Click Send button to send the DM.**

We cover other shorthand tricks in Chapter 7.



One word of caution if you plan to send direct messages from a phone or by typing **d** and the username of the recipient: On a small keyboard, you can very easily make a typing error, such as misspelling the username, accidentally posting a letter other than d, pushing two d's, or something else. Look twice before you send your message to make sure that it's truly private and not a public tweet by accident, especially if it contains personal information that you don't want the whole Internet to know (such as a phone number or address).

Should I @ or DM?

When you try to decide whether to respond to somebody on Twitter by using a public @reply or a private DM, you should consider the following criteria:

- ✓ **Questionable content:** If your mother, grandmother, boss, or kid were looking over your shoulder at what you just started typing, would they be in any way embarrassed or disapproving? If the answer is yes, perhaps a direct message is in order.
- ✓ **Volume:** If you're a power user who posts to Twitter many times a day, every tweet goes into your followers' streams and contributes to the noise. You should be sensitive to this fact. If you tweet often, give your followers a break and save those one- or two-word responses, such as "@pistachio LOL" or "@dummies How?" for a direct message.
- ✓ **Sensitive information:** If you're supplying contact information, addresses, phone numbers, or other personal information that you don't want just anyone on the Internet to have access to, it's the right time for a direct message. Keep in mind that not everybody has the same standards regarding privacy and openness on the Web, so if you're sharing any information pertaining to anybody else's contact information or whereabouts, err on the side of caution and use a DM.



If you haven't protected your tweets, remember that whatever you write is indexed for all time. So, think twice!

Encouraging More Followers

Twitter is a very receptive environment for forging connections with new friends and contacts, so amassing a list of followers is relatively simple. Typically, you gain followers in the natural course of using Twitter, but here are a few guidelines to follow:

- ✓ **Be real.** Being genuine goes a long way, and you're likely to gain followers without even trying.

- ✓ **Be interesting.** You don't have to fascinate with every tweet you type, but do try to tweet about things more relevant to the world at large than what you just ate for lunch or the heinous traffic on your morning commute. Talk about your interests, instead. Talk about what's in the news. Or talk about what you think *should* be in the news.
- ✓ **Be involved.** The more "into" a topic you are, the more people will respond to your enthusiasm. Say that you're really into classic cars — don't talk just about your own fascination with them, but try to help other people on Twitter who might have questions on the subject. Get into heated conversations and debates, too. Without being too authoritative, position yourself as someone who has some valuable information on your chosen issue to see an increase in your number of followers.



Plenty of influential people use Twitter, from celebrities like Ashton Kutcher (@aplusk) and Britney Spears (@britneyspears) to politicians like Democratic Congresswoman Claire McCaskill (@clairecmc) and dozens more. Heck, now that Oprah Winfrey (@Oprah) tweets, it's almost proof enough in and of itself just to mention her.

If you're lucky enough that @Oprah posts a tweet with your @username in it — usually after you @Oprah her, and she notices and responds — you're going to be barraged by new followers who've seen your username in connection with that famous person's. But the most popular Twitter users have hundreds of thousands of followers and hundreds of people @replying to them, so don't count on a response from a famous tweeter as a way to get your foot in the door when it comes to Twitter influence.



It's also just rude to use someone like that. If you wouldn't interrupt the person next to you in line at the store with your question, it's probably not nice to interrupt someone with a lot of demands on their time with it. Conversation is two-way and most effective when it's generous to the listener, not selfish for the speaker.

Some Twitter users try to lure followers by offering contests, giveaways, or other incentives to reach certain pseudo-milestones, such as number of tweets or number of followers. This approach is a little bit cheesy and can look like you're desperate for new followers. In our opinion, you can have a better time on Twitter if you just allow your network to grow organically.



Regardless of how you get people to follow you, make sure to keep your Twitter interactions genuine. What you post on Twitter and contribute to the conversation, along with your ability to listen, determines your authority more than any follower count ever could.

We can't stress the importance of listening enough. The more you listen and hear what people have to say, and then respond thoughtfully, the more you can find out about people and the more well-rounded your experience (and the experience of your followers) becomes. Listening is the golden ticket of Twitter — make sure to do it every day that you log in. And log in often.

Chapter 6

Who's Using Twitter

In This Chapter

- ▶ Meeting the regular folks who tweet
 - ▶ Seeing how companies reach out on Twitter
 - ▶ Keeping up with politicians who use Twitter
 - ▶ Tweeting with celebrities
 - ▶ Identifying syndicated and community-created Twitter accounts
-

Because Twitter is so easy to use, Twitter opens doors and grants you all kinds of accessibility to people you might never have had access to before. It's become an effective tool for reaching out to people, companies, and even celebrities, both on- and offline.

Have you ever thought, "I wish I could talk to someone higher up the ladder and get a real solution to this problem!" or even "I'd love to be able to tell this person or that company what a good job they do, but I don't have their contact info!"? Well, Twitter can help you bridge that gap.

You may be surprised to see which companies, people, and brands have jumped onto Twitter. In this chapter, we cover some of these well-known early Twitter users and show you where you can find others. You can take a look through this chapter to see whether the person or company that you want to find is already here.

Tweeting with Regular People

After it gained a foothold among the digital-media enthusiasts at the South by Southwest Interactive Festival in 2007, Twitter quickly became a playground for techies and geeks. But over time, people from all walks of life have discovered Twitter and embraced it. Twitter allows a user to communicate effectively with one person or many, and the benefits can work for anyone.

Twitter has become a quick and easy way to stay connected to family, friends, and coworkers. People at all levels of all sorts of business can use Twitter to easily interact with customers and potential clients and get real-time engagement and feedback.

You'll probably want to use Twitter to talk to people whom you know in real life, such as your family and friends, as well as to meet some like-minded people. But you can also meet some very unconventional people on Twitter. Sometimes, the unconventional twitterers are the most interesting. On Twitter, you'll encounter everyone from celebrities (see Figure 6-1) to local religious leaders and great-grandmothers who blog. You never know who you may find from day to day, which is part of Twitter's charm.

But the biggest asset of Twitter is the sheer mass of everyday people who want to share their thoughts, spread the news, and network. You can probably discover at least one new thing from someone on Twitter every day that you log in.

Plus, as superficial as a stream of 140-character messages may seem, the Twitter community has evolved into a real way for real people to connect in the real world, too. You can easily set up meetings and events through Twitter on fairly short notice, so many twitterers find themselves turning their online connections into offline friendships and business relationships fairly often. Both introverted and extroverted people can really benefit from this environment.



Figure 6-1:
Martha
Stewart
has her
own Twitter
account.

So, what noncelebrity people can you find on Twitter? At first glance, you may think that everyone on Twitter is in the technology or marketing industries in some way. The core-base of twitterers who formed Twitter's initial user group still tweet away, and they're still some of the most prolific users. But you can also find thousands of people tweeting who are just like you, your mom, or your best friend from high school — in fact, your mom and your best friend from high school may already be on Twitter.



Just because a Twitter user isn't one of the most prolific people on the service doesn't mean that person isn't worth your time. Some of the most interesting twitterers post less than others, waiting to add their two cents until they think they have something worth saying. Keep an eye out for those people and follow them as they become visible to you — you sure can get more value out of following them than following someone who posts 20 times a day about their dog.



Regardless of whom you know on Twitter, you may want to set a few boundaries. Twitter works on the Internet, after all, and even though the Twitter community has tended to be a trustworthy one, it's growing rather fast now. Also remember that Google indexes your tweets, so the whole Internet can see what you say. Exercise caution! Don't blurt out sensitive information — say, your home address or phone number — in public tweets. Save those for e-mail or direct messages.

Verified Accounts

As Twitter expanded in popularity, so did the number of fake Twitter accounts claiming to be celebrities and popular brand names. To combat identity loss, Twitter now verifies accounts of public and popular names. These are called Verified Accounts.

Verified Accounts are accounts that the Twitter staff have verified as being who you'd expect them to be. It's an opt-in service, so although the Twitter accounts @CNN and @NYTimes are both who you would expect them to be, as of time of print, only @CNN has Verified Account status.

You can tell whether or not an account is verified by navigating to the account's profile page (twitter.com/username) and looking for the Verified Account logo right above the Twitter User's name, within the sidebar column.

If you are still unsure, Twitter puts all of its verified users into a Twitter list on @verified, its dummy user account for verified accounts. It's also a pretty handy place to find other users of that category you might want to follow.



If the Verified Logo is anywhere other than the upper-right corner of the side column, that account is likely not the user you think it is.



In fact, we have a confession: Even we get it wrong from time to time. In the first edition, we listed Tina Fey as a celebrity to follow on Twitter. Unfortunately, the @tinafey account was not Tina Fey, as she confessed sometime early in 2009. Bummer, because we really like Tina Fey.

The process for becoming a verified account is a bit tricky and will change over time. For live, up-to-the-minute status on how you might become a Twitter verified account, see: <http://twitter.com/help/verified>. Be forewarned! If you suspect you won't be eligible for Verified Account processing, chances are good you won't be. Not even we are verified!

Building Company Relationships with Twitter

Many companies have found value in Twitter as a way to build awareness of their brand name, strengthen relationships with customers, provide better and more immediate customer service, and boost sales. Companies' presences on Twitter range from individual Twitter accounts belonging to CEOs and employees, to corporate accounts for the brand run by teams of marketing or PR representatives.

Here are some of the most famous examples of companies that have gotten some positive buzz for their presence on Twitter:

➤ **Zappos.com:** This online retailer was founded in the dot-com boom and is based in Las Vegas. It has fully integrated Twitter into its corporate structure. Not only does the company monitor and use Twitter for customer service and feedback, but CEO Tony Hsieh encourages Zappos.com employees to participate on Twitter to keep the world posted on what's going on in the company. (He even has an account for his cat, El Gato, who is @el_gato.)

Of nearly 1,600 Zappos.com employees, more than 400 are on Twitter, (<http://twitter.zappos.com/employees>) actively tweeting to one another, about their own lives and work, and, in the process, Zappos.com. Hsieh himself often responds to Twitter users if they tweet him about a problem or specific need. Hsieh and the rest of Zappos.com make sure that they're engaged with their customer base, both current and potential. Their dedicated microsite <http://Twitter.Zappos.com> features Twitter searches for every brand they sell, collected tweets about Zappos, and an amalgamation of every employee's tweets and profiles.

- ✓ **Comcast:** After serious issues with negative connotations to their brand name, this cable company took Twitter by surprise (although they had been actively listening to Twitter for two months when they did) and established the Comcast Cares account (@comcastcares), run by Frank Eliason, the company's director of "digital care." Frank now has a team of employees on Twitter who handle customer service, helping as many as they can and backed up by the ability to escalate problems directly into Comcast's executive customer service department. How this will scale remains to be seen, but Frank's team is extremely dedicated and inspiring and has attracted substantial press coverage and goodwill toward the company.
- ✓ **Dell:** This computer manufacturer has also had some branding issues. At one point, customers filled a popular anti-Dell Web site with negative feedback and derogatory remarks. The company countered with a strong social media program that now includes real people behind active Twitter accounts, such as @RichardAtDell, offering customer service support and Twitter-only discount deals (DellOutlet) that led to over a million in sales. Dell, which also maintains a Twitter-focused microsite at www.dell.com/twitter, is engaging with customers in several innovative ways thanks to Twitter's ability to enable real-time interactions and on-the-ball responses.

In fact, companies in all kinds of industries are using Twitter effectively. Here is just a tiny sampling of some companies that do business related to food, drink, and nightlife:

- ✓ The Roxy Theater (<http://twitter.com/theroxy>)
- ✓ 21st Amendment (<http://twitter.com/21stamendment>)
- ✓ Flying Dog Ales (<http://twitter.com/flyingdog>)
- ✓ Elanas Pantry (<http://twitter.com/elanaspantry>)
- ✓ Pangaea Organica (<http://twitter.com/pangaeaorganica>)
- ✓ Templeton Rye (<http://twitter.com/templetonrye>)

These retailers tweet:

- ✓ Seventh Generation (<http://twitter.com/seventhgen>)
- ✓ GiftGirl (<http://www.twitter.com/giftgirl>)
- ✓ Comcast (<http://twitter.com/comcastcares>)
- ✓ Network Solutions (<http://twitter.com/netsolcares>)
- ✓ Baby Fish Mouth (<http://twitter.com/bfmwear>)
- ✓ Second Life (<http://twitter.com/secondlife>)

These publishing companies have Twitter accounts up and running:

- ✓ Grand Central Publishing (<http://twitter.com/grandcentralpub>)
- ✓ Little, Brown and Company (<http://twitter.com/littlebrown>)
- ✓ MEP Publishers (<http://twitter.com/meppublishers>)
- ✓ Septagon Studios (<http://twitter.com/septagonstudios>)
- ✓ Yale Press (<http://twitter.com/yalepress>)

If you're looking for travel info, check out these Twitter accounts:

- ✓ Booking Buddy (<http://twitter.com/bookingbuddy>)
- ✓ Global Base Camps (<http://twitter.com/globalbasecamps>)
- ✓ HotelChatter (<http://twitter.com/hotelchatter>)
- ✓ Seat Guru (<http://twitter.com/seatguru>)
- ✓ Smarter Travel (<http://twitter.com/smartertravel>)
- ✓ Travel Rants (<http://twitter.com/travelrants>)

For a sampling of resorts and hotels on Twitter, check out the following:

- ✓ Heavenly Ski Resort in South Lake Tahoe (<http://twitter.com/skiheavenly>)
- ✓ Luxor Hotel and Casino (<http://twitter.com/luxorlv>)
- ✓ Mandalay Bay Resort and Casino (http://twitter.com/mandalaybay_LV)
- ✓ MGM Grand Hotel and Casino (<http://twitter.com/mgmgrand>)
- ✓ Treasure Island Hotel and Casino (<http://twitter.com/TIvegas>)

If you want some resources on financial matters, business, and budgeting, have a look at these accounts:

- ✓ Capgemini (<http://twitter.com/capgemini>)
- ✓ H&R Block (<http://twitter.com/HRBlock>)
- ✓ Lenderflex (<http://twitter.com/lenderflex>)
- ✓ LenderflexCares (<http://twitter.com/lenderflexcares>)
- ✓ QuickBooks (<http://twitter.com/quickbooks>)
- ✓ QuickenLoans (<http://twitter.com/quickenloans>)

Thousands and thousands of businesses large and small are using Twitter. For more information, you can read Pistachio Consulting's TouchBase blog (www.touchbaseblog.com) or browse the extensive Twitter for Business bookmarks that Pistachio maintains on the TouchBase link blog (<http://delicious.com/touchbaseblog>). Easiest way to keep up with both? Twitter, of course. Follow @touchbase to receive a tweet when either of these resources is updated.

Talking Politics with Actual Politicians

Politicians have been taking to Twitter as a means to connect with their constituents and their fellow politicians — as well as to give a more intimate look into their lives at a time when *transparency* is one of the most positive buzzwords around. The Democratic Party was the first to jump on the bandwagon, and many users started exploring Twitter in the midst of Barack Obama's tech-savvy and successful presidential campaign. But many prominent Republicans are now onboard as well, as evidenced by the hashtag #tcot, which stands for Top Conservatives on Twitter.



Government figures have to deal with privacy and legal issues that most other tweeterers don't, so politicians may occasionally seem a bit on the quiet side when tweeting.

Here are some political groups and figures to get you started:

- ✓ U.S. Democratic Congressional Campaign Committee (<http://twitter.com/dccc>)
- ✓ U.S. National Republican Congressional Committee (<http://twitter.com/nrcc>)
- ✓ U.S. President Barack Obama (<http://twitter.com/barackobama>)
- ✓ California Governor Arnold Schwarzenegger (<http://twitter.com/schwarzenegger>)
- ✓ The Office of British Prime Minister David Cameron (<http://twitter.com/number10gov>)
- ✓ Former Vice President Al Gore (<http://twitter.com/algore>)
- ✓ The White House (<http://twitter.com/whitehouse>)

Note that some of these accounts aren't maintained by the people who use them. President Barack Obama's account, for example, is maintained by a staff member.

Following Celebrities on Twitter

Many people are hearing about Twitter for the first time because they've seen it on entertainment news shows such as *Access Hollywood* or *The Soup*. Celebrities use Twitter, too! The celebrities who use Twitter do so for different reasons:

- ✓ **To connect with fans:** Bands such as Coldplay (@coldplay) announce tour and concert dates by using Twitter. Cyclist Lance Armstrong (@lancearmstrong) provides information about the race circuit and his charity efforts.
- ✓ **To get personal:** Basketball star Shaquille O'Neal (@THE_REAL_SHAQ) and celebrity couple Ashton Kutcher (@aplusk) and Demi Moore (@mrskutcher) use Twitter to offer an intimate — and often irreverent — glimpse into their lives.
- ✓ **To share interests:** Rapper MC Hammer (@MCHammer), who founded a Web video startup called DanceJam.com, uses his Twitter stream to help promote new artists, share his favorite music, and offer lively thoughts on the state of the industry.
- ✓ **To be real:** Singers Lady Gaga (@ladygaga) and Sara Bareilles (@SaraBareilles) tweet just like the rest of us — gushing in excitement over successes, complaining over tired feet and other mundane life moments that make theirs seem a whole lot more "real."

In many ways, Twitter functions as a sort of impromptu fan club for tech-savvy celebs both renowned and up-and-coming. In the weeks leading up to publication, Oprah Winfrey (@Oprah) and other world-renowned household brands have started to sign up. Rumor has it that 1.5 million new people reached Twitter.com in the weekend after Ashton Kutcher appeared on her show and Oprah started to tweet.

Here are a few more Twitter accounts you may want to take a peek at:

- ✓ The Dalai Lama (<http://twitter.com/dalailama>)
- ✓ Jimmy Fallon (<http://twitter.com/jimmyfallon>)
- ✓ Rainn Wilson (<http://twitter.com/rainnwilson>)
- ✓ 50 Cent (<http://twitter.com/50cent>)
- ✓ John Mayer (<http://twitter.com/johnmcayer>)
- ✓ Jimmy Eat World (<http://twitter.com/jimmyeatworld>)
- ✓ Wil Wheaton (<http://twitter.com/wilw>)
- ✓ Soleil Moon Frye (<http://twitter.com/moonfrye>)
- ✓ John Cleese (<http://twitter.com/johncleese>)



People do start Twitter accounts using celebrities' names, and they often get a whole slew of followers who have no idea that they're not following the "real" celebrity — the person they think they're following. Impersonating someone on Twitter violates Twitter's Terms of Service, and Twitter has shut down accounts by impersonators. You can usually tell whether the person is legit by looking at the number of followers — if he has a large number of followers, the chances are good that he's for real, but even that isn't a guarantee. Of course, you may not care if the person is the real celebrity if you actually enjoy the person's tweets!

Twitter Directories

To be honest we, the *Twitter For Dummies*, 2nd Edition, team simply can't compete with timeliness or thoroughness of some online Web sites when it comes to finding the buzzworthy people to follow for you. Thankfully, Twitter.com and a number of sites have made finding popular users even easier.

Twitter.com has a built-in list of suggested users (see Figure 6-2). In the top-right navigation bar, click on Find People and then the Browse Suggestions tab, and Twitter will break out a number of users you can follow based on category.

The screenshot shows a Twitter web page titled 'Sources in Charity'. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for 'Browse Suggestions', 'Find Friends', 'Invite By Email', and 'Find On Twitter'. Below the navigation, a message reads 'Look who else is here. Start following them!'. To the left, a sidebar lists categories: Art & Design, Books, Business, **Charity** (which is selected), Entertainment, Family, Fashion, Food & Drink, Funny, Health, Music, News, Politics, Science, Sports, Staff Picks, Staff Picks for Haiti, Technology, Travel, and Twitter. The main content area displays profiles for four users under the heading 'Sources in Charity': 1) National Geographic (@NatGeoSociety) - Bio: Inspiring people to care about the planet. 2) UNICEF (@UNICEF) - Bio: Founded in 1946, the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) is the driving force that helps build a world where the rights of every child are realized. 3) Change.org (@change) - Bio: Change.org raises awareness about important causes and empowers people to take action with leading nonprofits. 4) Bill Gates (@BillGates) - Verified account, Bio: Sharing cool things I'm learning through my foundation work and other interests... At the bottom of the page, there's a link to 'Open "http://twitter.com/invitations/suggestions" in a new tab'.

Figure 6-2:
Twitter
users who
are of and
are relating
to Charity.

From here, you can easily find the popular and prolific users who match the kind of Twitter stream you want to cultivate.

Additionally, a number of third-party Twitter user directories have grown popular over the years. One favorite is WeFollow ([www.wefollow.com](http://wefollow.com)), shown in Figure 6-3, which not only lists popular Twitter accounts to follow, but ranks them as well. It also features the ability to sort and search for users based on tags.

For example, if you want to search for authors, you can type Authors on the search box on top and find all the users, ranked loosely by influence. If you want, you can add yourself to WeFollow. Just click the upper-right button and follow the instructions on-screen.

The screenshot shows the WeFollow website interface. At the top, there's a search bar with the placeholder "Enter a tag..." and a button "Add yourself to WeFollow". Below the header, there are several sections of user lists:

- Celebrity** section: Shows profiles for britneyspears, TheEllenShow, perezhlilton, KimKardashian, Oprah, and RyanSeacrest, each with their follower count (e.g., 4,620,954, 4,422,215, etc.).
- Music** section: Shows profiles for johnmayer, iamdiddy, coldplay, petewentz, snoopdogg, and ashleytisdale, each with their follower count (e.g., 3,170,762, 2,527,125, etc.).
- Socialmedia** section: Shows profiles for mashable, TechCrunch, aplusk, kevinrose, guykawasaki, and zappos, each with their follower count (e.g., 1,982,347, 1,380,820, etc.).
- Entrepreneur** section: Shows profiles for aplusk, TechCrunch, tonyrobbins, iamdiddy, guykawasaki, and zappos, each with their follower count (e.g., 4,695,091, 1,360,620, etc.).

On the right side, there are two large boxes: "Top Tags" and "Top Cities". The "Top Tags" box lists categories like Celebrity, Music, Socialmedia, Entrepreneur, News, Blogger, Tech, TV, Actor, and Comedy, each with a rank number. The "Top Cities" box lists cities like New York, NY; Los Angeles, CA; London, UK; Chicago, IL; Atlanta, GA; San Francisco, CA; Toronto, Canada; Boston, MA; New York City; and Washington, DC, each with a rank number.

Figure 6-3:
WeFollow:
A comprehensive
Twitter user list.

Signing Up for Syndicated Material

Plenty of Twitter accounts syndicate material from all kinds of online non-Twitter outlets: event listings, blogs, newspapers' Web sites, and so on. These accounts fall into a sort of gray area on Twitter: Most of them are

quite welcome in the site's community, and, in the case of news outlets such as *The New York Times* (@NYTtimes) and CNN (@CNNBrk), make up some of Twitter's most-followed accounts.

Cable news outlet CNN has nailed it when it comes to using Twitter for more than just headline syndication, letting Twitter really enhance its broadcasts. Their newscasters not only use Twitter accounts to both interact with viewers and relay breaking news stories, but anchor Rick Sanchez (@CNNRickSanchez) fields questions from Twitter followers in real time on his on-air program, *Rick Sanchez Direct*. Interestingly, though, CNN's most followed account, @CNNBrk, was developed by a fan, James Cox (@imajes) who later worked cooperatively with CNN and eventually sold it to them for an undisclosed amount.

Here are some news and media Twitter accounts you can check out:

- ✓ Harpers (<http://twitter.com/harpers>)
- ✓ Marvel Entertainment (<http://twitter.com/marvel>)
- ✓ The New Yorker (<http://twitter.com/newyorker>)
- ✓ NPR (<http://twitter.com/nprnews>)
- ✓ Wired News (<http://twitter.com/wired>)

Tweeting in Unison

Sometimes, users or organizations create a Twitter account so that the community can feed it with updates. These community-created Twitter accounts can be automated (through the use of a script or bot) or moderated. But either way, these co-authored accounts gather the content from many Twitter users, sometimes anonymously. This aggregated stream of tweets can incorporate anything from stories to poems to confessional, and the rest of the Twitter community can subscribe and follow the results.

One of the first of these community Twitter accounts was 140Story (@140story), tiny stories told in 140 characters. Other Twitter accounts have popped up that aggregate tweets into short stories, like a giant Mad-Lib.

But no list of community Twitter accounts would be complete without SecretTweet (@secrettweet). Similar to the popular Web site PostSecret (@postsecret), SecretTweet gives Twitter users a place to share their deepest, darkest secrets on Twitter's public timeline without divulging their identities. Twitter users can get something off their chests and read the secrets of others. SecretTweet has been called everything from addicting to brilliant to sad.

Small Business, Big Community: NYC's @shakeshack

Small businesses wanting to use Twitter to build loyalty, take note. Here's what Jason Schwartz (@jschwa), the gentleman who implemented the @shakeshack bot (see figure), has to say about the Twitter community built by twittering fans of the Shake Shack, one of New York City's most social eateries.

The heart of Silicon Alley is designated by the Shake Shack, a burger joint in Madison Square Park. Lunchtime lines stretch around the Manhattan refuge for the fabled burgers and shakes. It is the favorite meeting place of NY-based tech startups to discuss business, social media, and how to push the medium forward.

To facilitate tweetups (impromptu meetings facilitated by Twitter), the @shakeshack bot was created. This is how it works:

1. *Someone (say, me, @jschwa) decides to head to the Shake Shack and tweets*

@shakeshack I'm in line, come join me for lunch

2. *The @shakeshack bot then automatically retweets this message, saying:*

Via @jschwa I'm in line, come join me for lunch

3. *People who follow @shakeshack see the tweet and join their colleague, who is likely close to ordering by the time they arrive.*

The @shakeshack bot is regularly used to report the length of the line, organize snow ball fights, and as part of the networking fabric of Silicon Alley (a nickname given to the area of Manhattan where a concentrated number of tech startups are located).

Hundreds, if not thousands of NYC area tweeters are now more aware of the Shake Shack, and it's become a must-visit for Twitter enthusiasts when in NYC for meetings or pleasure.

For the curious and technically-inclined, the code for the @shakeshack bot can be found here: <http://smr.absono.us/2008/04/anatomy-of-a-twitter-bot>.

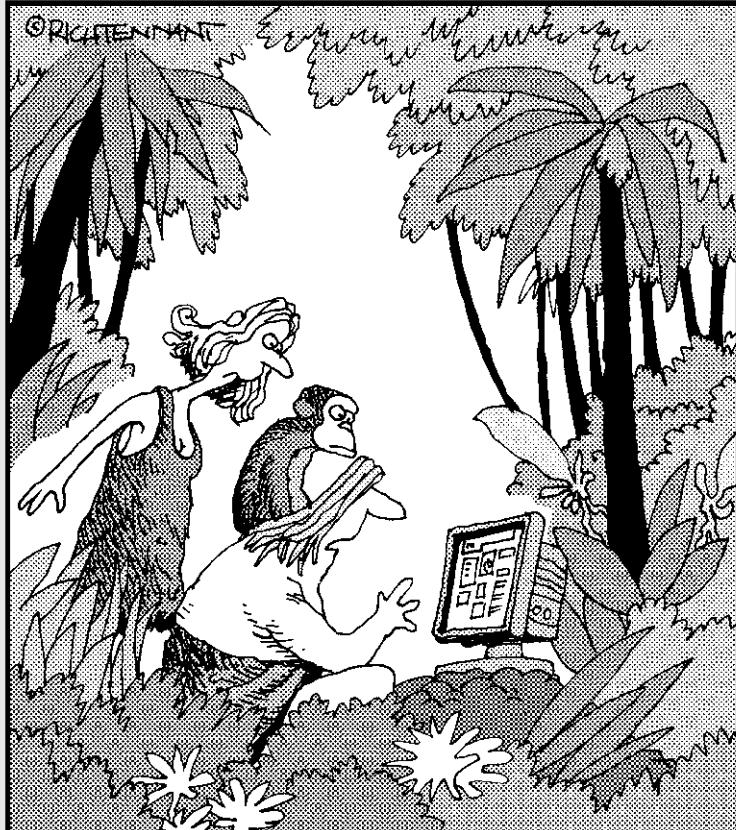


Part III

Twittering in High Gear

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"I know it short username, but
@METARZAN just seem right."

In this part . . .

If you're reading this part, you've probably already established a bit of a presence on Twitter and have some friends and followers. In this part, we kick it up a notch.

We go over the tools and tricks that can make your Twitter experience more efficient, more rewarding, and more accessible for you, such as third-party applications and mobile updating.

Chapter 7

Tricks of the Twitter Gurus

In This Chapter

- ▶ Minding your Twitter manners
- ▶ Adding links to your Twitter updates
- ▶ Exploring your Twitter activity
- ▶ Tweeting like a pro with shorthand codes

The more you use Twitter, the more you'll notice how complex the potential uses of this deceptively simple service have become. Celebrities, companies, and all sorts of everyday Twitter users are discovering their voices on Twitter, creating a whole new culture in the process. Yet at the same time, each tweeter has a slightly different way of using Twitter.

In this chapter, we provide an overview of protocol, etiquette, and culture that have developed on Twitter as well as some hints to better enhance your Twitter.com literacy. We help you figure out what tends to be more effective and what tends to not go over well on Twitter, plus ways to be efficient. Keep in mind, though, you're going to come up with your own rules, standards, and tricks over time while you're tweeting.

Following Twitter Protocol

Many Twitter neophytes want to know what the rules are or whether Twitter has standard protocol and etiquette. Like many other social media sites, Twitter sprang from a close-knit group of early adopters who set the rhythm. Because Twitter was a favorite of Silicon Valley's new-media elite long before it broke into the mainstream, some insider jokes and conventions used can be confusing, however they have since become part of the lexicon. Longtime users have certainly fallen into certain habits or sets of rules. But, remember, Twitter is what you make of it and you are free to do your own thing.

Like any other social-media company, Twitter has a Terms of Service (TOS) agreement that all members must adhere to or risk having their accounts suspended or deleted. You can access Twitter's terms at <http://twitter.com/terms>. You won't find anything particularly surprising in them: You must be at least 13 years old to create an account and use the service, you can't engage in abuse or harassment, you can't spam other members or participate in activities that break any laws, and so on. The terms are actually more liberal than most Web services' regulations; pornography and explicit language, for example, aren't banned.

Beyond the terms of service, Twitter etiquette is simple: Be genuine and non-deceptive and provide value. Other than that, just use Twitter how it suits you. Consider this an unofficial code of conduct (although, they're more like guidelines). But, do keep in mind that Twitter keeps tabs on "deceptive" activity: Twitter can and will ban accounts that impersonate celebrities or companies if those accounts don't make it clear that they're unofficial or parodies. This policy is a contentious point in the Twitter community: Many members were upset when the @cwalken account, belonging to an aspiring comedian pretending to be actor Christopher Walken, was deleted from the system.

Beyond the simple regulations, you can't really use Twitter in a right or wrong way because no two people use it for exactly the same reasons. But some members certainly have their opinions:

- ✓ Some users complain when others tweet too often, whereas others complain that their contacts don't tweet enough. (This complaint is a little silly. Don't like the contents? Turn the dial. Use a third-party tool. Unsubscribe.)
- ✓ Some users take issue with strings of @replies and wonder why those conversations weren't conducted in a private forum.
- ✓ You may encounter confusing, even conflicting, advice and back-seat tweeting from the handful of people on Twitter who aren't comfortable without rules. Don't take them too seriously: Twitter itself just isn't that rigid. Your Twitter community will help define your standard.



Be polite on Twitter, for the most part, but no more or less so than you're expected to be in the real world — just keep in mind that Twitter is a public forum. Twitter posts and feeds get exported outside of Twitter and onto Twitter-based Web sites, blogs, social-media sites such as Facebook, and aggregators such as FriendFeed. If you know you plan to, say, sync up your Twitter account with your Facebook account so that your tweets appear as your Facebook status message, keep in mind that you're branching out beyond the Twitter community and culture. (We cover this a bit more in the next chapter.)

Although users love Twitter's largely rule-free nature, some generally accepted behaviors have evolved over time. You can ease your transition into the culture of Twitter by getting familiar with these behaviors and speech tendencies before you first start out. Establish dedication and credibility early on, in part, by knowing your way around the following Twitter customs.

Language and abbreviations

Over time, any group of people that interacts regularly falls into its own "vernacular" way of talking. Twitter is no exception to that rule; in fact, it may be even more subject to it because of the 140-character limit. Twitter's lexicon has evolved over time to include unique words, phrases, and abbreviations that most regular users understand and recognize. But new users often find these references confusing.

Right off the bat, you see a lot of puns involving the word "Twitter," with the prefixes tw- or twi- added to the front: tweet, tweep, tweetup, and so on. At first, it looks like baby talk — and indeed, it can get a bit over-the-twop. (See our point?) Not all members are fans of corny terms such as tweep. Others think the Twitter-specific language is fun, or an easy and obvious way to delineate something as Twitter-specific. Either way, whether you plan to use goofy Twitter-speak or not, it does help to know what this stuff means.

Many application and Web site names have adopted Twitter-speak words for products and services associated with Twitter or which tap into Twitter's application programming interface (API) to use Twitter data. For example, the word *twinfluence* was used casually to describe (no shock here) the kind of social influence that individual Twitter users had within the Twitter community. Eventually, the slang term was used to name twInfluence (www.twinfluence.com), an application that gets its data from Twitter and turns it into a report that estimates Twitter users' power and influence.



Plenty of eccentric people use Twitter, not to mention loads of subcultures and sub-communities. Just because you see an unfamiliar term doesn't mean it's part of the Twitter vernacular. For Twitter terms you should be familiar with, check out the glossary at the back of this book.



We purposely didn't include in this glossary some of the nonsense words that begin with the tw- prefix. Twitterers don't widely use them, many avid users actually find them rather annoying, and beginning to use them more often may be the first sign that you're a twitterholic!

Engaging others on Twitter

On Twitter, the name of the game is engagement. Whether you use Twitter for business or fun, you don't just want to sit back and watch the stream flow by — you want to genuinely interact with people. You have to know how to listen as much as know how to converse (this goes twice for businesses) — but it always boils down to engagement.

(Okay — you don't absolutely have to engage people on Twitter. But, we think your Twitter experience will become a lot more fruitful if you do.)

First and foremost, do not be shy about finding people who share your interests, even if you don't know them (yet). Use <http://search.twitter.com> to look for some of the most obscure keywords related to your work, hobbies, or passions. Then click through to the profiles of the people who wrote the tweets you find. You'll be amazed how good an idea you get of someone just by glancing at their last 20 tweets. Interested? Follow them. It's not like other social networks where you're really only expected to connect to folks you already know.

While you sift through the Twitter conversation, don't be shy about clicking the usernames that you see (as in @replies) and writing to strangers offering your own opinion. It may take some time through several conversations before the chatting users include you in their conversation, but if you're adding to the conversation, they will.

But even if you don't @reply, your tweets still appear in Search, and other Twitter users can spot them. If you have something interesting to say, people start to reply to your tweets. If you seek out and use relevant keywords and hashtags, you will start to connect with others who share your interests. Your early days on Twitter will probably be pretty quiet when it comes to replies and conversation. All those twitterers are just getting to know you, after all. Don't worry; after a few of your tweets appear in the timeline and you add a few contacts to your network, people will begin to notice you.

Tweeting frequency

Twitter users tend to settle into a rhythm of tweeting frequency, often unconsciously, over time. Some Twitter users are considered noisy because they tweet so much, whereas others can come across as standoffish because they don't tweet frequently. So, how much is too much or too little? How often should you tweet?



A good rule when you're starting out is to post at least four or five tweets per day. You most likely find yourself tweeting much more often than that, but if you aren't yet fully comfortable with it, four or five should get you going at a good, unobtrusive, and value-adding pace.

If you're using Twitter for your business, or you plan to link to your products or posts on your personal blog, find a balance between the number of tweets that promote yourself and the number of tweets that provide value. You might think of this balance as an actual ratio. For example, for every link of your own that you place on Twitter, send out at least five tweets that inform, engage, and converse. If conversation and engagement are your aim, you definitely want to keep a human voice in your Twitter stream at all times.

In short: talk with people, not at them.



It's worth thinking about who you want to reach. People new to Twitter and only following a few get bowled over by frequent tweeters simply because it's all they see on their stream. A roaring chat with friends you already know is a fine use of Twitter, too, and would involve *many* more tweets a day than, say, a business user or someone just figuring out what they want to do with the platform.

Inserting Links into Your Tweets

Virtually all Twitter users incorporate links into their tweets on a regular basis — by one estimate, 23 percent of tweets contain links. You can insert links to Web pages, blog entries, or even other tweets. The toughest part of including these links is getting them to fit in the 140-character limit while leaving yourself room to say something about why you're sending the link out in the first place.



The *URL shortener* is a tool that was designed to manage exceptionally long URLs so that they would not "break" in e-mail and so that they're easier to copy and paste. Twitter and services like it have heightened the need to save space when linking. Sites such as is.gd (<http://is.gd>), bit.ly (<http://bit.ly>), and [budurl](http://budurl.com) (<http://budurl.com>) automatically shorten a link into a shorter set of numbers and letters that forwards to the original link and can cut the link's length down by as much as 70 or 80 percent. As of this writing, Twitter uses bit.ly by default on its Web site, so many of the links you post will be shortened for you but it's done after the fact, so you don't get to use the full 140 characters. Visit one of the other shortening sites for ways to shorten URLs in advance. Link shortening has become so common that many main-stream Web sites offer their own short URLs to make it easier for people

to refer to their sites. *The New York Times*, for example, uses <http://nyti.ms/>, and Flickr, the photosharing Web site, uses <http://flic.kr/>. These URLs are often followed by a stream of random characters that are completely made-up, but they save precious character space for comment.

For example, this link <http://nyti.ms/ceAG8Z> (21 characters) resolves to <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/03/31/us/31keywest.html> (52 characters).

Most important is to remember to include a short reason for the link (otherwise, your Twitter followers don't know why they should click it), such as a headline or a hook that tells them why they might want to click. This is a real art. Some of the most popular tweeters have large followings because they're good at this, and their stream is enjoyable to read. It's also nice to give credit to a fellow tweeter by typing @**username** if you're sharing someone else's tweets or links. Typing @ followed by a Twitter username automatically links to that Twitter account Profile page so that you can see more about who that person is. It's context.



If you want to link specifically to one specific tweet, rather than to a user's account, first click the day and time at the end of the tweet itself to go to the *permalink* page for that tweet. You can then copy that link into a tweet of your own.

Short-URL analytics

Shorteners, such as bit.ly and budurl, also track how your link did, showing you how many people clicked through or, in some cases, retweeted your link. It can be critical in understanding whether or not people are responding to the content you're sharing, which can help adjust what you push to your network over time.

One nice thing about using bit.ly as your URL shortener is its built-in analytics. Take any URL (say, for instance, a link to this book on Amazon.com), visit <http://bit.ly>, place that URL into bit.ly's Shorten form, and you'll get something like this — <http://bit.ly/17Mw1s> — which you can then use in place of the long URL (see Figure 7-1). If you want to see how that link is doing and how many clicks it's getting, add a + sign after it and bit.ly will take you to an analytics dashboard, giving you a history of who's clicking on that link, when they clicked on it, how they're clicking on it, and who's currently talking about it.

Try it! <http://bit.ly/info/17Mw1s+>

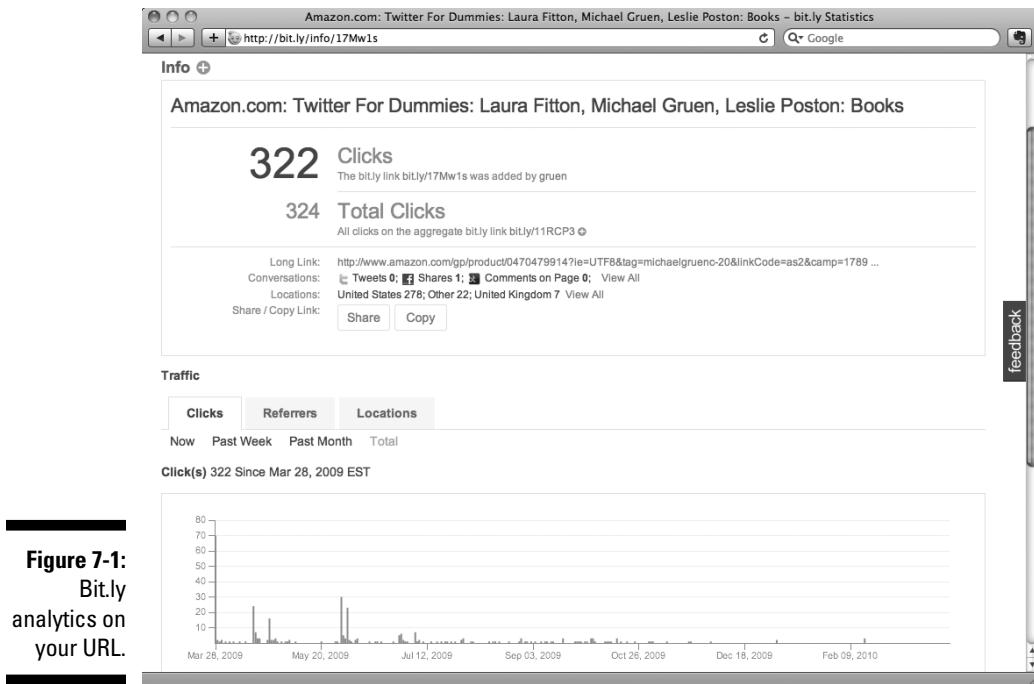


Figure 7-1:
Bit.ly
analytics on
your URL.

Beyond bit.ly, there are literally dozens of URL shorteners out there, and it's worth spending a few minutes to figure out which one will work best for you. Some are even built into desktop and mobile Twitter applications and are unique to them (like [ow.ly](#) for HootSuite). Of note, check out <http://cli.gs>, <http://budURL.com>, <http://is.gd>, and <http://3.ly>.

Using Your Twitter History and Favorites

If you want to access your Twitter history after you use the service for a while, you may find it a challenge, especially if you're a frequent tweeter. But you can get your whole history from Twitter in a few ways:

- ✓ **TweetScan (www.tweetscan.com/data.php):** A service that can pull Twitter history for any username. Unfortunately, TweetScan only goes back to December 2007, and if you've been on Twitter since it first hit the streets in 2006, you probably want to go back farther. Joined since then? You can get your entire Twitter history.

- ✓ **Twistory (www.twistory.net):** A cool little application that imports your Twitter history into the Web-based Google Calendar app so that you can view your tweets like a diary. If you tweet a lot, you might feel overwhelmed by so many tweets crammed into such a small space.
- ✓ **Profile page:** You can use the old-school way of seeing your Twitter history by going to your Twitter Profile page and clicking the More button over and over again until you see the tweet you're looking for. This approach definitely takes some time, though. (And if you really just want the one tweet, searching (<http://search.twitter.com>) might be a lot easier, though your tweets disappear from Twitter's search after a while, so be careful!)
- ✓ **Aggregator:** If you're a new Twitter user, you can have an aggregator, such as FriendFeed (<http://friendfeed.com>) or SocialThing (<http://socialthing.com>), save your history. Aggregators simply combine your Twitter feed together with any feeds you might have on other social sites. Do you share photos on Flickr? Then there is a feed of your pictures. Videos on YouTube? Same thing. It's kind of like double posting, for insurance purposes.

You can also keep track of some tweets by marking them as *favorites* with the little star icon on the Web interface. A drawback to favoriting tweets is that you can't search within them on Twitter, and Twitter's team hasn't said anything about creating a means to do this search.



Instead of using the Twitter Favorites feature, bookmark your favorites by using a tool such as Delicious (<http://delicious.com>), Shareaholic (www.shareaholic.com), or FriendFeed. You may find using an outside tool a little more inconvenient than the Favorites feature at first, but you can find the tweets that you mark in more than one way later. Some people even do Favorite Tweets Roundup posts on their blogs every few days, which you can do much more easily by using a bookmarking service, such as Delicious.

Creating Lists

As you start using Twitter more frequently, you may notice that you've followed quite a few accounts and are looking for a better way to manage the content flooding through your Twitter.com feed. One of Twitter's newer features, Lists, lets you do just that. In Chapter 5, we show how Lists can help find you new people to follow; but here, we articulate how Lists can be a valuable tool to reign in your Twitter experience.

One thing you might notice is that your less Internet-happy friends get lost in the wash of your Twitter.com feed. Between the news agencies, celebrities, and the generally prolific, it's your quieter, more personal friends who are probably the tweets that deserve your individual attention. Well, by creating lists, you can separate those out from the noise.

You can also create themed lists, say a list of TV personalities, Nobel Laureates, or Billionaires. But, some of our favorite uses for lists are to make sure the important people in our lives aren't lost in the noise.

Creating a list is easy. Log in, and in the side column within your main page, you see a Lists section below the Search section. On the bottom, click New List, give it a name ("Friends before Twitter"), a description ("These are my friends who I haven't met on Twitter"), and mark it as private or public. (We go over the differences between public and private in a bit. For now, just set your list to private.)

Click Create List and you're taken to a page where you can search for users to add to your list. Although this way works for you if you're creating a list around a searchable criteria (like if you were building a list of microsharing not-for-profits or professional tennis players), it's a bit clunky if you're trying to manage your friends.

Instead, click on the Following link in your sidebar to get to the page detailing the people you follow. To add a user to your newly-created List, click the Lists icon on the right-side of the person you want to add. (The Lists button is to the left of the Gear button.) Click the check box next to the list name, and – presto! – your friend is now on your List.



That initial list we created was a private list. Private lists are for your eyes only: not even the people on the list know they're on it. Public lists, on the other hand, are accessible to everyone on Twitter.

You probably noticed that you can also create lists right from that dropdown. That will work exactly the same way, and it's a handy way to make lists on the fly. For example, you might want to spend some time going through your existing Following page and categorize some of the people you're following. In fact, they'll probably appreciate it, and here's why:

Whenever you List someone on a public list, their Listed count goes up by one, along with a notification of what that list is called. Say you want to keep tabs on people you think are Interesting, you could create an "Interesting People" list and add @gruen to that list. (That is, of course, if you think he's interesting.) Now, when you browse to @gruen's profile page (twitter.com/gruen) and see the people who have listed him, you notice not only that "Interesting People" has him listed, but you can see how other Twitter users have chosen to list him. From here, you can get a better sense of who this person is and why people have chosen to follow and list him.



You need not follow users to add them to lists! Just visit their profile page and find the List button. Add them accordingly.

When choosing whether or not to follow someone, having been listed under relevant or interesting lists can help a user's credibility and identity on Twitter.



For these reasons, it's best you keep your list names innocuous. If you create a list called "Funny while intoxicated," your boss may or may not approve of your listing her on that list. She might be inclined to block you and your list from following her, and you might burn a bridge in the process. Then again, your boss might find that hysterical (even when not intoxicated) so you need to use your best judgment.

Following lists

Whenever anyone creates a public list, that list can be found on the user's profile page on the side column under Lists. Notice that those lists are constructed strangely: they contain the user's name, followed by a forward slash, followed by the list name. This is because, like users, lists have their own profile pages and, like users, can be followed.

For example, if you wanted to follow Laura, Leslie, and Michael's collective antics, you could follow the @dummies/authors list. (<http://twitter.com/dummies/authors>). By clicking on the Follow this List button, you can follow that list, and a link to that page will show up under your Lists section in your own landing page's sidebar.

You won't, however, automatically follow each one of us individually or collectively. Our tweets will only reside in that list unless you explicitly follow us. Additionally, if a member of a list has protected his tweets, you'll need to follow him and get authorization to follow his tweets in order to get his updates on the list page.

To unfollow a list, return to that list page and find the Unfollow link. It's on the upper-right corner of the list's main feed.

GeoLocation

If you'd like, you can tweet on-location and demonstrate that you are where you say you are! One of Twitter's newer features is the ability to add location data to your tweet. Although it's not terribly exciting while you're sitting at

your desk and using the Web version of Twitter, Twitter mobile clients (and the mobile.twitter.com site) can, at your option, add your location information to your tweet.

If you have an iPhone, visit mobile.twitter.com and sign-in. Immediately under the Tweet prompt, notice an option to turn on location information.

Alternatively, there are a number of third-party applications that use the Twitter API and can report on information. For example, the mobile check-in application Foursquare (foursquare.com) lets you tell both Foursquare friends and Twitter followers where you are at any time you want to let them know. When Foursquare forwards that information to post onto Twitter, the location information will be embedded into the tweet data, like a timestamp. (We cover third-party applications in Chapter 8.)

On the bottom of the tweet in Figure 7-2, Twitter tells you some information about that tweet: when it happened, how it happened, and where it happened. If you visit that tweet's URL (<http://twitter.com/dummies/status/11329511402>), you'll be able to click on the location part of the tweet and see the map, as shown.



Figure 7-2:
A location-based
Tweet.

<http://twitter.com/dummies/status/11329511402>

Erasing your tracks

If you find yourself needing to get rid of your location information for whatever reason, Twitter can strip the location information out of all your tweets.

To wipe all location-data from your tweets:

- 1. Click the Settings navigation link along the top.**
- 2. Scroll down to Tweet Location.**
- 3. Find the Delete All Location Information link and click it.**

It may take up to 30 minutes for Twitter to extricate yourself from your location history. Good luck.

Your Feeds, My Feeds, Everyone's Feeds

We talk more about RSS feeds and what you can do with them in Chapter 8, but we want to introduce a couple of different feeds that you can access and subscribe to right from Twitter.com.

First, every Twitter account has an RSS feed associated with it. To access the RSS feed:

- 1. Navigate to a user's Twitter page.**

Our account, @dummies, is at <http://twitter.com/dummies>.

- 2. Click the RSS Feed of @dummies's Updates link.**

You can find this link near the end of the content on the right sidebar.

Depending on what RSS reader you use, you see a page to subscribe to that feed.

- 3. If you've protected your updates, you need to log into the API (see Figure 7-3).**

You gain access to that user's feed.

If you want to access one single RSS feed with the tweets of everyone that you follow:

- 1. Navigate to your Twitter Home screen.**

Either click the Twitter logo in the upper-left corner or the Home link in the upper-right corner of any Twitter page, or if you're already logged in, navigate to <http://twitter.com/home>.

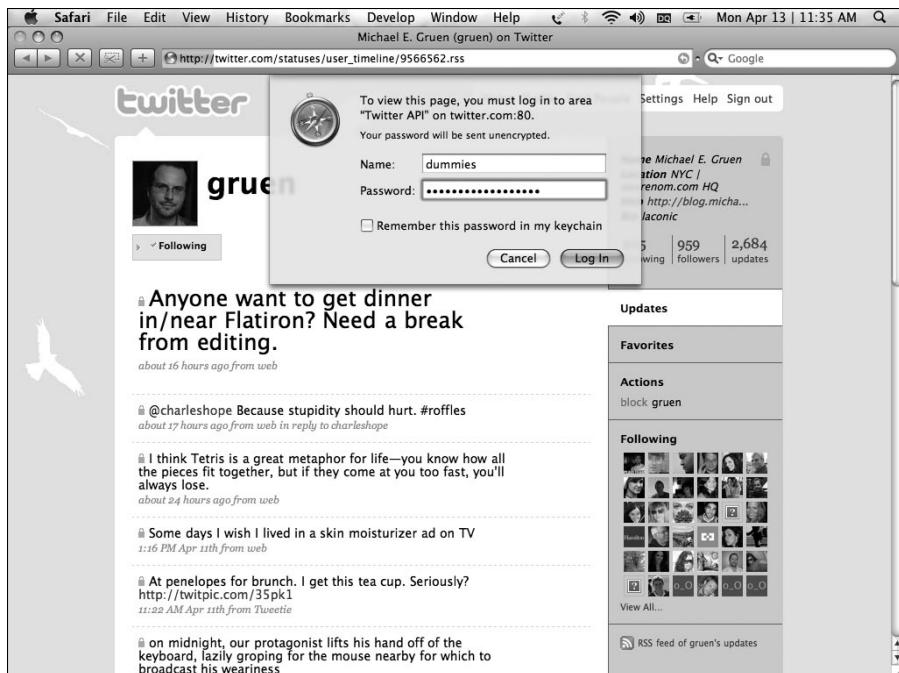


Figure 7-3:
Logging into
the API to
access the
RSS feed of
a protected
user.

2. Click the RSS Feed link.

You can find this link near the end of the content on the right sidebar. (Scroll down until you find it.) The RSS logo appears nearby.

Now, you can access an RSS feed of updates for everyone you follow.

In fact, every page that has some sort of update stream has an RSS update feed associated with it. Alternatively, if your browser supports it, you can click the RSS icon inside the address bar in your browser to access the feed for that page.

We go over the more interesting points of what you can do with Twitter feeds in Chapter 8, including porting them over to an RSS reader so that you can view a stream without having to visit Twitter.com.

Deciphering Twitter Shorthand Code

The more you use Twitter, the more you're going to want to find quicker ways to do things. Conveniently, Twitter has included a number of shorthand codes that you can use to perform almost any action directly from the What

Are You Doing? box. These codes are particularly useful when you're working from a mobile phone by sending your tweets to 40404 (or your local short code) using the Twitter SMS (Short Message Service) gateway.



As we talk about in Chapter 3, be careful when using shorthand code! Making a typo when you want to send a direct (private) message can send an update to everyone who follows you. It's smart to be particularly careful about sending sensitive information via direct messages, just in case. At some point, you might accidentally share something with everyone that you intended only a particular user to see. Best bet? Use the actual message link on a person's page to send them a direct message.

D – direct message

You can send a direct message right from the Update box by using the following form:

D username message

In this message, *username* is the username of the person whom you want to direct message, and *message* is any message that you want to send. So, if you want to tell us how great this book is, you type in the What Are You Doing? box:

D dummies I am really enjoying Twitter For Dummies! Thanks for the help!



Many users opt to have direct messages sent straight to their cellphones via SMS and/or e-mail, so you can frequently use direct messages to reach someone instantly even if you don't have a cell number or if you know that he's an active Twitter user who may not be online at the moment. Some make heavy use of this while traveling and at events and find it much easier to coordinate on the fly.

F – follow

No matter what application or interface you use to tweet, you can quickly add a tweeter to your feed just by sending an update to Twitter. Say that you decide to follow the updates of Evan Williams (@ev), Twitter's cofounder and CEO. Just send this message to Twitter:

F ev

Alternatively, you can type the word **follow** to do the exact same thing:

follow ev

When you add someone using the follow or f command, you both follow them and opt in to receive their individual device updates (only when your account is set to receive device updates). When you follow them using the Web site Follow button or most Twitter clients, you connect only via the Web site, not also via SMS device updates.

@ – reply

We cover how to reply to users in Chapters 3 and 5, but the @ symbol is really a shorthand for referencing another Twitter user. The difference between this command and all other commands is that there is *no* space between it and the username of the person you want to reach. Want to say something to Leslie? Write

@leslie hiya!

Twitter makes sure that the message ends up in Leslie's Mentions tab.

On/Off

The commands On and Off control whether or not your entire account will receive device updates (SMS texts on your phone). You can use the On command to turn device updates on for your account. To turn them Off, you can use the Off command twice:

- ✓ **To silence updates to your cellphone:** Send Twitter the update **off**.
- ✓ **To silence updates and direct messages to your cellphone:** Send the update **off** a second time. You will not receive any device updates until you turn them back on using On.

Fav – favorite a tweet

If something someone just tweeted made you laugh (say, our @dummies account), you can favorite that tweet by sending an update to Twitter:

fav dummies

If you're receiving updates on your cellphone, sending **fav** by itself adds the last update you received to your Favorites tab on your Home screen.

Receiving SMS updates on your phone . . . from everyone

Getting Twitter updates as SMS messages right on your phone has its advantages and disadvantages. For one thing, it lets you choose to remain much more closely up-to-date with a small subset of your Twitter connections, which can be cool. Web celebrity iJustine (@iJustine) does this to find her real friends among the people she follows.

But what if you tried following the device updates of every single person you're connected to on Twitter? The command is simply

follow all

If you're following a large number of people who update frequently, your mobile phone might never stop beeping, vibrating, or doing whatever it does when it receives a text message. Definitely don't try the Follow All command unless you already have unlimited texting.

Nudge

Do you have a friend who hasn't updated in a while? Send her a message asking her to let everyone know what she's doing:

nudge *username*



Nudge is a funny little feature, in that it works only for people who receive their tweets as SMS updates, and quite possibly only for people who have specifically signed up for your device updates. Look at the Twitter Profile page for anyone that follows you. Sometimes message and nudge links are both visible; other times, only message. If you can't see nudge, the person obviously can't be nudged. But frequently you can see nudge and still nothing at all happens when you click it.

Plenty of active users of Twitter — probably most — have never used nudge. So, don't sweat it if it doesn't make sense to you.

Stats

If you ever want to know how many followers you have and how many users you're following, send the update **stats**. If you're online, Twitter displays a message at the top of the screen letting you know. If you sent **stats** from your cellphone, Twitter sends you a text message with your stats in it. Obviously

this makes a lot more sense than viewing stats on the Web page, where they are, of course, already displayed. Stats was a little more meaningful with Track because it also reminded you what words you were tracking.

Get

The Get command allows you to quickly view the last update from a user. Want to see Michael's latest tweet? Send to Twitter

get gruen

And Twitter will report back with Michael's last tweet. However, we find this example particularly ironic as nobody really "gets" him.

Whois

If you want to get someone's profile information quickly (say, Laura's), use the Whois command:

whois pistachio

Twitter sends you a message that contains the user's proper name (Laura Fitton), how long she's been on Twitter (since April 2007), and her current bio from her Profile page (<http://twitter.com/pistachio>).

Leave

Leave seems like it would be the opposite of follow, but it's not. At least, not quite. **Leave username** simply turns off the individual's device updates, those text messages that some twitterers receive on their phones, it does not unfollow that person on Twitter.

On/Off username

Not to be confused with On/Off (see the earlier section), **On/Off username** turns device updates on and off for individual users. Like follow, On will also connect you to people on Twitter.com so that you're following their updates. Like leave, the Off username command stops device updates, but it doesn't unfollow the username account.

In other words, **On/Off username** has no unique functionality that is different from Follow/Leave.

Invite

Do you want to invite someone to Twitter? Send the Invite command, followed by her e-mail address or mobile phone number:

invite friend@example.com

invite 212 555 1212

Twitter sends either an e-mail or SMS to that person to let her know that you've invited her to use Twitter.

Quit and Stop

Quit and Stop discontinue all service between Twitter and your cellphone. They opt your cellphone number out of Twitter altogether. If used, you'll literally have to log into your Twitter account and redo the steps to add your cellphone to your account.



These commands are probably not the best options to quiet your phone. They're handy though if you accidentally lock your phone into a separate account by sending **join** to 40404 after you already have an account.

Codes may come, and codes may go . . .

Because Twitter is a living application, it has commands that come and go. Of note, you may still see some older Twitter users lamenting the loss of the Track feature.



For a recent list of Twitter commands, browse to Twitter's Help forums by clicking the help link at the top of every Twitter page. At time of print, <http://help.twitter.com/forums/10711/entries/14020> has the most accurate list of Twitter commands.

The Track series of commands enabled users to receive updates containing a keyword the user was tracking, even if they didn't follow the person posting the update. For example, if you were a *Battlestar Galactica* fan, you'd send the update **track Battlestar Galactica** to get every mention of that show, no matter who mentioned it, sent to your Twitter Home screen.

Unfortunately, Twitter removed the Track feature, but you can still get the scoop by using Twitter Search in a similar way:

1. Browse to Twitter Search.

You can scroll to the bottom of any Twitter page and click the Search link or just go to <http://search.twitter.com>.

2. Enter the search term you want to track in the text box and click Search.

A screen appears, showing the results for all mentions of the term you want to track. You have the option of subscribing to an RSS feed for the search terms — a great idea if you're a business user and want to monitor mentions of your name, products, brands, or categories.



Remember, Search offers advanced features to fine-tune what you want to keep track of. From the Search home page, click Advanced Search and add parameters like sender, recipient, optional keywords, required keywords, timeframes, and even “emotional sentiment” of the tweets you want to see.



Although Track would still be a nice feature to have, many third-party clients including this functionality directly within their offering. See the next chapter for more details on using those. If, however, you'd rather stick to using the Web interface, you can use the built-in saved searches for up-to-the-minute tracking on your favorite topics. We discuss this in Chapter 5.

Chapter 8

Twitter Minus Twitter.com

In This Chapter

- ▶ Taking Twitter on the go
- ▶ Sending your tweets through e-mail and to RSS
- ▶ Using third-party Twitter applications
- ▶ Using Open Authentication
- ▶ Sharing tweets on social networks and blogs
- ▶ Tweeting even when you're unavailable by using auto-tweets

Tou can easily get attached to Twitter simply because once you really get started, you're bound to discover many interesting and useful things it can do for you. You can literally take Twitter — and the information, ideas, and friends you connect with on Twitter — everywhere. Mobile applications and text messages give on-the-go users the ability to update their timeline and access their network. E-mail and RSS feeds also allow you to pipe your Twitter stream into your favorite RSS reader or e-mail, or onto your mobile device. Because the Twitter platform is so flexible, you can almost do everything you want with Twitter without needing to visit Twitter.com.

Look around the Web, and you'll see Twitter has become a staple on popular social-networking sites and a standard sidebar feature on many blogs. Because of the many ways that users can access and share Twitter on the Web, you can discover it in all sorts of useful places, from tweets about specific neighborhoods on RentWiki (www.rentwiki.com) to live widgets on major media sites like ABC.com during President Obama's 2009 and 2010 State of the Union addresses, as well as @barackobama staffers reiterating his important points live through his Twitter account.

In this chapter, we show you how you can use Twitter without having to browse to Twitter.com. When you realize how you can access Twitter from anywhere, you're bound to discover ways to make it even more useful to you.

Tweeting with Your Cellphone

Many tweeterers use the service almost exclusively on their mobile phones. You can use Twitter on your mobile device in three ways:

- ✓ SMS (text messages) to and from 40404 (or your country's short code)
- ✓ Twitter's mobile Web site (<http://m.twitter.com>) if you have a Web browser on your cellphone
- ✓ Downloadable applications for BlackBerry, Android, Windows Mobile, and iPhone smartphones



Literally dozens of applications come out for Twitter every couple of months. For more information, and to find the latest Twitter tools, check out Laura's Twitter directory and marketplace oneforty (www.oneforty.com).

Via text messaging

Although text messaging (or SMS) is the most basic way to access Twitter via your cellphone, you want to first make sure that your cellphone plan encompasses unlimited texting. Otherwise, your monthly bill may end up skyrocketing. Check before you enable SMS updates!

After you make sure that you can afford your mobile texting plan, you can easily use SMS to update Twitter on the go. (Turn to Chapter 2 for instructions on how to associate your cellphone with your Twitter account.)



One caveat: The maximum length for a standard text message is 160 characters, but Twitter's maximum is 140 characters. You have to manually verify that you aren't going over the Twitter limit because otherwise, Twitter cuts off your SMS tweet at 140 characters.

In addition to sending tweets as SMS messages from your phone, you can receive your contacts' tweets on your phone via SMS. Setting this up takes a little more work. First, think long and hard about how noisy you want your phone to be each day. Most Twitter users find that they can handle between 10 and 20 peoples' tweets being sent to their phone before the constant incoming text stream becomes overwhelming. Luckily, even power users like iJustine (@iJustine) have discovered that they can take advantage of SMS tweets to their phone by being really selective about whose actual tweets they get via SMS. It's not all-or-nothing.

To receive tweets from your contacts on your cellphone:

1. Open your own Home screen and, on the Settings page, click on the Mobile tab.

Find the section marked Device Updates.

2. Decide how you want to receive mobile updates.

Twitter allows you to take updates on your phone, limit notifications to direct messages, or opt-out entirely of text notifications.

3. Make a list of people whose tweets you really want to receive directly as SMS messages on your phone.

These people can be anyone — friends, family, influencers, clients — whatever works for you.

4. Go to each of those Twitter users' profiles and select (toggle) the mobile updates button to turn their notifications on or off.

The mobile updates button is a gray or green circle with a mobile phone on it, directly under the username's icon on his or her profile page.

Green means on, and gray means off. You can also send a tweet to turn individuals' message notifications on or off (see Chapter 7).

Via smartphones or PDAs

If you have a smartphone, BlackBerry, or PDA that has Web capabilities, you can use Twitter's mobile Web site, <http://m.twitter.com>, or a number of other third-party mobile Web sites like Hahlo, pretty much the way you use Twitter.com on your computer. You can also download applications that allow you to use Twitter as an application on your phone. You can find several popular applications — these are just a sampling of what's available for various devices:

- ✓ **For iPhone:** Tweetie 2 (www.atebits.com/tweetie-iphone, and was recently purchased by Twitter), Twittelator (www.stone.com/Twittelator), TwitterFon (<http://twitterfon.net>), Twitterrific (<http://iconfactory.com/software/twitterrific>).
- ✓ **For BlackBerry:** BlackBerry has released its own Twitter client, accessible via App World or on their website (<http://blackberry.com/twitter>). For other options, we've liked Blackbird (<http://dossy.org/twitter/blackbird>), TinyTwitter (<http://tinytwitter.com>), and OpenBeak (www.orangatame.com/products/openbeak).
- ✓ **For Android Devices:** Twitroid (www.twitroid.com) and Seesmic (seesmic.com/seesmic_mobile/android) seem to be the favorites.
- ✓ **For Windows Mobile:** PocketTwit (<http://code.google.com/p/pocketwit>), TinyTwitter (www.tinytwitter.com), TwitToday (<http://dalelane.co.uk/page.php?id=1047>), Twitula (<http://cid-edaa3c1275909727a.skydrive.live.com/self.aspx/Public/MobileApps/Twitula35.CAB>), Twobile (www.infinitumsoftware.com/twobile).



Play around with the applications' options a bit until you find one you like best. They're all a little bit different, and they have varying advantages based on how you use Twitter, how often you tweet, how big your network is, and so forth.

Location! Location! Location!

One great advantage to becoming a mobile Twitter user is the ability to live-tweet from wherever you are, on location. Many Twitter clients for mobile — including the mobile.twitter.com site for iPhone — allow for location-based information to be sent along with your tweets.

To the best of our knowledge, each application lets you opt-in to this service, so please check the user guides for each application on how to opt-in.

See Chapter 7 for more information on the Twitter mobile site.



When you're tweeting your location, you may make it easy for people to find you or learn where you live. Adding location to your tweets is a fun and useful feature, and though location-based technology isn't pin-point accurate yet, be sure that you remember that your digital footprint is telling a story about you and your daily habits! So, just be careful.

Using Twitter through Your E-Mail

When someone new starts following you, Twitter sends you an e-mail that contains a link so that you can check out that user's profile right away to see whether you want to follow him back. These e-mails save quite a bit of time and hassle — you don't have to try to remember who followed you and when.



If you don't have the time or the need to follow back your new followers right away, use whatever options your e-mail client (or Web service) provides to search, file, or tag certain messages received. Setting up a mail filter to segment those notifications outside of your normal e-mail inbox can be really useful. Those e-mails then wait for you to process more efficiently in *batches*, many at a time, when it's convenient for you.

You can also set up your Twitter account so that direct messages are sent to your e-mail inbox:

1. **On your Home page, click Settings at the top of the screen.**

The Settings screen appears.

2. **Select the Notices tab.**

3. Next to Direct Text Emails, check the Email When I Receive a New Direct Message check box.



Even if you're receiving direct notifications through Twitter and your mobile phone, you may also want to get them by e-mail. Most modern e-mail applications, including Webmail software, allow you to search through your mail. By always having a copy in your e-mail inbox, you can much more easily retrieve and find a direct message that you receive. Otherwise there is no way to search your direct messages, which can be a problem.

Although Twitter can send you e-mails, it has no mechanism that allows you to send updates, replies, or direct messages directly via e-mail. (But they do provide a link in the e-mail that you can click to open pages at Twitter.com [or mobile Twitter] where you can send Twitter info.)

To work around this limitation, some developers have used the API to come up with e-mail clients for Twitter. Two of our favorites include Topify (www.topify.com), shown in Figure 8-1, and Twittermail at TwitterCounter.com (<http://twittercounter.com/pages/twittermail>), shown in Figure 8-2. Both of these Web applications enable you to interact with users and update Twitter directly from your e-mail address.

The screenshot shows the Topify website interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar for Safari with options like File, Edit, View, History, Bookmarks, Develop, Window, Help, and a search bar. The URL in the address bar is <http://topify.com/>. The main content area features the Topify logo with a large envelope icon containing a downward arrow. Below the logo, the text "POWER TWITTER EMAIL NOTIFICATIONS" is visible. To the right of the logo are social sharing links for ShareThis, Follow us on twitter, and Check our blog. On the left side, there are three sections: ":: SAVE TIME WITH TOPIFY ::" with items 1, 2, and 3; "WATCH OUR VIDEO"; and ":: GET YOUR INVITE! ::" with fields for "Your twitter username" and "Your email address", and a "GO TOPIFY!" button. On the right side, there's a "Direct message from FaniPiker" section showing a message from Twitter via Topify. Below that, there's a text area with a "Reply" and "Forward" button, and a note about getting an invite via a link. At the bottom, there are sections for "WHAT PEOPLE ARE SAYING ::" and "WHAT ABOUT MY PRIVACY? ::".

Figure 8-1:
Topify offers enhanced Twitter notifications and e-mail-based replies.



As with many third-party Web applications, Topify and Twittermail ask for your Twitter username and password. If you don't think you can trust a site with your credentials, just don't use it! Luckily, OAuth holds the promise of letting you give third-party applications limited permission to function with your account without giving away your password and the ability to access everything about your account.

The screenshot shows the Twittermail homepage. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links to Home, How?, About Us, Help, Settings, and Contact. Below the navigation is a section titled "Welcome to Twittermail" with a brief description of what it does. To the left is a "Sign up" form with fields for Twitter Username and Twitter Password, and a button to "Get your Twittermail address!". To the right of the sign-up form is a "Stats" box containing bullet points about user statistics: "Serving 60,764 Twitter users", "More than 4,644,493 messages have been sent to Twitter", "Last 24 hours: 16,896 tweets have been sent to Twitter", and "Check out all our features!". Further down the page, there are several testimonial boxes from users like Brian Humphries, Melissa, and Scott Koons. On the right side, there's a "Features" section with a camera icon and text about sending photos to Twitter via mobile phone or e-mail, and a "Tweet in the future!" section with a clock icon.

Figure 8-2:
Twittermail
looks like
Twitter, but
integrates
Twitter with
your e-mail
inbox.

Swimming Your Twitter Stream with RSS Feeds

If you want to keep tabs on your Twitter network without logging into Twitter.com, you can use *RSS* (Really Simple Syndication) to pull in your Twitter stream like it's a blog. Really Simple Syndication is a format for delivering dynamic Web content — blogs, news stories, and multimedia — in a standard, easy-to-read format (called *feeds*). RSS isn't a Web site or a Web page: It's a raw data feed for the content on a Web page or Web site. You often find RSS on blogs and news sites, but any site that has live and updating content, including Twitter, can use RSS.

Most modern browsers (such as Safari, Firefox, and later versions of Internet Explorer) have RSS reading capabilities built in, but you likely want to use a dedicated application or Web site to handle your feeds because then you can go back later and search them, refer to them, catch up on many at once, and more.

An RSS reader, such as Newsgator's NetNewsWire or FeedDemon (www.newsgator.com) or Google Reader (www.google.com/reader), aggregates RSS feeds, which you can then read. Within these applications, you subscribe to an RSS feed, which allows you to access your favorite Web content within a single destination and keep up with frequently updated sites.

RSS is a fundamental part of Twitter because it allows users to share and access timelines from virtually anywhere on the Web, as well as through desktop applications and mobile devices. Each user's timeline has its own RSS feed, which you can read via an RSS reader.

By the way, the gentleman credited with inventing RSS is on Twitter! Say hello to Dave Winer (@davewiner).

Grabbing RSS feeds

If you have a smartphone that has RSS capabilities, you can use that smartphone to get Twitter while you're on the go. To grab the RSS feed for your Home screen, click the RSS button in the bottom-left of the sidebar and follow the specific instructions for your RSS reader. If you hover over the RSS icon in your browser (depending on which browser you use, the location of this icon varies), it also displays the feed address. You can then add the feed address to your RSS reader of choice, such as Google Reader or Bloglines.

You can obtain an individual RSS feed address for your Home screen (the Twitter stream of all your friends), the Everyone page (the public timeline of all Twitter users), and your @username page — but not for your Direct Messages page. To read direct messages, you have to rely on e-mail, text messages, or another method.

Also, Twitter Search has RSS capabilities built in. You can pull any search that you perform on Twitter Search into an RSS feed directly from the site.

Sending RSS feeds back to Twitter

Twitter feed (<http://twitterfeed.com>) is a third-party application you can use to send RSS feeds to Twitter so that each item in the feed "posts" as a tweet. It turns out you can accomplish a lot by using this application:

- ✓ **Announce new blog posts.** If you have a blog and want to promote each new post by using your Twitter account, you can have Twitter feed pull in the RSS of your blog and send the title of the post and a link to Twitter (posting it as a tweet from your account). You may find this feature particularly useful if you update your blog frequently.
- ✓ **Create and share a *link blog*.** At Pistachio Consulting, we maintain a link blog of some of the best articles we can find about the business use of Twitter. We use www.delicious.com/touchbaseblog to track, tag, and share these articles, and we direct the RSS for that Delicious account to @touchbase on Twitter (along with a feed to our <http://www.touchbaseblog.com> posts, too). That way, business users of Twitter can easily access up-to-date case studies, articles, best practices, and ideas simply by following a Twitter stream.
- ✓ **Re-tweet hashtags.** If you're running an event and want everyone who plans to attend that event to be able to send a message to everyone else, search that hashtag on <http://search.twitter.com> and then grab the RSS feed from the Twitter search results page and feed it into the event's account. Now everyone at the event can follow your single event account to see all the hashtagged tweets being shared. *Note:* This will work for any search term. Be creative!
- ✓ **Translate tweets automatically.** This one is advanced, but if you want to reach an international audience by sending your tweets in another language and you're comfortable playing with advanced tools like Yahoo! Pipes (<http://pipes.yahoo.com/pipes>), you can actually pull in a Twitter stream, automatically translate it into a number of different languages, and then publish the stream to its own language-specific Twitter account by using Twitter feed. Just be sure to mention on that account bio that it's automated, or native speakers will wonder why the writing is so awkward!



Limit the number of times that you have to feed send messages to Twitter so that you don't send too many tweets and irritate your followers. You should also mention in the bio for the account if it is heavily—or completely—automated. See the Pistachio Consulting account @touchbase (for our blog and link blog) for a good example of being upfront about RSS-fed Twitter accounts.

Using Third-Party Services

Twitter itself is extremely basic: 140-character updates, nothing more. But the entire world of Twitter is much more complex because its founders created a way for developers outside of the Twitter team to develop tools for their service.

APIs: The key to twittering off of Twitter.com

An *application program interface* (API) is basically a set of programming instructions and standards that developers can use to access a software application such as Twitter. When a company like Twitter opens their API, they allow other developers to look at their application's code and make new products that complement or expand the original application. These new creations are called *third-party applications*.

If you're new to Twitter, or to Web apps in general, you may wonder whether APIs raise security concerns. Developers who use Twitter's API can't access private data, such as your password or direct messages. But you still need to be cautious: Some third-party apps do ask that you log into Twitter by using your username and password. Before you hand over your information, make sure that the app in question is reputable; thankfully, no one yet

has had to deal with a major scandal in which a Twitter app turned out to be a password-stealing scam, but some very real security breaches have occurred, and you should always be very careful about giving any password to anyone. With your password, a third-party application could look at your DMs.

If you're concerned about allowing third-party services to have your username and password, good news is here. In mid-2009, Twitter released something called Open Authentication (OAuth). OAuth allows you to authorize a third-party Web site or application to essentially log in as you and perform actions on your behalf without ever having your username or password. Flickr, Basecamp by 37Signals, Facebook, and other online services already allow you to use open authentication. More on this later in this chapter.

Twitter opened up its service by creating an application programming interface (API), which allows third-party developers to have access to some of Twitter's code. Both users and developers reap the benefits of this API in the form of fun new toys that let Twitter do even more cool stuff.

Arguably the best-known third-party applications built on Twitter are designed to make keeping up with your network easier. You can easily follow your network on the Twitter Web site when you have only 50 followers, but after you start getting followers into the hundreds, you can have some serious difficulty keeping track of your network without a little help.

Your options for third-party applications that help you use Twitter grow and change constantly; here are some of the current favorites:

- Twhirl (www.twhirl.org)
- TweetDeck ([www\(tweetdeck.com](http://www(tweetdeck.com))
- Twitterrific (<http://iconfactory.com/software/twitterrific>)
- Digsby (www.digsby.com)

Twitter used to provide a short list of third-party applications right on its Web site at <http://twitter.com/downloads>, but it is no longer. The Twitter fan wiki also attempts to index the growing ecosystem of applications, services, and other sites built on the Twitter API, but finding the best ones remains a problem, which is why Laura created oneforty (www.oneforty.com).

Third-party applications such as Twhirl and Twitterrific provide more complex, customizable ways to sort through your Twitter network, stream of friends' tweets, @replies, and direct messages, as well as update your tweets. Some avid Twitter users choose their third-party apps based on those apps' compatibility with other social-media services that some tweeterers also use, such as FriendFeed (www.friendfeed.com) and 12Seconds (<http://12seconds.tv>).

Most of the downloadable third-party applications that you can use to view Twitter on your desktop require an additional download called Adobe Air, a free program that many of the applications are built on. Generally, when you choose to download an app that requires Adobe Air, Air also downloads automatically.

We cover these third-party tools in depth in Chapter 9.

Open Authentication – OAuth

As Twitter has grown in popularity, many third-party applications have cropped up to make your life easier. Some of these applications requested your Twitter username and password to operate. However, that sort of usage paradigm has huge security implications: You have to really trust the sites you give that kind of information to: With login information, the site owners and operators can then do anything they want with your user account.

Also, be honest: How many of you used the same password for your Twitter account as your E-mail account? It's a bad idea, because if someone has your login information to Twitter, they can now easily get into your e-mail.

Thankfully, in mid-2009, Twitter unrolled Open Authentication, which allows you to authorize applications to use Twitter on your behalf. There are many reasons why you'd want to do this:

- ✓ Manage multiple twitter accounts from one login screen
- ✓ Have your blog auto-tweet new blog posts from your blog
- ✓ Automatically backup your tweets

- ✓ Interface with an application like Foursquare (foursquare.com) to forward on your location to your friends
- ✓ Donate your status to a not-for-profit to help with their promotional campaigns

You can revoke an application's permissions at any time.

1. Navigate to your Settings page and then the Connections tab.

You see which applications have access to data in your Twitter stream.

2. Click on Revoke Access under the Connection to remove their permissions permanently (until you say it's okay for them to be re-authenticated).



Even with OAuth, applications that have access to your Twitter account are able to do whatever they want. Although OAuth makes it easier to authenticate third-party applications with your Twitter experience, you still ought to trust them before you give them access to your account.

Sharing Tweets All Around the Web

Twitter's a far-reaching service, but you can also pull your Twitter presence out onto the rest of the Web by using social-networking widgets (some of which are powered by RSS) and a few other nifty tweaks.

Social networks are those sites online where people can go to meet and stay in touch with new and old friends and colleagues. Twitter itself is a social network. Some of the social networks you may use already include MySpace, Facebook, Ning, FriendFeed, and LinkedIn. And — you guessed it — you can put your tweets on social networks.

If you're a MySpace user, for example, Twitter makes a badge (or widget) that you can embed right onto your Profile page. Twitter offers a Badges page at <http://twitter.com/goodyes/widgets>, where you can go to customize the look and feel of your badge for each network. This page also gives you instructions about how to embed the badge code, which is also compatible with blog templates on platforms such as Blogger and WordPress so that your blog readers can see what you're up to and connect with you on Twitter, as shown in Figure 8-3. After you put the badge code into your social-networking Profile page, Twitter updates the badge each time you send a tweet. You can use a badge to quickly and easily share Twitter with people outside the service, letting them know your status and what you're up to on a daily basis.

If you prefer, MySpace and LinkedIn can connect with your Twitter account using OAuth and synchronize status messages between the services. MySpace and LinkedIn make it really easy to do, so please see the help pages on those respective sites for more information.

Facebook, the most popular social network in the States, doesn't let you embed code onto profiles. You can, however, install the Twitter app on Facebook (<http://facebook.com/twitter>), which lets you choose to either display a badge on your profile or have your Twitter updates set as your status message on Facebook. Because some people on Facebook get confused when they see a lot of tweets out of context, it's not a bad idea to only share some of your tweets with your Facebook friends. You can share your tweets by using a special tag (see the Facebook Twitter app for instructions) in your tweets to designate which ones to also re-post to Facebook.



Services such as Ping.fm (www.ping.fm) and HelloTxt (www.heliotxt.com) allow you to send the same tweet or update to many social networks, such as MySpace and Facebook, in addition to Twitter, all at the same time. This service saves you the trouble of logging into each site separately, but it can get impersonal and alienate your followers. Use these services with caution!

The screenshot shows the Twitter Widgets page. At the top, there are two tabs: "Widgets for..." (selected) and "My Website". Below these are four widget options:

- Profile Widget**: Displays your most recent Twitter updates on any webpage.
- Search Widget**: Displays search results in real time! Ideal for live events, broadcastings, conferences, TV Shows, or even just keeping up with the news.
- Faves Widget**: Show off your favorite tweets! Also in real time, this widget will pull in the tweets you've starred as favorites. It's great for moderation.
- List Widget**: Put your favorite tweeps into a list! Then show 'em off in a widget. Also great for moderation.

On the right side of the page, there is a sidebar with the CNN.com homepage and a "What's being said about the White House" section. The sidebar includes a link to a blog post from XTensiveOne about Wal-Mart's impact on small business owners.

Figure 8-3:
You can put
the Twitter.
.com widget
on a blog.

Auto-Tweeting

Auto-tweeting is exactly what it sounds like: automated tweets. You can auto-tweet by using one of a number of third-party applications built for that purpose. These third-party applications use the same API as the Twitter readers (which we talk about in the section “Using Third-Party Services,” earlier in this chapter), but these auto-tweet applications apply the API for a different purpose.

Some auto-tweet applications, such as SocialOomph (www.socialoomph.com), allow you to schedule tweets in advance. Mostly, marketers use these applications, and some Twitter users don’t like them because they undermine the spontaneity of Twitter by having things pre-scheduled (which, in our opinion, defeats the purpose of the “What are you doing?” question). However, you may find TweetLater useful if you’re going on vacation or plan to be off the grid for some other reason. You can schedule a post or two while you’re away from your computer, just to check in and remind your Twitter network that you may be out of touch. It’s also useful for businesses, announcements you know about in advance and can plan for.

Services in the section “Sending RSS feeds back to Twitter,” earlier in this chapter, are also essentially automatically tweeting for you.

Chapter 9

Embracing the Twitter Ecosystem

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using tools to enrich your Twitter experience
- ▶ Finding programs that make using Twitter easy
- ▶ Playing around on Twitter with games and memes

Twitter is a useful tool on its own, but by design, it remains extremely simple, even stark, in its functionality. The folks who created it wanted to make Twitter a platform for users to build on, improve, and enhance, so they opened up Twitter’s *API* (application program interface), or code, to the public. Enterprising and creative software developers, as a result, can create applications that work with Twitter to offer even more compelling features and ways to make use of the dynamic system.

Twitter itself is constantly evolving and changing — from design facelifts to new features to changes in how the back-end technology works. The Twitter team pays close attention to how people interact with the system and what those users want to do with it. Because the long-term success of Twitter depends completely on a healthy base of users generating a regular stream of content, the management obviously wants to do their best to keep Twitter on its toes.

As a result, Twitter is a living application and community, extending far beyond what Twitter itself controls. Conventions and third-party tools have popped up to fill in functionality that Twitter may have missed, chosen not to implement, or intentionally left for other developers to handle.

You can find a rich toolset online to enhance and personalize your own Twitter experience. In this chapter, we introduce many of the third-party tools that enrich the service. We’d like to note, though, that it’s very hard to capture the vast and dynamic Twitter ecosystem in these few, and static, pages. The daunting challenge of writing a book chapter to direct people to the best tools and services is a significant reason for the very existence of Laura’s oneforty inc. (www.oneforty.com).

By the time you read this book, dozens, if not hundreds, of new mash-ups, services, applications, and other tools and products will be built out onto the Twitter ecosystem. Please check out www.oneforty.com and the book's official Web site at www.twitterfordummies.com for up-to-date guidance on how to find the best and latest tools.

Finding Interesting Twitter Talk with Search Tools

With so many conversations going on every day on Twitter, how can you manage to find the ones that are relevant to you? You can use search applications to manage your interactions with Twitter; you can track people and topics, find data about what's trendy and buzzworthy up to the second, and more.

You can search Twitter many, many ways, but here are three noteworthy things for you to know:

- ✓ Twitter Search (integrated into all pages of Twitter.com)
- ✓ TweetScoop and TwitScoop
- ✓ Hashtags

Twitter Search

Summize, a powerful search engine that trawls through the enormous volume of public tweets in real time, emerged in 2008 and soon became the go-to tool for searching Twitter. The powers that be at Twitter noticed. Seeing the value in Summize's application, Twitter acquired Summize and began a slow process of incorporating it into Twitter itself, renaming it Twitter Search. So although the Summize name is a thing of the past, Twitter Search is a powerful and important part of the Twitter experience. An advanced search tool is available at its own Web address, <http://search.twitter.com/advanced/>, as shown in Figure 9-1, or you can run a basic search by using the search box on the sidebar on your Twitter Home screen.

Twitter Search isn't static: It keeps searching for your query, even after you click the Search button. When Twitter Search finds a new search result, a link appears at the top of your Twitter Search results telling you how many new

matches for your search term have appeared since you last hit the Refresh button on your browser. This may not seem like a big deal, but it's extremely useful when news is breaking, or you're following a live event. Just click a trending topic to see what we mean. You'll notice that with more popular topics, Twitter will let you know that more tweets with the relevant trending topic have come up since you first clicked the search. Click on the notification and the new tweets will load.

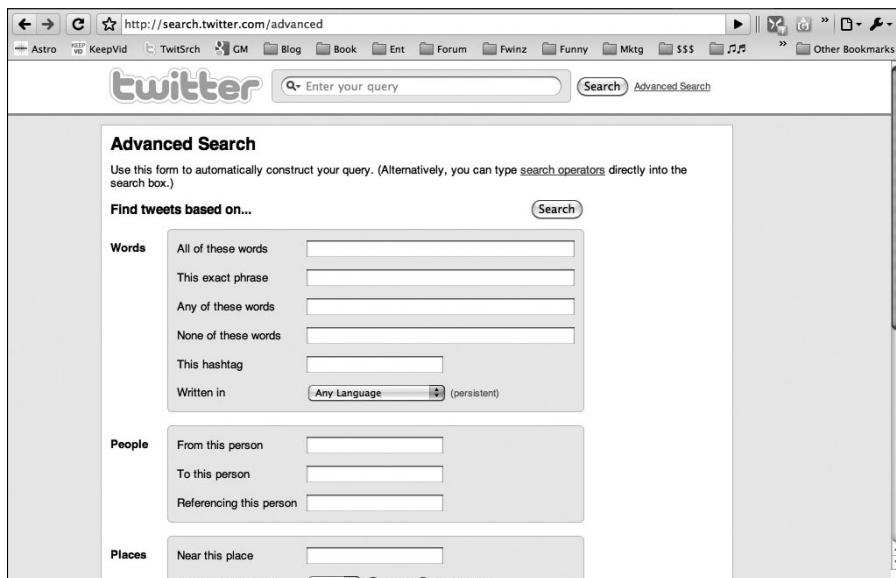


Figure 9-1:
Find what
you need
by using
Twitter's
search
engine.



Something else that makes Twitter Search so useful is how specific you can get with Advanced Search. You can fine-tune searches by usernames, locations, or keywords. Keep in mind, you're better off using only a couple of advanced search settings at a time, or you may find no results at all!

Here's more on how to use Advanced Search:

1. From the Twitter Search page, click the Advanced Search link located below the text box.

A new page appears that contains a fill-in-the-blank interface to help you search for the information and people you want to find.

2. In the Words panel, fine-tune your search by word.

You can specify that a search match all or none of the words in your query, the exact phrase you input, Twitter hashtags (which we talk about in the section “Hashtags,” later in this chapter), or even set your Advanced Search defaults to all or one of 18 different languages. (The *Persistent* label off to the right of the Languages drop-down menu just means that the language you select will remain your Advanced Search default until you select a new one.)

3. In the People panel, specify whether you want to search by user.

You can search tweets that come from or reference a certain username.

4. Enter information if you want to search by location or distance, as well as by date, in the Places panel.

For example, you might search only tweets of users who enter their location as a given city.

5. In the Attitudes panel, select whether you want to search for “positive” or “negative” tweets, or search for tweets that ask a question.

These options search for natural language clues about the tweet that imply whether it’s positive or negative.

If you use Twitter to improve customer relations for your business or a client, the Attitudes panel search can really help you find certain types of feedback. It’s not perfect, of course, but it can make rooting out negative or positive feedback much easier.

6. In the Other panel, specify whether you want to search for tweets that have links.

You can also limit how many results are returned per page.

7. Click the Search button, which appears both at the top and bottom of the Advanced Search page.

Your search results appear.

Here are a few tips to keep in mind about Search:

- ✓ Remember Search is a living thing. Having fine-tuned a useful search, many times you’ll want to do something with it, like watching it over time, subscribing to it, or sharing it with others.
- ✓ Keep the Search window open to watch as new results come in or subscribe to the RSS feed for the search to monitor it longer term.
- ✓ You can also share the search results by selecting the Twitter These Results option on the Search page or by copying and pasting the search URL from your browser bar. (*Hint:* Shorten that URL, or it will be difficult to tweet.)

TwitScoop

Time and again during news events, (earthquakes, wildfires, politics, accidents, deaths) as an extension of popular culture (TV shows, sports, movies, celebrities, fashion) and for emerging information of any kind, Twitter shines as a powerful way to find out what's going on in almost real time. TwitScoop (www.twitscoop.com) is one of many applications that display what trends are rising and falling. TwitScoop does this both at a Web site and as a feature built into popular Twitter client TweetDeck ([www\(tweetdeck.com](http://www(tweetdeck.com)). Another noteworthy site is WhatTheTrend.com, which tracks and highlights the dominating conversations on Twitter and summarizes them for you.

Built into TweetDeck, TwitScoop, shown in Figure 9-2, helps you track keywords and trending topics, which can be really useful and is mandatory if you're using Twitter to keep tabs on your brand. You can access TwitScoop by creating a new column with TwitScoop activated:

- 1. Click the + icon to add a new column.**
- 2. In the left navigation of the “Add Column” box, select “Core” and then “TwitScoop”.**



Figure 9-2:
TweetDeck
can run a
TwitScoop
column.

A new TweetDeck column dedicated to trending topics and the information related to them loads.

On the main Web site that is behind the TweetDeck application, you'll find trending topic and keyword tracking in a browser interface. From the TwitScoop home page (www.twitscoop.com), shown in Figure 9-3, you can see tags, tag clouds, popular hashtags, and other words that are trending on Twitter. You can also use a handful of widgets to embed a list of trending topics on your Web site or blog.



Trending topics let you know how popular something is by tracking keywords and hashtags. For example, if you're running a meeting or conference, tell attendees to mark their tweets with an agreed-upon hashtag and then follow the conversation by tracking that hashtag on TwitScoop, in TweetDeck, or on the TwitScoop site. Twitter also offers a Trends tab now, which gives you a short, unsorted list of popular topics in real time.



Figure 9-3:
TwitScoop
shows you
a tag cloud
and hot
trends.

Hashtags

Hashtags have become a part of the culture on Twitter for many avid users. Basically, *hashtags* are a way to delineate a keyword for other Twitter users to organize discussions around specific topics and events. (You may sometimes hear these called Meta tags, or meta hashtags.) Originally, the Web site [#hashtags](http://www.hashtags.org) (www.hashtags.org) automatically tracked and displayed these hashtags. But Twitter occasionally turns off the portion of its application program interface (API) that hashtags.org uses, so you can't always search it reliably.

Not all Twitter users like hashtags: Some users think that hashtags make the Twitter stream clunky. Admittedly, seeing tweet after tweet go by containing hashtags, such as #GNO, #journchat, #justsayin, #sxsw, and other codes, can seem noisy and disjointed if you don't follow or understand those hashtags. You can always unfollow a heavy hashtag user if it really bothers you, but don't pull the trigger too quickly: You can probably get used to hashtags, along with the rest of Twitter's quirks, before too long. The ability to tag tweets is extremely powerful. It's something people are just starting to figure out, and they have a very interesting future.

As a concept, hashtags make it possible to quickly filter tweets by topic, event, or other content by using an easy abbreviation that doesn't take up too many of a tweet's 140 characters. People at the same event or meeting, or who are discussing the same topic, can use the same hashtag. Later on, if you want to review the information related to that event or topic, you can simply search for the hashtag on Twitter Search to find all tweets that reference the same code. (Figure 9-4 shows the results of a search for #dummies.) Sure, you can search by keyword, but the # in a hashtag is a signal for others that it is *the* keyword to use so that they can easily find, read, and share all tweets for a certain topic or event.

What that means is that a hashtag that catches on forms an instant *community* around it. Most of these communities are short-lived. Others become ongoing conversations, recurring real-time events, or even entire movements.

Hashtags are handy for note-taking and conversation during events, especially if organizers say something like "include #ourevent in all your tweets" (where *ourevent* is a unique label for that event.) People tweeting about it just type that #ourevent tag in each tweet to contribute to the combined flow of tweets that all can watch and respond to. More and more, talks and conference panels in the tech and media industries display the search results for the official hashtag, creating a shared billboard of ideas, notes, questions,

and other information. People not present at the event can also participate in the discussion by searching the hashtag stream and following along with the presentation or speaker, just like they were there. From how the hashtag is included in the tweet, you can often discover other attendees at the conference that you might want to meet or talk to (although sometimes the people tweeting from offsite are so engaged, you might actually think they were in the room with you).

The results of a search for the hashtag #dummies.

Safari File Edit View History Bookmarks Develop Window Help Sun Apr 12 | 9:15 PM #dummies - Twitter Search http://search.twitter.com/search?max_id=1505898392&page=4&q=%23dummies RSS twitter widget

cuffinatan: Just got an email saying "For Dummies" is now following me on Twitter. Don't know whether to feel honored or insulted. #dummies #fordummies 17 days ago from web · Reply · View Tweet

yessnocance: Woohoo! Finally rediscovered the page I've been missing for a long time: <http://tinyurl.com/cklfq> (expand) \$ssh #agent #forwarding #howto #dummies 20 days ago from web · Reply · View Tweet

CathyScott: Follow @AndyRathbone. He's THE prolific #Dummies author. Seriously. Has sold more than 15 mill copies of his 'puter books. 22 days ago from TweetDeck · Reply · View Tweet

toddlibby: Your MLM & Ponzi schemes do not interest me. Take your snake oil elsewhere. You have been unfollowed. #dummies 29 days ago from DestroyTwitter · Reply · View Tweet

robwatts: Train driver has left the heating on, not at all comfortable - they ever hear of thermostatic controlled environs - #dummies about 1 month ago from Tweetie · Reply · View Tweet

WoNoJo: #dummies Cooking in the slow lane: Crock pots help take the stress out of ... - Philadelphia Daily News .. <http://twurl.nl/bh78d5> (expand) about 1 month ago from twitterfeed · Reply · View Tweet

WoNoJo: #dummies Yinka Shonibare MBE Brings Textile Art to SBMA - The Santa Barbara Independent (via dummies - G.. <http://twurl.nl/r4f0hs> (expand) about 1 month ago from twitterfeed · Reply · View Tweet

Newer » Page 4

[Twitter Home](#) · [About Twitter Search](#) · [API](#) · [Apps](#) · [Install Search Plugin](#)

Like Tweets, hashtags are living things that will drop out of your current view over time. You can use one of many tools, such as TwapperKeeper (<http://twapperkeeper.com/>), to set up “binders” for your most often re-used hashtags (such as tags for monthly events like #smbnh, or Social Media Breakfast NH). Then, by linking to the “binder” on your event site, you can see your hashtags as perpetual notes creating a whole picture of a group or community as it has developed.

Say that you’re organizing an event or want to start a discussion or debate on Twitter, and you want to establish a hashtag for that Twitter conversation. Here are some tips for creating an effective hashtag:

✓ If you want to avoid confusion, check Twitter Search for the hashtag that you want to use to make sure that someone else hasn't already claimed it.

For example, people use the popular #wishlist hashtag for everything from software feature wish lists to requests for birthday presents, so searching for it brings up a fairly cluttered stream.

✓ Make sure everyone at your event or discussing your topic is aware of the proper hashtag in advance.

After you choose your hashtag, make a note of it on your event page or blog post — or, of course, by tweeting it out — so that people responding to it can use the same hashtag. Other social networks, like Flickr, use this too! You can find pictures of the event.

Expanding Your Twitter World by Using Clients

Twitter's open API means that enterprising and creative software developers are constantly creating applications, mash-ups, and entire services that feed off of the Twitter platform. For example, Figure 9-5 shows the desktop client TweetDeck.



Figure 9-5:
Put Twitter
on your
desktop
with a
client
such as
TweetDeck.

Many of these third-party applications are *Twitter clients*, programs designed to let you update Twitter on your desktop or mobile phone, instead of having to use the Web interface or text-messaging. Many of these applications auto-load tweets from your Twitter followers. This is nice, because on the Web site, you have to actually click the blue bar showing how many new tweets have arrived every few minutes to see what's going on. Each of these applications have different ways of displaying, organizing, searching, and letting you interact with tweets, making them a very diverse crop of applications. There is definitely a competition afoot to become the preferred way for most tweeters to engage with Twitter. Whether a few clear leaders emerge or whether people continue to interact with Twitter dozens of ways remains to be seen.

Desktop clients

Many Twitter clients for your Mac or PC take the form of a software download that you install and run from the desktop. Most of these clients are based on a programming standard called Adobe Air. Adobe Air doesn't come preinstalled on your computer, so if you don't have it already, you'll be instructed to install it when you download a Twitter desktop client. Adobe Air is a free program; so, in fact, are many of the Twitter clients that we talk about.

Anybody with a decent amount of programming know-how can create a Twitter client, but here are a few that stand out from the crowd because they're particularly easy to use and offer the features that most Twitter users want:

- ✓ **Seesmic Desktop (www.seesmic.com):** Based on Adobe Air, you can install Seesmic Desktop on any computer that runs a Mac, Windows, or Linux operating system. It has a slim, attractive, and unobtrusive window interface (as shown in Figure 9-6), which many avid Twitter users like. Importantly, it can switch back and forth between multiple Twitter accounts, which is handy for those users who keep separate personal and professional ones, or who run Twitter accounts for clients. It also works with several social-networking services, such as aggregator FriendFeed, open-source microblogging application Identi.ca, Ping.fm (a tool to send one message to multiple platforms), and Seesmic video-chat, so you can use many of your social tools in one place. The interface is semi-customizable, fairly easy to get the hang of, and currently free to use.
- ✓ **TweetDeck (www.tweetdeck.com):** This free Twitter client, based on Adobe Air, is compatible with Mac, Windows, or Linux systems, just like Seesmic Desktop. If Seesmic Desktop isn't hardcore enough for you, you're in luck — TweetDeck is for the power Twitter user. The main selling points of TweetDeck are the ability to form specific groups of

your contacts, integrated Twitter search, and multiple-column interface. Beyond that, you'll find many of the same features as on Seesmic Desktop, including the ability to get content from more than one social network (Facebook, for example). TweetDeck is almost too functional for some casual Twitter users, but if you use Twitter frequently, you can't easily beat seeing trending topics in a column or performing a detailed Twitter search right from your desktop. TweetDeck and Twhirl increasingly vie for the top spot as most popular desktop Twitter client, but it's worth noting that approximately half of Twitter use seems to happen right at Twitter.com.

- ✓ **Twitterrific (www.twitterrific.com):** A Twitter client made for the Mac OS X desktop operating system, with mobile versions for Apple's iPhone, iPad, or iPod Touch available in the iTunes App Store. Twitterrific is shareware: You can download a free version, but if you choose to support the developers by purchasing the application, you'll avoid the ads on the regular version, and it costs less than \$15. And many people swear by Twitterrific's interface and customer service. Twitterrific has the standard gorgeous and streamlined interface most often associated with Macs (as shown in Figure 9-7), as well as the ability to manage more than one Twitter account. But, unlike many other Twitter clients, you can't track other social networks within its interface.



Figure 9-6:
Seesmic
has a stylish
interface
design.

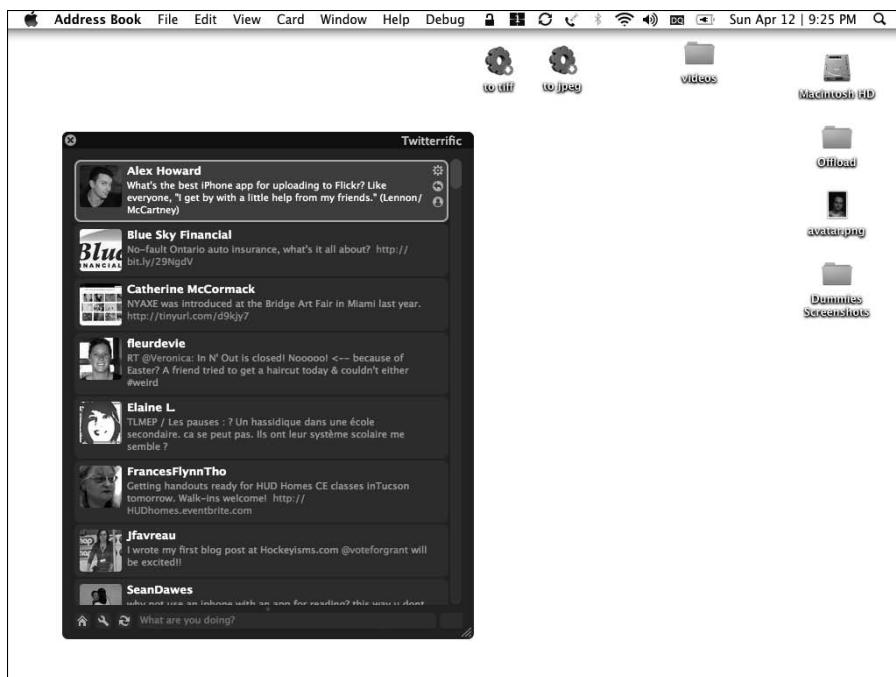


Figure 9-7:
A Twitterrific
desktop
interface.

✓ **Digsby (www.digsby.com):** A Windows-only desktop client that combines together many instant-messaging, e-mail, and social-networking accounts, in addition to Twitter — Facebook, LinkedIn, MySpace, AIM, and Yahoo!, to name a few. Figure 9-8 shows the Digsby home page. A version is in the works for the Mac operating system, but it has yet to be released as of this writing. The interface is similar to a universal instant-messaging client such as Pidgin (www.pidgin.im) or Trillian (www.ceruleanstudios.com), but Digsby comes with social networks built in, too.

If you're not on a Windows PC, you can sign up to be notified when they publish a Mac/Linux version of Digsby by going to www.digsby.com/signup/maclinux.



Try out a few of the Twitter desktop clients in the preceding list. But if none of the most popular Twitter clients appeal to you, never fear. You can find many Twitter desktop clients out there to choose from. Use Google or another search engine to search for a desktop Twitter client, because more and more emerge every day. Again, we're building www.oneforty.com to make all of this easier.



Figure 9-8:
You can
keep up
with your
Twitter
account
by using
Digsby.



Another way to see what clients are popular? Simply look at the end of tweets from people you trust to find out what they use — tweets are *source* tagged with the name of the source client or application that sent them.

Mobile clients

The most basic way to use Twitter on a mobile phone, smartphone, or PDA is by text messaging (SMS). You simply have to add your mobile device to your Twitter profile, sending tweets to the 40404 short-code, and consequently having them associated with your username if you enable Phone as a delivery option on your Home screen sidebar.

You can also use SMS as a convenient way to receive tweets on your cell-phone because the phone delivery option sends you the tweets of any user for whom you have turned on Notifications. You also receive your direct messages, although not your @replies at the time of writing. But getting so many text messages can be expensive if you don't subscribe to an unlimited texting plan. Because SMS also costs Twitter money, Twitter might eliminate the SMS service in the future to cut costs or begin charging for SMS to offset those costs. To prepare yourself for that possible situation, you may want to invest in a mobile Twitter client.

Adobe Air

Most consumer applications, such as Microsoft Word or Adobe Photoshop, need to be written separately for each operating system that they run on. At Microsoft, for instance, two separate teams work on two versions of Microsoft Word: one for Windows, the other for Macintosh.

For smaller companies or independent developers, particularly those that are writing light-weight applications, coding two (or three) versions of the same application can be a huge investment of time. Enter Adobe Air.

Adobe Air is a piece of software you install on your computer that lets you run applications built for the Adobe Air set of standards. Like the programming language Java, Adobe Air aims for the “write once, run everywhere” ideal. That means developers can reach a larger potential audience than if they had to re-create their product over and over to work on different platforms. Many Twitter third-party desktop applications (notably, TweetDeck and Seesmic

Desktop) are written for Adobe Air. Some software developers actually joke that the main reason to learn to program for Adobe Air is to build a new Twitter client.

Because these applications run on any machine that can run Adobe Air, they function exactly the same across platforms. Anyone who has tried to jump from using Microsoft Word on a Mac to using Microsoft Word on a PC (or vice-versa) can appreciate the beauty of this. Because of Adobe Air’s ease of distribution and networking features, programmers often write desktop-based social-networking and messaging clients for Adobe Air.

Installing Adobe Air is not that hard — often, if you try to install an application that requires it, you’re instructed to install Adobe Air first. It may even automatically download itself and install on your computer if you give it permission. Just follow the onscreen instructions or go to www.adobe.com/products/air/.

You can take the easy road if you have a smartphone or PDA that has a decent Web browser and a data plan from your cell carrier. Visit <http://m.twitter.com> for the mostly-functional mobile version of the site.

Or, download one of the following mobile applications and see how amazing Twitter can be when you take it on the road:

- ✓ **For an iPhone or iPad:** You can use the Twitterrific (www.twitterrific.com), as well as other apps such as Twitter’s own (<http://mobile.twitter.com>) and Tweetie (www.atebits.com/tweetie-iphone), soon to be Twitter for iPhone and iPad. You can find them by searching in the iTunes App Store.
- ✓ **For a BlackBerry:** Your choices are limited, but most BlackBerry users prefer an app called OpenBeak, formerly called TwitterBerry ([www.orangatame.com/products/openbeak/](http://orangatame.com/products/openbeak/)).

- ✓ **For an Android-based phone:** Twidroid (<http://twidroid.com/>) and Seesmic Mobile (http://seesmic.com/seesmic_mobile/) seem to be the favorites amongst our peers.
- ✓ **For a Java-enabled phone:** TinyTwitter (www.tinytwitter.com) is an excellent choice out of many options. One of the more stable Java applications for the mobile phone, TinyTwitter gives you all the functions that other mobile Twitter clients do, yet it doesn't take up a huge amount of space if your phone doesn't have a lot of room on it for extra applications.
- ✓ **For Windows Mobile-based smartphones and PDAs:** You can find several options out there, but none of them are all that great. Here are several clients for Windows Mobile that you might want to check out:
 - **Twobile** (www.infinitumsoftware.com/): Users swear by its stability, especially on the often-unstable Windows Mobile operating system. But some users do have issues with the fact that, like the Digsby desktop client (see “Desktop clients,” earlier in this chapter), Twobile doesn’t display avatars, making it more difficult for you to tell at a glance whether your favorite people and companies on Twitter are talking. If you want a stable option that experiences few crashes, Twobile (shown in Figure 9-9) fits that bill, but the list interface has its problems.

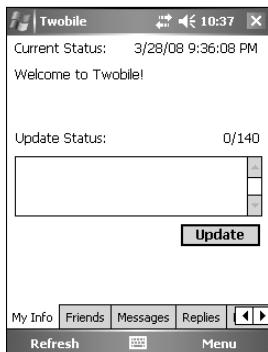


Figure 9-9:
You can
use Twobile
on your
Windows
Mobile
device.

- **ceTwit** (<http://www.kosertech.com/cetwitt-info/>): A bit better on the design front than Twobile. It does have avatars associated with the tweets that come through, and you can easily use it, especially if you have a touch screen phone. It doesn't look as pretty as some desktop Twitter clients, but it's fully functional and reasonably stable. Users have reported, however, that it's more crash-prone than Twobile.

- **PocketTwit (<http://code.google.com/p/pockettwit>):** A new contender, which comes from Google Labs, for the touch screen Windows Mobile market. Its slick, fully functional interface (shown in Figure 9-10) operates much like most desktop clients and looks gorgeous. It's still in *beta* (early testing release), so it has some occasional freezes, and you have to be ready to download regular updates. But if you want your mobile client to look and operate just like your desktop client, this one can do the job.



Figure 9-10:
PocketTwit
is a new
Windows
Mobile
device
client.

You can use a site called the Twitter Fan Wiki (<http://twitter.pbwiki.com/apps>) to find out more about Twitter clients, both mobile and desktop. Active Twitter users have written up their favorite Twitter applications and provided links that can point you to the download sites. There are several other directories, but none of them, even the fan wiki, is remaining very current or user-friendly with the fast pace of innovation within the Twitter ecosystem. We sincerely hope to fix that with www.oneforty.com. We'll let you know on www.TwitterForDummies.com how that goes.

Keeping Your Tweets Short with URL Shorteners

One of the main issues with Twitter is space. The 140-character limit makes it easy to run out of room before you finish what you want to say. Sometimes, you want to show your Twitter network a link to a Web page that you find fascinating or amusing, to a blog post that you wrote or an article about you, or to just about anything on the Web. But those URLs can be quite long, often well over 140 characters themselves.

URL shorteners are extremely easy Web-based applications that take long URLs from Web sites and make them shorter by turning them into coded small URLs that forward the reader to the original linked page. The URL shortener permanently assigns the link to that shortened URL.

Twitter uses TinyURL (www.tinyurl.com) as its default URL shortener. If you enter a whole, unshortened URL in the Update window on your Home screen on Twitter.com, Twitter automatically shrinks that URL to a more manageable size by using TinyURL. You don't have to do a thing.

If you're looking to save as many characters as possible, you can use a URL shortener that promises to make your URL fit into the smallest of spaces on Twitter. To use one of these shorteners, copy the URL from the address bar of the Web site that you want to share, and then paste that URL into the input field at the URL shortener site of your choice.

Some URL shorteners offer added services, such as a way to track who's clicking your link in Twitter, how often it's being clicked, and other statistics that you can use to gather data on the effectiveness of your (or your client's) Twitter account:

- ✓ **bit.ly (<http://bit.ly>):** Tracks clicks over time, clicks on other shortened versions of the link, where clicks are coming from, key information from the target page, and retweets of the link (even if they use a differently shortened URL)
- ✓ **BudURL (<http://budurl.com>):** Tracks the IP address of visitors and how many times your link was clicked

You can find many options by doing a Google search for the term **URL shortener**.



Although new applications come out frequently, bit.ly (<http://bit.ly>) remains our favorite of the URL shortener crowd. bit.ly, shown in Figure 9-11, offers a complete tracking service that lets you see where the URLs you shorten and share are going, and what kind of results they're getting. This application's tracking includes location and metadata, two huge pieces of information that can help you target your audience in a more refined way.

bit.ly also integrates with TweetDeck, and you can set bit.ly to remember your Twitter handle(s). So, unlike other URL shorteners, bit.ly catches your tracking data for you no matter what Twitter interface you use when you post. In Figure 9-12, you can see bit.ly tracking results (how many people clicked and when) for a link that was shortened in bit.ly and then tweeted.

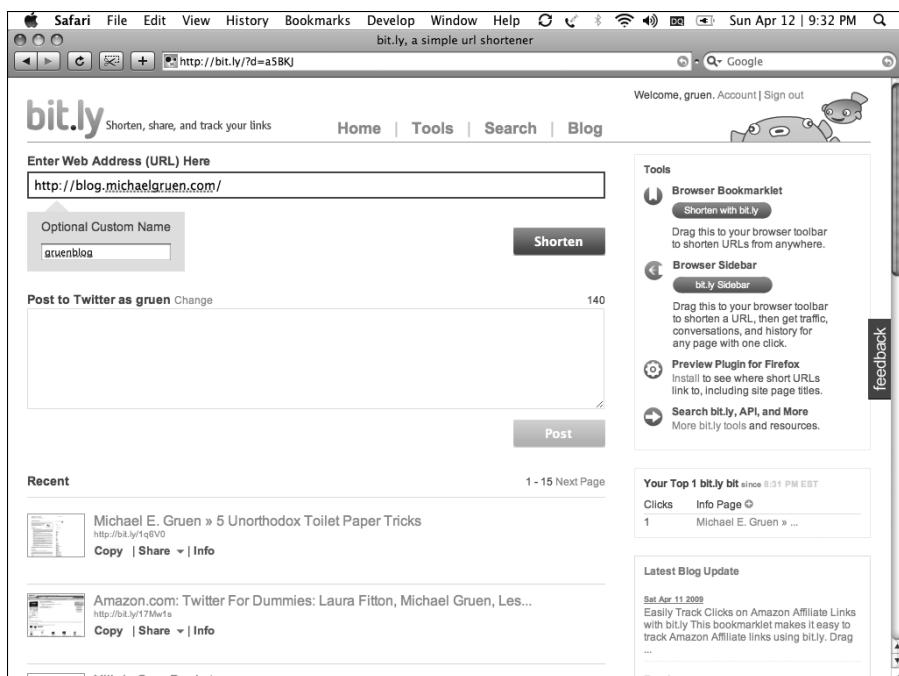


Figure 9-11:
The bit.ly
interface.

Getting All Your Online Activity in One Place by Using Aggregators

Aggregators are sites that bring all your social-media activity into one place, pulling in your accounts from sites such as Twitter, MySpace, Facebook, YouTube, Flickr, and so on. An aggregator gives you one stop where you can see all your social profiles and all the updates from your friends and colleagues on those services, without having to spend a lot of time clicking from Web site to Web site so that you can keep up with what's going on.

The most buzzworthy aggregator right now is FriendFeed (<http://friendfeed.com>), shown in Figure 9-13. FriendFeed can pull in accounts from any social network, any blog or Web site that has an RSS feed, photo-sharing sites such as Flickr, social music sites such as Last.fm, social bookmarking sites such as Digg, and more. Not everyone loves FriendFeed, especially at first. It's pretty complicated. It has some issues with user interface, although a new

one just launched as this book went to press. You may find figuring it out a bit difficult. Some people find that putting so many accounts into one place just makes things noisy, and it gets too hard to follow meaningful conversations or keep up with friends. But many active twitterers love FriendFeed because it handles vast amounts of data from both you and your contacts with ease. It also works with Seesmic Desktop, so you can see it right on your desktop Twitter client.

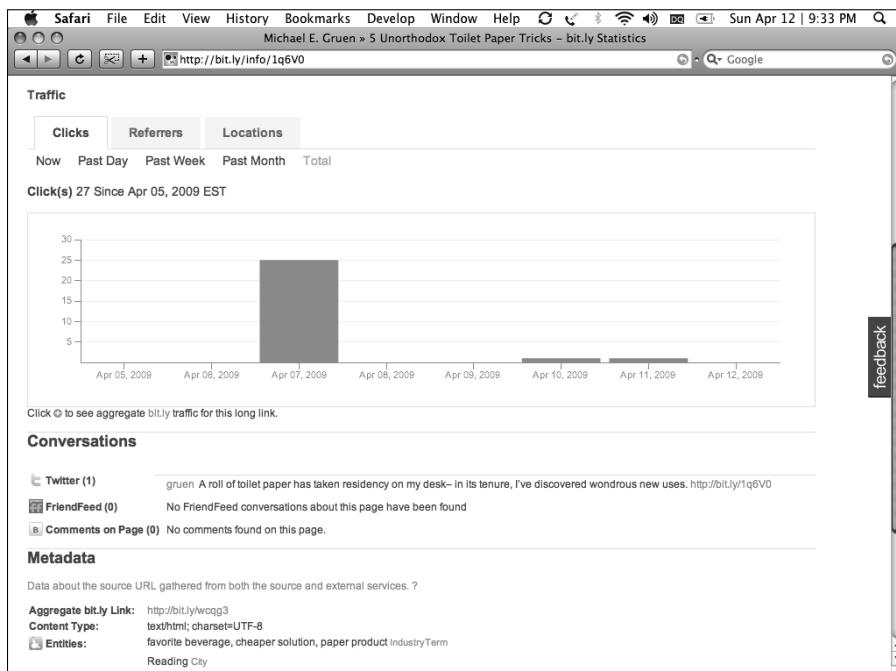
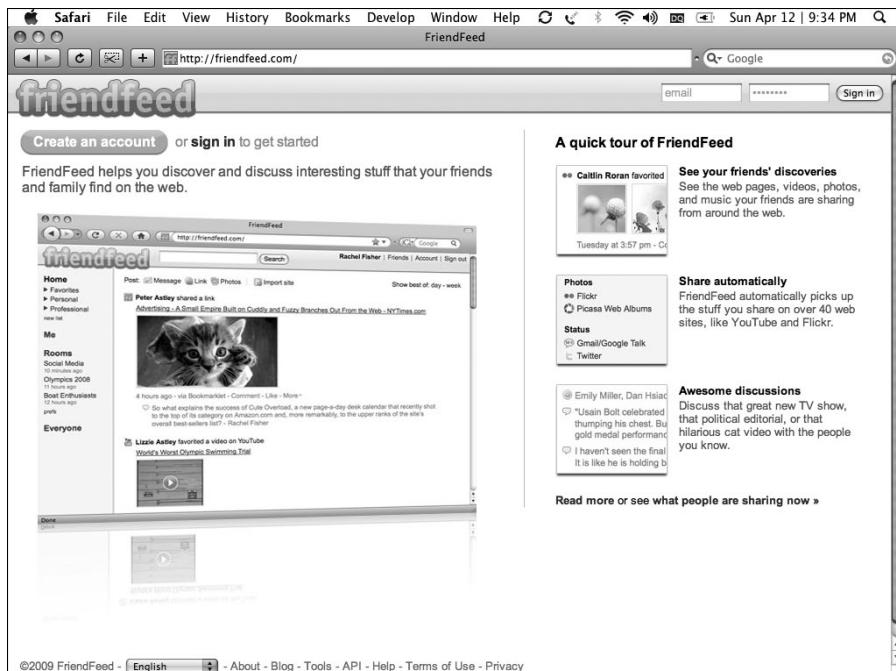


Figure 9-12:
Some
bit.ly
tracking
results.

You can find plenty of other aggregators out there, and you can use many of them much more easily (and they look prettier) than FriendFeed, even though they don't necessarily have the hardcore community that FriendFeed does. Some power users use the new Google Buzz (accessible for those with GMail accounts), but it has a steep learning curve and several serious privacy issues. You can also use SocialMedian, SocialThing, Plaxo, Spokeo, and many more. Facebook itself now pulls many third-party services into its News Feed, making that News Feed function very much like an aggregator.

Figure 9-13:
Combine all
your online
activity
by using
FriendFeed.



Using Trending Topics: The Zeitgeist of Twitter

Near the bottom of the right-hand column of your Twitter home page, you can see the Trending Topics section. As the millions of people tweet away, Twitter keeps track of the hot topics and displays and ranks them there. When you use Twitter, you can see topics *trending* (becoming popular) in real time.

If you click any one of those trending topics, Twitter pulls up quick, real-time search results for that individual topic. (Go ahead and try!) If the topic has been around for a little bit, Twitter can pull in description information from the third-party service WhatTheTrend.com to try and make sense of why that topic is trending. A quick description won't always be there, but is often.

You can also use a service called Twellow (www.twellow.com) to search the latest trending topics and popular tag words. A *tag word* is the same as a hashtag or keyword. It's just a word that people are using frequently to discuss a certain topic or issue.

Trending topics also appear at a service called TweetGrid (www.tweetgrid.com), and on sites such as the Twitter Trending Topics RSS Feed (<http://twitter.trends.free.fr>). You can also follow the user @TrendingTopics (<http://twitter.com/trendingtopics>), a bot that claims to track and report live trending tag words on Twitter.

Why should you care about trending topics? You can use them to gauge the popularity or success of anything from a specific person to a political theme to a marketing campaign. They can also help you figure out what the global Twitter population finds newsworthy. For example, it's often the case when you see a celebrity's name trending on Twitter that they've have had a big news day or have recently passed away. (In the latter case, you'll usually see RIP trending along with that celebrity's name.)

Trending topics give you real-time statistics on public appeal and can be a great resource for sudden worldwide events, like tsunamis, earthquakes, and new Apple product releases. By the same token, Trending topics often picks up a lot of nonsense and off-target information, such as #NoDisrespectBut #DontYouHateWhen and new Apple product releases. So, take Trending Topics with a grain of salt.

Trending Topics defaults to global reach, but Twitter is working to help localize trending topics for greater relevance. Right now, you can localize to country and, if a city's big enough, that city. Some users who have turned on Twitter's new geolocation feature in their settings (use with caution) can get trending topics for their immediate area.

To adjust Trending Topics scope, find the Trending Topics sidebar area and click the Change button. A dialog box will come up so you can hone-in on the geographic area that's most interesting to you.



If your favorite sports team loses, you can adjust your trending topics to lessen the pain or heighten the glory: Laura and Leslie hail from the Boston area, and Michael lives in New York. Whenever the Red Sox lose to the Yankees, in a gross display of schadenfreude, Michael sets his Trending Topics scope to Boston and basks in the angst that is New England's collective mourning. Go Yankees.

Playing with Twitter Games and Memes

Hardcore Twitter users are a playful bunch. They've been known to turn the service into a wacky social gaming platform on occasion, such as when Internet sensation Ze Frank organized Color Wars (as shown in Figure 9-14). In the Color Wars, Twitter users joined teams designated by color in a summer-camp-inspired game, and those teams proceeded to complete tasks such as online scavenger hunts and Photoshop challenges.

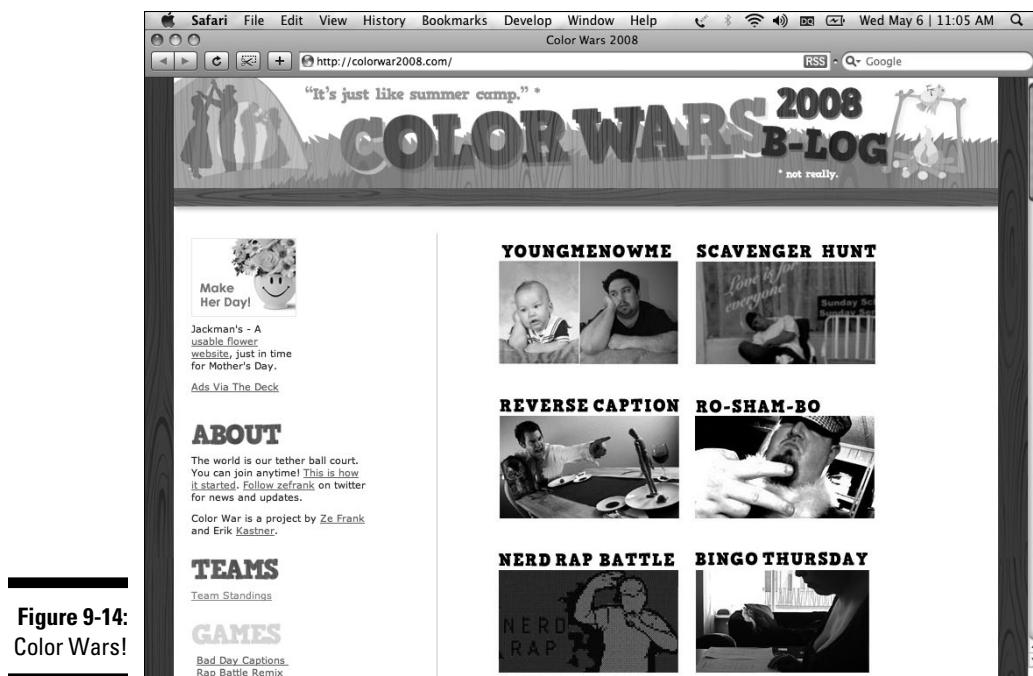


Figure 9-14:
Color Wars!

You can use Twitter for creative games, as well. TwitStory is a game in which people create a story tweet by tweet, all collaborating on the outcome by adding individual lines. You use other people's tweets, rather than your own, to build the story, fitting unrelated lines together like a puzzle. You can read how TwitStory #3 came out on its creator's blog at <http://andypowell.net/blog/?cat=10>.

Twitter users like to use its potential to spread virally, from one person to another, to create *memes* — trends that flow through the Twitter stream with many people participating. Sometimes, users create hashtags to spark discussion, such as #favoritehappysong or #favoritefallfood. When Twitter users see the hashtag go by in their Twitter stream, they voice their own opinions, answering the implicit question and tweeting it out with the hashtag attached. You can have fun going back to visit these games in Twitter Search later, and you can also use them to find out a little more about your Twitter connections.

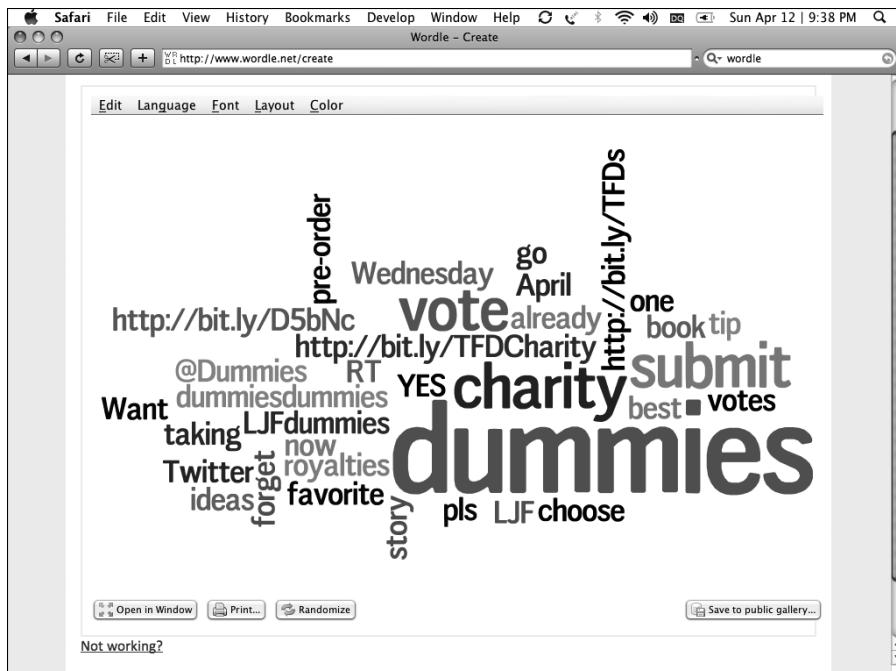
One popular meme that doesn't seem to ever die out is the Overheard meme. You may have noticed a lot of tweets containing OH and wondered, "What's the deal with Twitter and Ohio anyways!?" OH just abbreviates "overheard" and is usually followed by something funny or awkward or even quite horrible. The twitterer is sharing it as if to say, "Can you *believe* this!?" Hear something funny or crazy in real life and want to share it? Just type OH and then put the quip you heard in quotes. Most of the time, you don't use any names, keeping the OH anonymous — it's funnier out of context. Some OH tweets are racy or raunchy, but most are just average things people say that seem funny at the time.

With all the creativity on Twitter and its general fun-loving nature, you may well create your own Twitter game or meme — either just for kicks or even as a marketing strategy. Don't be shy!

Tag Clouds

TwitScoop, Cloudlet, trending topics, and hashtags all have something in common: They all can generate a Twitter *tag cloud*, a visual display of words where the relative size of the word corresponds to how many times it has been mentioned. Tag clouds provide an easy visualization of what's going on in the twitterverse in real time. Words that twitterers are using a lot will appear in the tag cloud, and the more mentions a word gets, the larger, darker, and bolder its display will be as well. It's another, often quite visually appealing, way to see what is really going on.

You may enjoy watching tag clouds. Applications such as Wordle (www.wordle.net) even let you play with tag clouds a little so that you can generate graphical representations of whatever your topic is (as shown in Figure 9-15), which you can then use on slides and Web sites. Tag clouds are an interesting way to present what topics and keywords around your subject are interesting to the group at large and can give your presentation or blog entry a little more punch and relevance.



Keeping in Contact with Visualization and Listening Tools

Sure, building connections and influence on Twitter is a great objective, but there is even more value in the Twitter experience when you take the opportunity to tune into what people are saying about you, your company, and your favorite topics. Also, a finely attuned listening program will greatly enhance your ability to build connections and influence on Twitter in the first place.

You can find plenty of tools available that let you track your social media presence. These tools allow you to set it and forget it — you can still find out what's said without actively trawling through Twitter. Many of these tools are free, though you can pay for some tools that come with additional business features like analytics and better organization of search results.

In the following sections, we really only skim the surface of what's possible. But no matter which service you use, make listening a priority for yourself on Twitter. Keeping an ear to the tremendous firehose of information about consumer sentiment and even world events helps and can definitely bear fruit and make effective use of your social media engagement time invested.

Google as keymaster

If you don't already have a Google e-mail address, you probably should. Google is emerging as a very convenient key to your social media identity, and having a Gmail account, Google's free e-mail account, is your pass to many valuable, free Google applications and services like Google Alerts. Gmail is free, and as an e-mail service has some of the best spam-blocking, tagging, and message search going.

Your Gmail address is also the key to your Google profile URL, which means that

PistachioConsulting@Gmail.com reserves this Google profile for the company: www.google.com/profiles/PistachioConsulting. Though, you can set this to something else using their online tools.

Remember, you don't have to use your Gmail address as your main e-mail to benefit from having a Gmail account. But you may find more and more uses for it once you test the waters and do a few things with it.

Google Alerts

Setting up some basic Google Alerts, while not a Twitter-specific listening tool, is something every individual and company should do as a minimum social media listening program. The Google Alerts tool trawls the Web, looking for new blog posts, Twitter tweets, and news stories that mention whatever keywords you want to follow, then delivers those posts, tweets, and stories to your Gmail inbox (as shown in Figure 9-16).

To set up a Google Alert:

- 1. Log into your Gmail account.**
- 2. In the top toolbar, click More.**

A drop-down menu appears.

- 3. Select Even More from the menu.**

The More Google Products screen appears.

- 4. Click the Alerts link, which has a bell to its left.**

The Google Alerts screen appears.

- 5. In the Search Terms field, enter the topic, keyword, name, business name, or phrase that you want to monitor.**

Doing a Boolean search, such as putting quotes around two words to keep them together, can help you fine-tune your Google Alert results.

- 6. From the Type drop-down list, select what kind of search you want to do.**



We recommend Comprehensive at first, to cover all your possible search bases. If you find it is simply returning too many results for your brand, name, or keywords, you can always scale it back later.

7. From the How Often drop-down list, select how often you want Google to trawl for results.

8. In the Deliver To field, enter your Gmail address.

Google delivers the Alerts to this address.

9. Click the Create Alert button to activate the Google Alert.

10. Repeat Steps 5 through 9 for additional Alerts.

You can create as many Alert searches as you need.

BLVDStatus (<http://www.blvdstatus.com/>) is a tool that works to help you track who is talking about you on the Internet (see Figure 9-17). It helps you pay attention to people who are using your name, your company name, a brand name, or any keywords you choose. This kind of monitoring and listening tool is a valuable way to keep track of how you, your company, or your product is perceived.

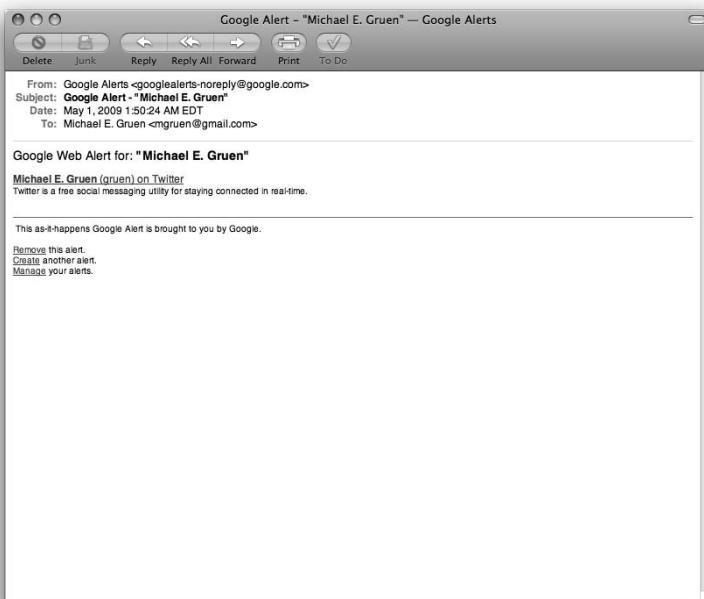


Figure 9-16:
You can have Google Alerts delivered directly to your Gmail inbox.

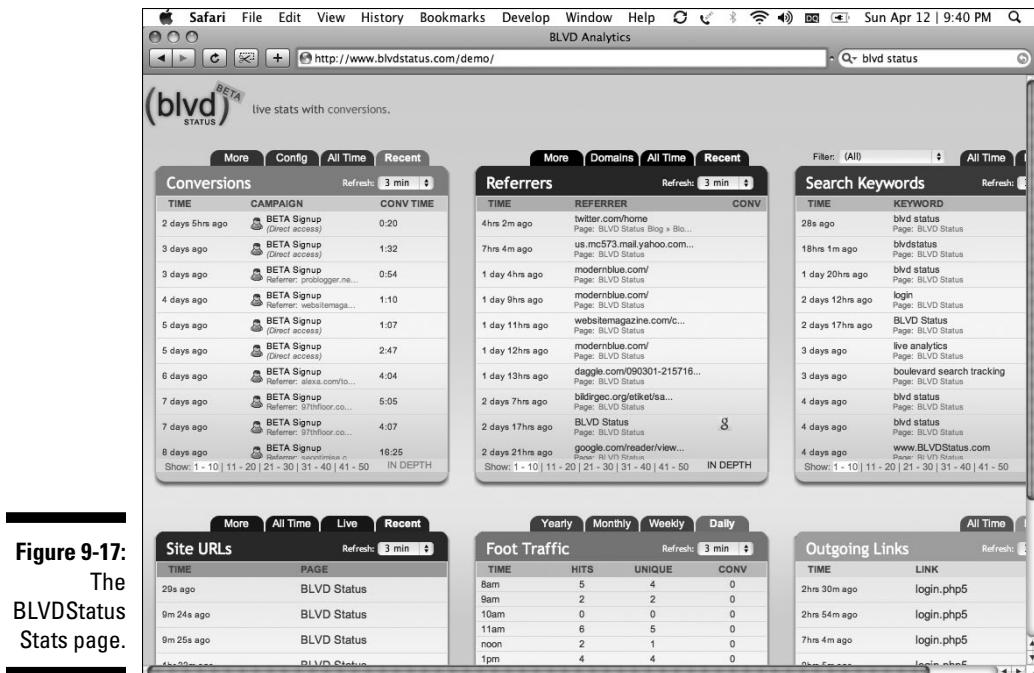


Figure 9-17:
The
BLVDStatus
Stats page.

What does BLVDStatus have to do with Twitter? It's one of the few listening tools out there that lets you incorporate tweets as well as conversations about you found other places on the Web, such as blogs, into something called *conversion tracking*. Conversion tracking means BLVDStatus will help you see which tweets about you led to visits to your site and then go deeper to filling out a contact form or ordering a product. It helps you see real results from your online involvement, and it takes you to a level a bit deeper than a simple Google Alert.

BLVDStatus displays these results in an attractive and easy-to-read set of *widets* (colorful squares full of information you ask for, sorted how you wish to see it). The most interesting things about BLVDStatus are that it offers a free version that is valuable, offers real results you can customize, and is comparable to a larger, paid tracking company.

Twitter Search

Twitter's own Search (<http://search.twitter.com>) allows you to figure out how people are interacting with you and what they're saying about you on Twitter. You can track all mentions of your name, whether or

not those mentions have an @ in front of them, by setting up a search and then bookmarking that search for later. If you leave the Search tab open, its results automatically refresh every few moments. We have several bookmarked searches set up for our names, company names, and for any topics we are currently working on. You can also subscribe to the results of any search using RSS (see Chapters 4 and 8).

To set this kind of inclusive Twitter search:

- 1. Go to Twitter Search (<http://search.twitter.com>).**
- 2. In the Search box, enter your search terms.**

If you want to get fancy and you know how to use search strings, you can search terms like this:

-from:dummies dummies OR dummys, replacing “dummies” with the term for which you want to search.

- 3. Click the Search button.**

Your search results appear. Figure 9-18 shows the results for the example Dummies search string.

The screenshot shows a Safari browser window with the Twitter search results page. The URL in the address bar is <http://search.twitter.com/search?q=-from%3Adummies+dummies+OR+dummys>. The search query is displayed in the search bar. The main content area shows a list of tweets in a card-based format. On the right side, there is a sidebar with sections for 'Trending topics' and 'Nifty queries'.

Trending topics:

- #Amazonfail
- Amazon
- Jesus
- Masters
- Great Easter
- Navy Seals
- Hannah Montana
- Celebrity Apprentice
- Kenny Perry
- #hcsms

Nifty queries:

- cool filter:links
- “is down”
- movie :)
- “happy hour” near:SF
- “haiku”
- “listening to”
- love OR hate

Figure 9-18:
Twitter
Search
results for
a Dummies
string.

4. Bookmark the search using your favorite bookmarking feature, program, or Web site.
5. Repeat Steps 2 through 4 for as many search terms as you want to track.

Radian6

We recommend Radian6 (www.radian6.com), a paid monitoring service, for a large corporation that needs to track multiple campaigns on a national or international scale, or for a company that doesn't have the manpower to set up and track multiple free searches on a variety of tools. Figure 9-19 shows the Radian6 Web site.

Radian6 offers some functionality that free search monitoring services don't, such as tracking, graphs, analysis, and the ability to assign specific tweets to team members for follow-up. Radian6 offers the results in an easy-to-interpret, aesthetically pleasing, real-time package. It also offers superb real-time customer service, if you need assistance.

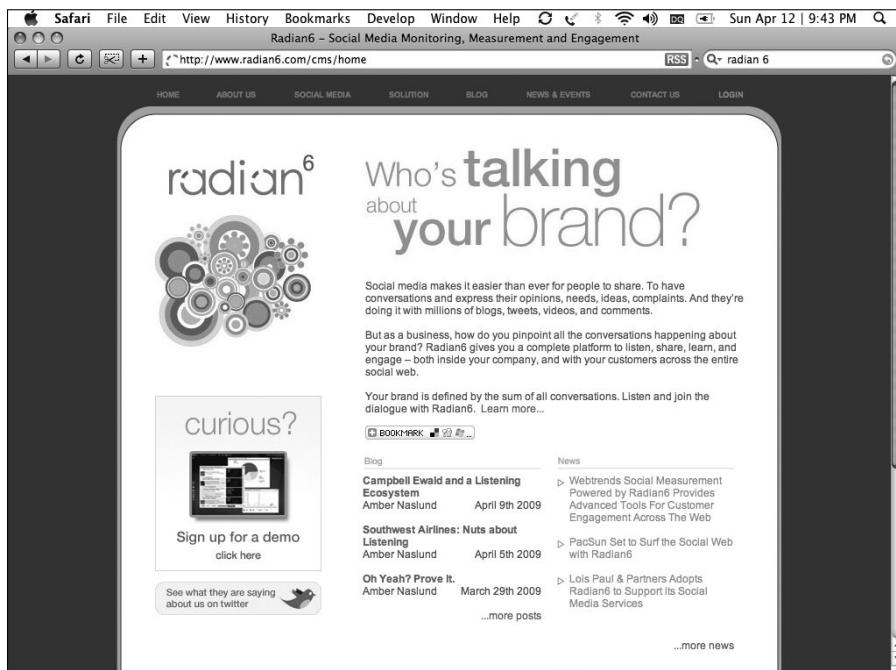


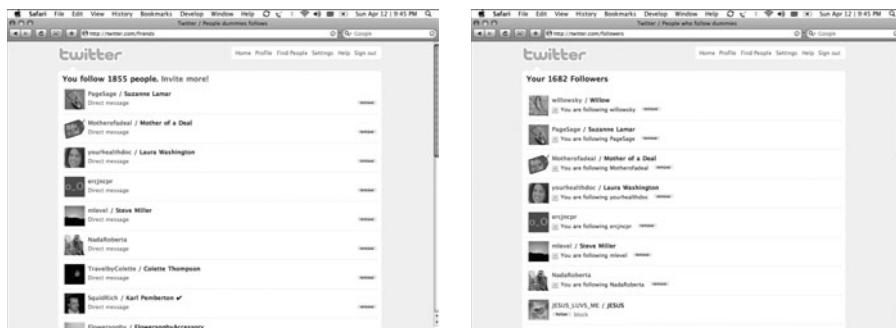
Figure 9-19:
You can
download
Radian6
from its
Web site.

Knowing Your Network with Follower and Following Tools

While your Twitter universe grows and grows, you probably want to find the best way possible to keep up with your followers and who you're following. Twitter itself falls short in this area. For some reason, Twitter doesn't offer a way to search your follower or following lists (which you can see in Figure 9-20). It also doesn't offer a way to sort your followers alphabetically or navigate in any way more efficient than the slow page-by-page scan.

You can quickly find out whether someone is following you back by trying to send that user a direct message. If you're on the Twitter Web interface's DM update screen, that twitterer's username appears in the drop-down list only if he follows you back. If you're on a desktop client, you can try to direct message that user — if he doesn't follow you, you get a message telling you so.

Figure 9-20:
Twitter lets you see who's following you (left) and whom you follow (right).



Networking is by far one of the most powerful uses that anyone can make of Twitter. But, finding interesting people, maintaining your network, and digging in to really understand who you are connected to is not always straightforward. Here are some tools that will improve your networking experience on Twitter:

- ✓ **Find your followers.** You can use sites such as Twitter Karma and FriendorFollow to check and compare who follows you and whom you follow, and to keep up with those people you want to add to your follow list. You can use these kinds of services to check out your followers and to double-check that you're following the people who are important to you:

- **FriendorFollow (<http://friendorfollow.com>)**: Came onto the Twitter scene more recently than Twitter Karma, and its interface is a little bit easier to understand. The FriendorFollow interface tells you who your mutual follows are, whom you follow without being followed back, and who follows you without you following them back. You can then pick and choose whom to follow and whom to stop following. FriendorFollow connections don't automatically opt you into individuals' device updates, so it's okay to use the tool to connect to many people, even if you have device updates turned on for your account.
- **Twitter Karma (www.dossy.org/twitter/karma)**: Offers you a way to see whom you follow, who follows you, and which users both follow you and are followed by you. You can also use Twitter Karma to add followers, as well as remove users whom you no longer want to follow. But Twitter Karma tends to select Notifications On as the default setting when you add a new follower from Twitter Karma's interface, so be sure to double-check that user's profile if you don't want to receive her notifications by text message.

✓ Find new people to follow.

- **We Follow (www.wefollow.com)**: User-generated Twitter directory launched by Digg Founder Kevin Rose at SXSW in April 2009. Associates up to three hashtags with each tweeterer who lists themselves in the directory and then presents the most followed individuals and accounts for each category. Because the results are searched by follower numbers, it's a particularly good way to find the top celebrities, musicians, journalists, politicians, and so on who are using Twitter at any given time.
- **Twellow (www.twellow.com)**: Structured like a Yellow Pages for Twitter, allows you to find new followers based on category, name, location, or trending topics. If a Twitter user has been active long enough to have a few tweets on the record, as well as a bio, you can find him on Twellow. If you search for yourself on Twellow, you can claim your profile, meaning that you contact Twellow and prove that you are you in order to get editing privileges for it, and then tweak it to categorize yourself so that others can find you based on your interests, services, or professional categories.
- **Twitter (<http://search.twitter.com> or your Home screen)**: We'd be remiss not to remind you here that you can find new people to follow on Twitter itself in three useful ways. Twitter's people search function is ironically the weakest. Even to find a specific individual that you know to be on Twitter, you're often better

off searching Google for his first and last names and the word Twitter. Twitter also offers a list of suggested users, and while there has been some controversy around who gets to be on that list and who does not, it includes some pretty interesting accounts and is worth browsing. But to *really* fine-tune your interests, periodically search Twitter itself for tweets about topics close to your heart and unique amongst your interests. You never know who you might find. Click on a user's name in any tweet he's written and peruse his last page or so of tweets. You get a surprisingly good feel for who they are as a person that way. It's very cool.

- **Mr. Tweet (<http://mrtweet.com/>):** This site helps you find new Twitter users to follow based on both your existing network and your interests as demonstrated by your tweets. If you're a cyclist, for instance, and reference riding occasionally, Mr. Tweet would allow you to find other cyclists amongst your friends' friends.
- **100TWT (<http://100twt.com>):** This site simply combines the streams of the 100 most-followed Twitter accounts. So while it overlaps heavily with the Suggested Users list, it does a nice job of letting you skim random tweets from the Twitter heavyweights in a combined screen. Poke around from time to time, and you may notice some cool ideas coming from equally cool people.

✓ **Find users by location.** TwitterLocal (www.twitterlocal.net) used to use Twitter's XMPP feed to show what users were in what locations. Because Twitter has its XMPP feed switched off for the time being, TwitterLocal is offered only as a downloadable Adobe Air application you can use to view tweets by location. You can also try several other good sites for finding local twitterers:

- Hubspot's TwitterGrader returns lists of the top graded twitterers for given cities (<http://twitter.grader.com/top/cities>).
- Twellow's Twellowhood feature (www.twellow.com/twellowhood/) lets you find twitterers by city using a zoomable map.
- LocalTweeps (www.localtweeps.com) lets twitterers sign themselves up by tweeting their zip code publicly.

✓ **Back up your data.** Tweetake (<http://tweetake.com>) offers you a way to back up your Twitter data, including your follower and following lists, so that you don't lose the data if Twitter ever crashes. The initial backup takes quite a long time, so be prepared to wait a little while. An even more comprehensive service, and one that Leslie uses, is Backupify. It backs up your tweets, as well as 27 of your other social networks, such as Facebook and Flickr, so you don't have to worry about losing photos, friends, or a 140-character thought ever again.



- ✓ **Find out when you lose followers.** TwitterLess (www.twitterless.com) and Qwitter (<http://useqwitter.com>) are two tools that alert you when someone stops following you. Depending on your outlook or your reason for using Twitter, you may want to know when you lose followers — but this information can also be quite the blow to your ego.

It's just not encouraging feedback, and it's a waste of energy to try to "determine" why someone left your stream. These tools are very much against the spirit of Twitter, where unsubscribing is really just a personal choice about the consumption of content, not a personal affront or rejection of the friendship. Laura has many business and personal contacts that don't happen to be interested in the way she uses Twitter. It's really no big deal. It's probably not even a good idea to use these quitting services, especially as some are set up to imply that a certain tweet caused the unfollow. Use with caution!

- ✓ **Watch Twitter unfold, on a map of the world.** You can use a mash-up application called Twittervision (<http://twittervision.com>) that displays the activity on Twitter in real time on a Google map. When each tweet comes in, it's associated with the actual, physical location from which it came, as well as the specific Twitter user, on a live, constantly updating map. Twittervision is certainly not an efficient way to find new people to follow, but it can be entrancing to watch. We've heard that someone who viewed the display at the Museum of Modern Art stared for a very long time and came away pretty breathless, saying, "I've seen God." Far be it from us to pass judgment on anyone's sense of reverence. It's enough to say, you may find it kind of fun and mystifying to watch. Just don't expect "utility" from it, per se.

You can take it with you

Depending on how you use Twitter, having your own copy of your tweets, relationships, and conversations may be a mere nicety, or it may have some very real economic and emotional value to you. Laura frequently mentions her children's milestones or captures meaningful moments in her life through her tweets.

One of the areas of likely innovation in the Twitter ecosystem is better publishing tools. You can take your unwieldy stream of tweets and extract out a few key moments, perhaps embellishing them with the videos and photos you linked to, or visual display of the conversations

you were having at the time. Personal scrapbooks or *annual reports* (see Nicholas Feltron's work) could be a really nice thing to have personally.

For a business, this kind of recordkeeping has even more obvious value — having the data in a format that you can search, parse, and analyze will come to be a business necessity as more and more types of business interactions take place on Twitter. We become what we measure, and measuring effectiveness will be a crucial reason to be able to get a copy of your Twitter data.

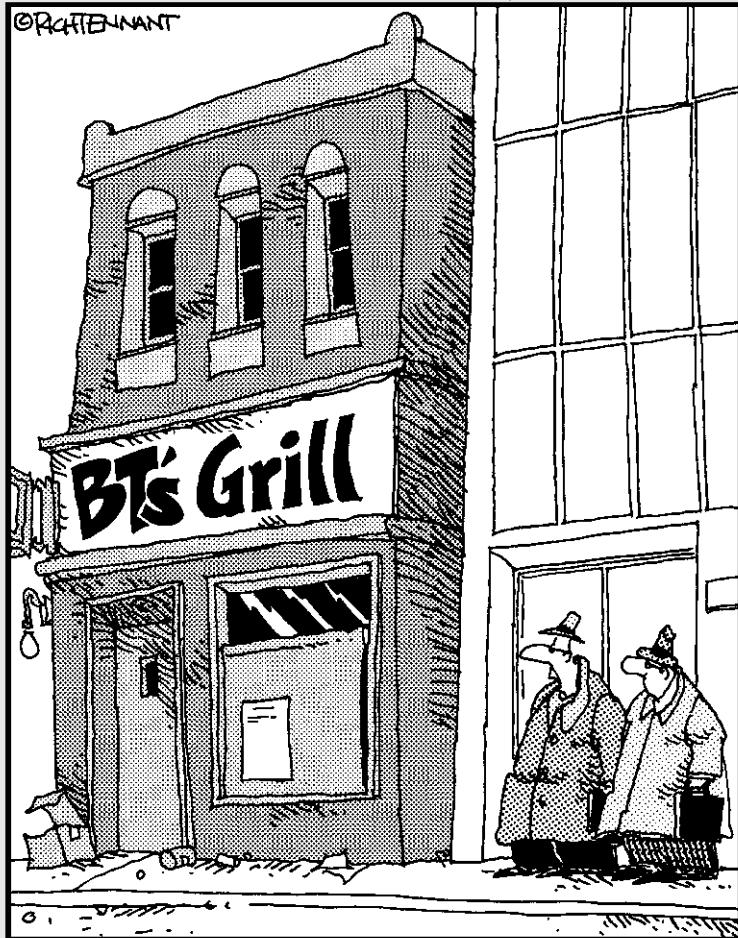
Part IV

Knowing Why We Twitter

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

©RICH TENNANT



"I've been reading the chef's tweets. Let's eat across the street."

In this part . . .

In this part, we ask the big questions: Why are you on Twitter? As a business, how can you use Twitter to build and stabilize your brand? As a not-for-profit, what can you do to make people evangelize your cause? What should you say? Whom should you talk to?

We answer these questions and more in this part, and we promise we won't put you through an existential crisis.

Chapter 10

Finding Your Tweet Voice

In This Chapter

- ▶ Diving into Twitter
 - ▶ Deciding whether to tweet for work or fun
 - ▶ Figuring out who you’re tweeting to
 - ▶ Being yourself on Twitter
 - ▶ Knowing what to keep personal and private
-

If you let it, Twitter can conveniently become an integral part of your day-to-day life. Twitter is available almost everywhere — you can update your Twitter feed many ways on many platforms. Wherever you have Internet or cellular coverage, you can more or less use Twitter. The mechanics are pretty easy.

But as you get up to speed and even “embrace the twecosystem,” writing and sharing in only 140 characters at a time definitely takes some getting used to. It may seem a bit limiting at first, but over time that limitation changes the way you write and communicate. If you plan to use the service with some regularity, you’ll probably want to think at least a little bit about how your updates compare with the image you want to convey.

In this chapter, we explore different approaches to using Twitter and how you can find your own unique voice.

Finding Your Voice, Whether for Business or Pleasure

When you first sign up for a Twitter account, you don’t follow anyone yet, and nobody follows you. Updating your feed may seem a bit awkward. You’re tweeting into the void, you have no idea who’s really listening (if anyone),

and you're almost certainly wondering what the heck the point of tweeting even is. Don't feel bad — most everyone's first tweet (see Figure 10-1) is a little awkward. But if you follow our advice, you should be able to get the hang of Twitter in no time!

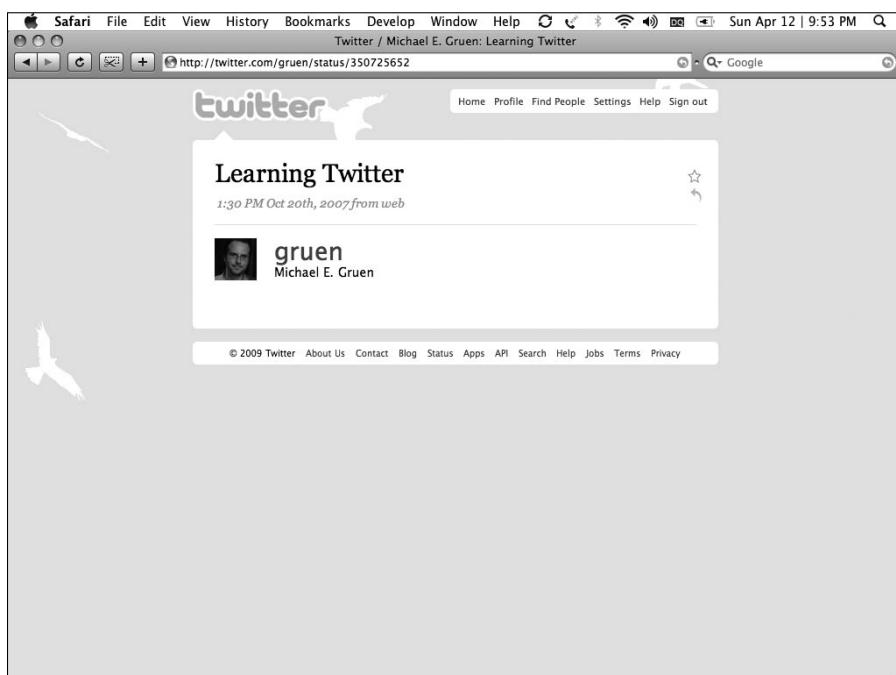


Figure 10-1:
Michael's
example
first tweet.

When you start following users and other users start following you, you may want to think about what sort of things you want to share with your following. For many new users, one of the great debates is whether to use Twitter for business or pleasure, and we address that a lot in this chapter. You might have joined Twitter for either reason (or both). As you come to embrace the medium to its fullest, you will find yourself figuring out what kind of voice you want to use on Twitter. The answer, as with so many answers about Twitter, depends entirely on what you want to get out of the Twitter experience.

Part of determining your identity on Twitter involves choosing your user-name (which we cover in Chapter 2). If you choose a nickname or pseudonym for your username, you probably aim for Twitter personal use. If you use your business name as your Twitter handle, you likely intend to create a presence for your company. But if you use your real name as your username (which is probably the best way to go), it simply implies that you are who

you say you are — and you can take your account in the direction that makes the most sense to you as you evolve. That's one reason why you probably want to use your real name or some variation of it.



Whatever name you pick, you can change it at any time on your Twitter account's Settings page. We explain how to make this change in Chapter 2.

No matter what you name your Twitter presence, you need a voice and personality that's uniquely yours. We go over some tips and thoughts on how to make your Twitter voice your own in the section "You as you on Twitter," later in this chapter.

Your business on Twitter

Can you use something as simple as Twitter for business? Absolutely! However, you can't exactly adopt the usual salesperson "Sell! Sell! Sell!" mentality on Twitter. To operate as a successful business presence on Twitter:

- ✓ Master the art of give and take.
- ✓ Figure out how to engage your Twitter base in conversation.
- ✓ Give your audience, clients, and customers a reason to read your tweets.

Twitter is a conversational medium, and for businesses to mesh well with user expectations, companies and businesses need to understand how to navigate the landscape as a brand. You can read about strategies and case studies in Chapter 11 (no bankruptcy pun intended).



If you're representing a large company (such as @JetBlue or @Starbucks), your Twitter presence might be a little more complicated because you're not representing just yourself, but your business — and for some companies, that may mean tens of thousands of people. That's a lot of responsibility!

If you're managing a Twitter presence on behalf of your company, we highly encourage you to start a separate account for yourself so that you can get used to the service. Before you start tweeting on behalf of your business, know what users expect from brands and businesses, and how customers like to be approached. Getting used to how businesses operate on Twitter can prevent you from making a serious faux pas down the road. That said, a lot of what makes the best business accounts great is their personality and humanity, so the case can also be made not to always have two different (business and personal) accounts.

In Chapter 11, we go over how businesses can best take advantage of Twitter.

You as you on Twitter

Although Twitter can be a powerful tool for business owners and employees, it's just as powerful for individuals who really have no intention of conducting any sort of business on it (although business might happen accidentally).

Twitter was originally popular helping individuals keep in touch with their friends and acquaintances via mini-updates. Many personal Twitterers still tend to use Twitter in this manner, updating a close circle of friends about thoughts and happenings in their lives. Over time, you can keep up with — and even make new — friends you might otherwise not contact often. Twitter removes many communication barriers.

A few things to consider for your personal Twitter presence:



- ✓ **Keeping your tweets private:** If it helps you feel more comfortable with your personal use of Twitter, you can set your updates to Private. Enabling the privacy feature ensures that no one, other than the users you authorize, has access to your updates. Note: If your friends choose to retweet something pithy you said, that tweet they share from you isn't private. However, setting your updates to Private also prevents Twitter Search from picking up your tweets; it's a minor inconvenience that you may be willing to accept if you really feel strongly about protecting your personal updates from the world.
- ✓ **Introducing your business:** Regardless of whether you plan to build your business by using Twitter "just as a person," you might want to include some information about your occupation and company in your Twitter profile, and perhaps add a link back to your company's online presence. The *social capital* (trust, thought leadership, and more) that you earn within the Twitter community may lead to new opportunities for you and for your business. Also, your opinions and statements may be biased because of your job, so in the interests of transparency, disclosure is a good idea.
- ✓ **Making it personal:** You don't have to include any business information on Twitter if you don't want to. Twitter was built with personal connections in mind. Twitter is personal, so dress up your profile and adjust your settings in a way that makes sense to you and what you want to get out of your Twitter experience.



If you're twittering as an individual who works at a company, use a real photo of yourself as your avatar and put your company logo on the Twitter background that you use for your page. By using this setup, you let people know that you're affiliated with the company, but users don't mistake you for the company's official twitterer. Be sure you follow your company's regulations regarding what you're allowed to share. For example, many Apple employees can't reveal that they work for the company.

Mixing business with pleasure

Some of the most successful Twitter personalities have embraced Twitter by transparently sharing personal, professional, family, and other aspects of themselves all rolled together. This is nothing wildly new. We've always spent time with colleagues, clients, and our professional network at the golf course, out to dinner, attending charity events, and the like. Most networking events have a highly social component to them. It's simple: People like to do business with people they like.

Some find balancing your personal life and your professional life on Twitter tricky at first, but you can definitely do it. Give yourself time to discover what you're comfortable doing. We don't really know anyone who completely stops talking about work when out with friends — or vice versa — because work (whether we like it or not) is a big part of who we all are. Because Twitter is built for human communications, it can handle many facets of your life; you just have to find your own balance.

It's all about balance

Balance is important on Twitter, as in life, if you want to connect with people in a genuine, mutually beneficial way. Twitter is a pretty "what you give is what you get" kind of a place. Your true voice is often the best bet, unless you're really constrained for business reasons and need to rein it in. Accounts that are nothing but business (or worse, strictly business-promotional) all the time may have a pretty hard time growing much of an engaged base.

Want to be uber-personal all the time? There is absolutely nothing wrong with that, but it will influence the size and shape of your network. Don't be offended if it's not everybody's cup of tea. Present yourself the way you feel most comfortable.

If you cover both business and personal stuff on your account but aren't an official "for the business" tweeter, it can be good to go easy on how frequently you tweet about business-only stuff. We get asked for a specific ratio all the time, and it's really hard to say. As car ads say, "Your mileage will vary." (On Twitter, #ymmv) Try a mix that's comfortable to you and then just see whether you're getting the results you hoped for. Also, please remember, the number of followers is much less important than the quality of the conversations. For long-term sustainable value, true engagement beats tonnage any day.



If you're updating under your business handle (for us, it's @dummies), followers probably expect that nearly all tweets from that account will relate to that business. After all, they're following that account for business info! If you're really inconsistent, off-topic, or overboard personally all the time, and violate your followers' expectations too much, you may find your audience shrinking. Everyone needs to strike a balance, but most successful brand accounts stay

relatively on topic. If you're an individual tweeter, followers probably want to hear about you and how you're going about your business. It's a subtle difference but an important point to establish yourself as genuine, and not a selfish peddler of goods.

Your goal should be to permit your followers to get a good understanding of what your business offers and come to trust you as who you are. Make the bulk of the content that you add to Twitter about you and the value that you provide (as a person and through your work). Think of some updates as "give" and other updates as "take": When you share or talk about things that are genuinely useful and helpful to customers, you're providing something they want. That sets the stage for occasionally promoting the goods or services that you sell, because you've earned the trust and attention of your readers. Just remember that promotional tweets that aren't framed from the perspective of your customer's needs too often come across as a "take" because you're asking for followers to buy what you're selling.

Want to know if the balance you strike is effective? Re-read your tweets at the end of the day or the end of the week and keep an eye on replies, re-tweets, the numbers of people clicking links you share, and, yes, follower growth. If you feel that your update stream comes off as too sales-y, then back off on the selling and stick to providing value. Twitter's about being a genuine individual. Over time, Twitter gives your followers a lot of information about you, who you are and what you represent. That builds trust, confidence, and interest in you. Be real.

Be yourself



Like with the individual and business-only accounts, be sure to give your name in your bio. Transparency about who you are and what you do can go a long way toward growing your Twitter foundation. And a good Twitter foundation is key to establishing a stable and growing Twitter network. Using your real name adds to your value as an individual.

Just as in other business interactions, you need to be genuine on Twitter and establish yourself as a trustworthy, multidimensional person.

At the same time, think carefully about how much of your private matters you want to share. Occasional mention of your love life, health, and other more personal stuff can be very funny, very humanizing, and very honest, but being really negative, self-indulgent, or tedious about the same will put people off. When you really need to talk about those things, it's very possible you'll find supportive people on Twitter. Having found something in common or someone who wants to help, you may even get into a more in-depth conversation with a tweeter via DM or leave Twitter altogether via e-mail, IM, or over your favorite beverage. You can also definitely connect with people on more public personal topics like sports, TV, books, movies, or politics without revealing all your deepest secrets.



As a person on Twitter, you might find value in talking about your business problems in the open. Many fellow twitterers are willing to give you advice about how to overcome a business challenge or situation. If you've spent time cultivating a network that works for you, you have many resources at your fingertips. Ask them!

Identifying Your Audience

Whether you're a business or an individual on Twitter, if you want to grow your Twitter network, it's helpful to think about your audience. If you haven't transplanted your existing social networks onto Twitter, it may be a good time to do that and to put a bit of time and effort into expanding your network.

Think about the kinds of people you'd like to talk to or the subjects you'd like to discuss through Twitter. Trying to build up business? Target your customers. Want to communicate with other avid cyclists on Twitter? Search keywords and look to see who tweets about major cycling events. Send updates that are relevant to whomever you'd like to reach or about the topics that interest you and engage yourself in that conversation. Yes, it's that easy.

When you start using Twitter, it's pretty hard to determine who your audience will be — your followers grow based on what value you can provide for other users. So, if you're trying to reach other cyclists to talk about racing, the Tour de France, or the latest in derailleur technology, start talking about it and search for other users already chatting about the subject. (You can find out about searching for users and topics in Chapters 5 and 9.)



You don't have to be one-dimensional in your Twitter chat — if you want to engage cyclists, you don't always and only have to talk about cycling. People understand that you have more to you than a single activity or idea (unless you're a company or targeted Twitter account, for which the implicit rules are a little different — see "Your business on Twitter," earlier in this chapter), so don't feel that you need to talk about only one thing to be of value to your target audience. Be yourself and talk about the things you like; but, if you want to engage other cyclists, just talk a bit more about cycling than anything else. That's all. Over time, your cycling network will grow.

Viewing your network

Although you have little direct control over who follows you, you can easily see what sort of user you're attracting. Browse through your list of Followers and click through to open some of their profiles to get a general idea of who's following you (on any Twitter screen, click the Followers link under your name in the sidebar).

When you look into who's following you, you might realize that you're drawing unexpected people as followers. Reaching people and businesses you never expected to reach is most likely not a bad thing. If you're a business, unpredicted followers could show that you're increasing your business's social reach, meaning a sign of successful Twitter use. If you're tweeting as an individual, you're broadening your horizons — and other users consider you and your tweets interesting.

Diversifying your network

You can help guide who tends to follow you by talking about a myriad of topics. People aren't one-dimensional, and no one really expects you to be on-point all the time. Although you may have interests that you talk about more than others, getting a sense of what you're talking about and whom you're talking to can come in handy — it enables you to target your tweets to topics that are most interesting to your followers.

One of our favorite tools for understanding how often and what you're updating is TweetStats (www.tweetstats.com). This tool enables you to see who you're talking to, when you're talking, and what you're talking about — all in graph form. Figure 10-2 shows an example of the type of information TweetStats reports.

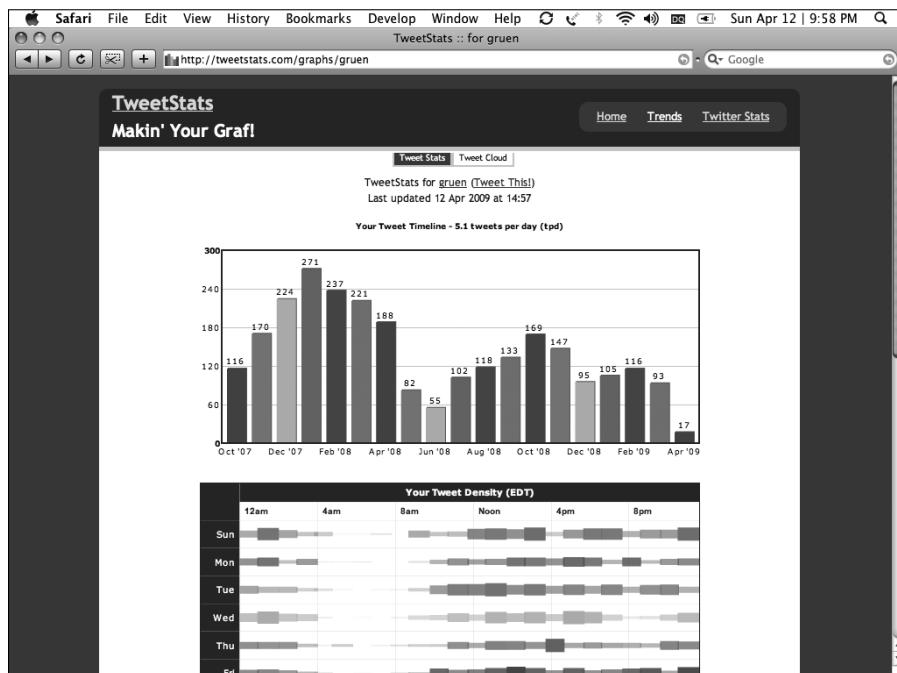


Figure 10-2:
You can see
a graph of
your tweet
density.

Targeting specific networks

If you're targeting specific people with whom you want to interact more regularly, find a way to add value to the interactions for them. You can target these types of people by searching keywords and hashtags for that topic and seeing who uses them and who the real leaders appear to be. Once you're following a few key people within that interest area, look for whom they talk to, listen to, and value. For example, if you're a gardener, check to see who Martha Stewart (@MarthaStewart) follows and talks to about gardening topics. Click through any appealing @replies and consider following those people. You can also use this information to get a sense of what's important to any given tweeter and what types of information they like to receive. With Twitter, you can essentially browse not only the connections between people, but also between topics of interest. You can also easily drop into active ongoing conversations about specific themes. One or two key people can lead you to an entire subject matter landscape on Twitter.

In a very real sense, an individual or Twitter account that represents something can become the foundation for a community. Likewise, if you're trying to target a specific type of individual, go to the Twitter streams of those individuals and see what they're tweeting about. Join the conversation that they're having with other people and engage those other people, as well. Over time, if you're adding value to that conversation, then other people look to you as a person who's involved and relevant in that community, whether it's computer programming, baking cupcakes, or cancer research.

Measuring influence

While you start to gain a foothold within communities on Twitter, you might want to get a sense of what your network looks like and how far your updates travel.



As you read, please bear in mind that some of the less measurable results are the most important. The most important thing to measure is the thing you're actually trying to accomplish, not just numbers for numbers' sake. Are you meeting new friends? Finding new business leads? Sharing information widely about issues important to you?

Do your messages spread? In her keynotes, Laura argues that messages can be much more important influencers within Twitter than influential accounts and individuals, because good messages get repeated. A truly great message, even if it starts in quiet little corners of Twitter among people with small following networks, will echo and get repeated until eventually it reaches much of the network.

Twitter itself has a very primitive way of measuring your reach: You have following and followers counts. Although those numbers would seem to provide a good baseline for understanding how far your updates go and to whom, they don't say much about what types of people follow you and how influential those followers are. In response, the Twitter community has developed a number of tools to help gauge and measure influence and reach. Less ethical people aggressively boost their follower numbers, sometimes through questionable habits like following people just until they follow back and then dropping them to go follow someone else. Important lessons? Don't automatically trust an account with a really high number of followers. Don't build your network around high numbers at the cost of high relevance and high engagement.

Twinfluence (www.twinfluence.com), shown in Figure 10-3, and TwitterGrader (<http://twitter.grader.com>), shown in Figure 10-4, can help you figure out how you compare with other users, but even they use fairly arbitrary measures. You can also use these sites to determine who the popular users are in your geographical location.

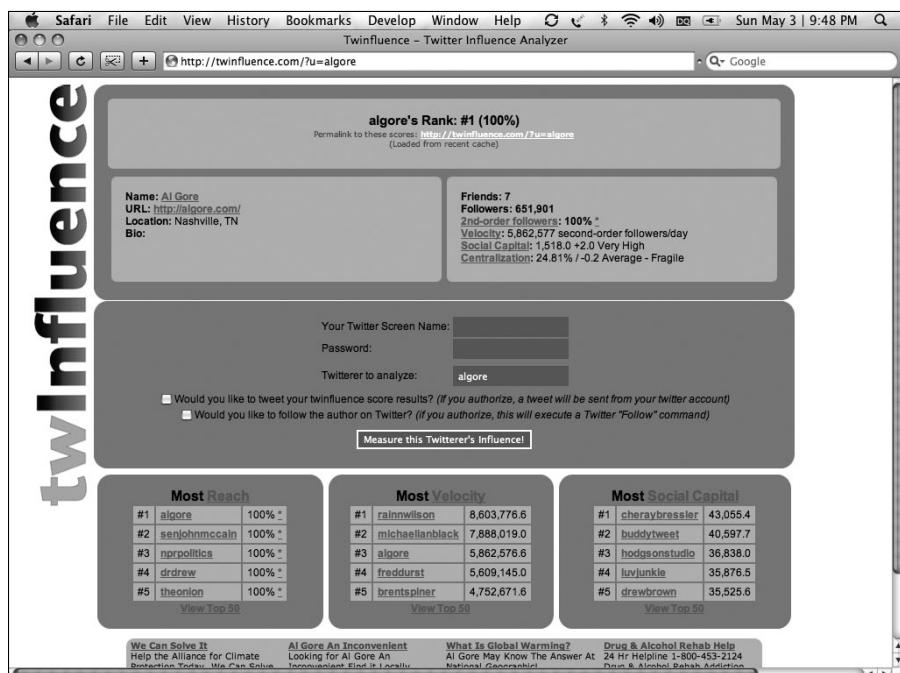


Figure 10-3:
Twinfluence
stats,
showing
@algore's
popularity.

For major cities, such as New York, Boston, and San Francisco, there might just be too many twitterers for these tools to really help you; but in smaller towns and metropolises, these statistics might quickly help you identify some real community leaders whose tweets would contain valuable information about the area and connection to others there.



For all intents and purposes, these numbers don't really measure influence or reach. The results you can get from these sites are so imprecise and subjective that they provide only a rough understanding of how influence flows through the Twitter ecosystem. First and foremost, use Twitter to communicate; and, although high follower counts may indicate genuine popularity, they can be gamed and don't necessarily indicate importance or quality. Laura goes so far as to say, "The most important, influential person in your Twitter stream is you; be proactive about your life."

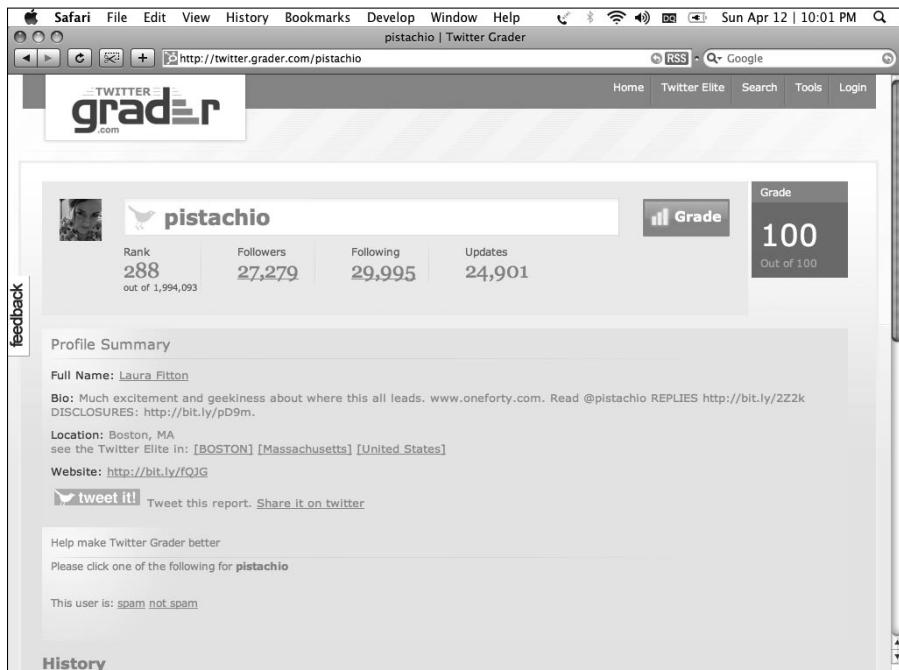


Figure 10-4:
Twitter
Grader,
suggesting
the humble
@
pistachio's
visibility.

Understanding your extended network

Twitter, by itself, can tell you only the number of people you follow and the number of people who follow you. As described in the previous section, those numbers give you just part of the story.

If 100 people follow you and communicate with you, then your actual extended network is much larger than 100 people because conversations relay messages and connect new people on Twitter. Say that Follower #86 has 1,000 followers. Whenever Follower #86 mentions your name, 1,000 people receive an update that contains your name. And you may find that kind of exposure quite useful. Twitter is an excellent way to “harness the power of loose ties” or benefit from friends of friends of friends who are more likely to know about things nobody in your social group knows.

If Boston-based Laura was trying to locate a venue in Nashville, Tennessee, to hold a Twitter marketing seminar, she might send an update that reads, “Trying to locate a good 700-person venue in Nashville to give a talk. A place to stay would be nice, too. Suggestions?” Because thousands of people read Laura’s Twitter stream, chances are good someone lives in Nashville. If any of those handful wanted to connect Laura with a local business owner, they might ask their own networks, who may have an answer based on their own geography. In this sense, Laura’s primary network gives her secondary access to all her follower’s networks, as well.

It’s pretty cool how friends of friends can end up becoming your direct friends, too. Say you’re following five friends, and two of them are constantly communicating (via @replies) with some other person whom you don’t know. Out of curiosity, you may start following that other person just to make sense of your friends’ conversations. Because you’re friends with two people that the other person talks to frequently, he follows you back. Now, all of a sudden, you have both a larger Twitter network and extended network.



Although finding new and interesting people in your Twitter network happens organically, the Twitter community has come up with a couple of tools to help grow your network in a way that’s relevant to you. You can browse interesting tags for people in the Twitter directory www.wefollow.com that Digg CEO Kevin Rose (@kevinrose) started in spring 2009, or the service www.mrtweet.com (@mrtweet), a program that combs your Twitter network and recommends new people for you to follow. In our experience, Mr. Tweet is pretty accurate in automatically finding people who are relevant in scope to what you talk about and what your network looks like. Give it a try!

Keeping Your Tweets Authentic

Because of the frequency and personal nature of what people share on Twitter, any tweeter absolutely must be genuine and real, whether she’s representing a business or tweeting as an individual. Joining Twitter as a private citizen is the route many users take, even if they have business to promote. Twitter is ideally suited for personal connection, and you can often more easily make yourself accessible and personable when you use Twitter as a person, not as your business.

Joining the conversation

You see the phrase “join the conversation” bandied about a lot on Twitter. If you’re representing a business, you can get a dialog going very easily: Just search for users who have mentioned your products or the types of problems you solve and follow them. If you have something relevant to say, engage them in conversation using the mention they made as a starting point.



We go over how businesses should approach using Twitter in Chapter 11, so read through it to avoid any complications or Twitter faux pas. Singling users out and asking them questions may be appropriate for some products, but that approach may be completely inappropriate for others. Twitter’s just another engagement point for your communications, marketing, and public relations, so know the rules of the road before you start driving too fast.

If you’re representing a business, mentioning little-known facts or interesting things about what you do or sell can start a conversation. You can also talk about your staff; tell interested twitterers how you (or someone else) make what you sell; or take the easiest route of all and ask your fellow Twitter users what they think of your product or service, and how they think you can improve or expand.

Sharing links

By way of getting started, many new users start sharing links with a bit of commentary on their Twitter stream, as shown in Figure 10-5. For many users, sending a link provides a great way to get a commentary started about something you find interesting. Give it a shot and see what happens. Here are the basics for sharing links. (You’ll probably want to use a link shortener most of the time, though. Review Chapter 9 for a refresher on how to do that.)

- 1. Copy the link’s URL and paste it in the What’s Happening? box.**
- 2. Type a comment about the link in the What’s Happening? box (either before or after the link).**
- 3. Post your tweet by clicking the Update button.**

Usually after you post the tweet, Twitter shortens the URL for you using TinyURL.

Some users post a lot of links — some users like to use RSS or other tools to automatically update their Twitter streams with links to interesting articles that they’re reading. Others just post links by hand.

Figure 10-5:
This update
comments
on a link and
includes
that link.



Linking to interesting articles changes the way that your Twitter audience perceives you. Remember, people follow you because you add value to their Twitter streams; but if you flood your stream with links that aren't relevant to your audience, you may start to annoy some of your following. By adding a link to a tweet that you post, you draw attention to the targeted Web page, photo or video, and you're implicitly endorsing it as a good use of your followers' time. Abusing that assumption will erode the interest and trust your followers have in you and reduce the effectiveness of your network.



If you do a lot of linking, review Chapter 9 so that you can track links like a pro. By using tools such as bit.ly (<http://bit.ly>), you can find out which Twitter users are linking to the same articles, which is a great way to start a conversation.

Image is everything

Your update stream is by far the most important part of your Twitter profile. However, your profile's presentation also needs to reflect something about you. In the same way that you wear a nice set of clothes to a job interview, you want to dress up your profile so that it reflects the image that you want to convey to the world.



Although you may have your update stream protected in your Twitter account's settings, anyone in the world can view your Twitter profile (at <http://twitter.com/yourusername>). Be sure that you're comfortable with the world seeing whatever you put in your profile.



Whether you're a business or a private citizen, your followers and potential followers react much more favorably if you include in your Twitter profile a photo of yourself and a link to something about you. People like to know who they're talking to, and when you present an image that reflects who you are, other people become willing to be honest and open with you.

If you're representing a large, iconic brand on Twitter, you can do your Twitter profile in your corporate colors. However, because Twitter's strength is in personal connections, you need to have actual people representing your brand's Twitter presence. Use a service such as CoTweet (<http://cotweet.com>), shown in Figure 10-6, to mark each tweet with its author, and in the 160-character bio on Twitter.com, let readers know who each set of initials belongs to.

Too many team members to list? You can show them off in your background graphic the way @CoTweet itself does. (Note: In the interest of full disclosure, Laura is an adviser for @CoTweet.) Check out Chapter 11 for more recommendations on the best ways for businesses to tweet.

The screenshot shows the CoTweet application window. At the top, the title bar reads "Safari File Edit View History Bookmarks Develop Window Help CoTweet™ — Michael Gruen" and the address bar shows "https://cotweet.com/channels/dummies#". The main content area displays a list of tweets from the "dummies" channel:

- dummies (Laura Fitton)** March 31, 2009
@milewis thanks Mike! -LJF
Sent to @milewis
- dummies (Laura Fitton)** March 31, 2009
Did you know there are more than 100 ideas you can vote up or down at <http://bit.ly/3fbxNY> (stats) the Twitter for Dummies community? Join & add! :)
- dummies (Laura Fitton)** March 31, 2009
@brett thanks Brett :-)
Sent to @brett
- dummies (Michael Gruen)** March 22, 2009
quick editing poll: is it "Twitterer" or "twitterers" (note the first letter's case). ^mg
- dummies (External Tool)** February 13, 2009
The fabulous team of @pistachio @gruen @geechee_girl is cranking away, inspired by all of you throughout. #dummies
- dummies (External Tool)** February 13, 2009
Re: the brouhaha over follower count gaming brewing: we believe the good will out based on strength of community (@geechee_girl)
- dummies (External Tool)** January 25, 2009

On the left side, there are navigation menus for "INBOX", "OUTBOX", and "FOLLOWUP". On the right side, there are buttons for "Post an Update", "Search Twitter", and "Add a Twitter Account".

Figure 10-6:
You can
“sign”
Tweets
by author
by using
cotags in
CoTweet.

Being genuine

Authentic people and businesses, using Twitter in a real and interactive way, can experience tremendous growth and return on investment from Twitter because they make real contributions and build up a rich base of trust, influence, and social capital. People respond much better to an authentic, human voice. They engage more closely because they feel comfortable responding, retweeting, and otherwise paying attention to the genuine voice. Bring some value to the twitterverse by adding your authentic contributions, whatever those may be.

For example, if you’re tweeting about politics, whether you’re a conservative, moderate, liberal, apathetic, or whatever, feel free to agree or disagree with someone — Twitter is, after all, a digital extension of real life, so if you want to engage in that type of dialog, be yourself. Don’t try to come off as something you’re not just to appeal to people.



If you’re representing a business or tweeting on behalf of your company, you probably want to avoid politics, religion, sex, and other hot-button topics, so as not to offend your potential customers.

Your update stream speaks volumes about you. Twitter is a network built on trust and relationships, and being insincere jeopardizes the quality and effectiveness of your network, both on- and offline. You lose some of that hard-won trust that you’ve been building since you joined Twitter.



Even though you want to be genuine and real at all times, remember that you can easily forget to be nice to people behind the safety of a monitor and keyboard thousands of miles away. Treat others with respect, as you hope to be treated, and you can have a positive online experience. Try not to engage in arguments over petty things — this behavior gets you branded as a troll, and people start to avoid you and stop taking you seriously. (Get the scoop on trolls in the sidebar “Don’t feed the trolls,” in this chapter.)

Evangelizing your causes

When you’re on Twitter as an individual, if you share a favorite cause or a local event in a way that makes it interesting to others, you’ll attract those with common interests. They may get involved and show support, and the more fellow twitterers know about you and about the things you have in common, the more connections and ideas will flow in your network.

Don’t be afraid to voice your support for social causes and charities. By tweeting about your cause, you both spread awareness about what’s important to you (which may lead to more contributions for that cause or charity) and give your audience a better idea of who you are as a person.

Don't feed the trolls

In Internet parlance, a *troll* is someone who intentionally posts messages to upset people — for example, making rude and insulting comments on someone's blog or replying to someone's tweets with personal attacks.

Because so many conversations happen so quickly on Twitter, sometimes about touchy subjects, users need to be on the lookout for others who insist on asking inappropriately-charged questions, saying questionable things to users, and otherwise being a poor citizen of the Internet. Because Twitter's a network based on trust, you can often easily identify trolls and block them.

You feed the trolls by acknowledging their existence and allowing them to take control of the dialog. Just ignore them, and they eventually get bored and go away. (If you block them, you may reduce your chances of having to hear from them again, but that's a pretty aggressive

move if they're simply annoying. They can still view your public profile — assuming you haven't protected your tweets — and they can even still reply to you if they want, which will show up on your Mentions tab in the sidebar, but they have to make a real effort to do that, because your tweets won't show up in their timeline if you block them.)

On the other side of the coin, some people get a little intimidated by the thought of tweeting about something serious. Some people actually decide to not even try Twitter because they worry that they don't have anything interesting to say! We promise, whatever you feel like tweeting about, someone, somewhere on Twitter, is into that subject, too. You might have to tweet for a few days or weeks before you connect with them, but after you find one person who "gets" you, the floodgates open — hundreds more twitterers start to hear what you have to say and want to share with you.

So, if you're passionate about cancer research, domestic violence, or another cause and want to have a fundraiser for it, a Twitter update that you send about the fundraiser might get repeated and reach 50, 500, 5,000, or 50,000 people (or more) who are directly and indirectly connected to you. Spread the love!

Many have raised money for worthy causes right on Twitter. One of the first was Beth Kanter (@kanter) whose network sent a Cambodian woman to college in a matter of a few hours of Twitter conversation about it and links to a donation site. For more about Twitter and charity, see Chapter 13.

Keeping Twitter Personal . . . but Not Too Personal

Above all else, remember that Twitter is a public forum. Even when you're talking to your trusted Twitter network, your tweets are very much public; Google and other search engines still index them, and anyone on the Web can link to them.



You can adjust your settings to prevent search engines and the occasional passerby from viewing your updates by protecting your account.

All the public exposure that Twitter offers can really help promote you and your business, but that exposure also comes with some responsibilities:

- ✓ **Use common sense!** Don't publicly tweet or @reply someone your address, phone number, or other personal details that you should keep private. Send that kind of information via DM (direct message) — or, even better, via e-mail, instant message, or phone. Keeping your personal details private protects both you and anyone in your care, such as your kids.
- ✓ **Use DMs cautiously.** Typing **d username** and then your message does send a private direct message from any Twitter interface. But trust us, if you made a typo or wrote **dm username**, you would not be the first person to accidentally post a private DM publicly. In fact, the problem was so rampant that you can use the **dm** shortcode to DM someone. But, in our opinion, that doubles your chances for a typo, so keep in the habit of using just 'd'.



To avoid accidental updates, make it a habit to use the Message button on a user's page, double-check your **d username** tweets before posting, or use http://twitter.com/direct_messages to send DMs. You want to be extremely careful if you decide to send sensitive information by DM. Better yet, use an even more secure medium like e-mail or even encryption. *Never* send passwords, credit card numbers, social security numbers, or other valuable private data by Twitter (or even e-mail, for data that secure).

- ✓ **Maintain boundaries.** Try to be aware of how you are (or aren't) maintaining boundaries with the people you interact with frequently on Twitter. Especially before you agree to meet someone in person, take a look at how you've interacted in the past and make sure that you've kept your relationship clear from the start, whether it's for business or friendship.

Protecting personal details

Many people opt to not even use the real names of family members or children who don't use Twitter. Twitterers commonly refer to relatives, friends, and kids by nicknames or initials, just to give those loved ones a layer of protection. Use a bit of caution and ask permission before tweeting someone's real name (or any other information that we mention). Laura, for example, uses her daughters' initials S and Z, as shown in Figure 10-7. Twitter is a powerful influence on search engines, so casual mentions of unique names remain findable for a long time. If Laura even used their first names on her tweets (which all also contain her last name), they'd likely appear visibly

in Google search results for their firstname lastname. Don't believe her? A Google search for Z Fitton (or Z Fitton Pistachio) brings up a few recent tweets about her antics.

The same words of caution go for any number of personal details. Dive into information about your health or your private life in private conversation. Although being authentic and a little bit personal goes a long way on Twitter, everyone understands that you need a layer of privacy to keep you, your loved ones, and the details about them safe.



Figure 10-7:
Laura
(@
pistachio)
referencing
her spawn
in a tweet.

Maximizing privacy and safety

After you Twitter for a while, you've given away a lot of information about yourself. If you mention who you spend time with or that you always hang out at a certain cafe, someone can start tracking where you've been and what you're doing. We don't want to scare you — but whenever you post in a public medium, anyone could go through the information you've published, later on, and start piecing things together. Laura loves the unique charms of her neighborhood and street, but she keeps the details really fuzzy, preferring Boston as specific enough.

Things you probably shouldn't say on Twitter

You definitely want to keep some information to yourself when you're tweeting away:

- ✓ Your home address
- ✓ Your home or cellphone number
- ✓ Your kids' names
- ✓ Your financial information (such as credit card numbers, your yearly income, and anything else you wouldn't want the whole world to know)
- ✓ Vital health details (such as diseases you have or a diagnosis you just received — unless you're comfortable with the world knowing about it)
- ✓ Details about schools and other locations where you or people you know spend time — you never know who might drop in after seeing your tweet on a Google search

Chapter 11

Twitter for Business

In This Chapter

- ▶ Putting your business on Twitter
- ▶ Using Twitter to make your business look good
- ▶ Creating a network on Twitter and communicating with it
- ▶ Getting and giving useful information on Twitter

So, you want to find out more about what Twitter can do for your business. In this chapter, we cover some of the essentials, explain what some other businesses have tried, and point you in the right direction to get started yourself.

The Business of Twitter

People often ask Laura, “What’s the business use of Twitter?” Laura frequently answers with a different question, “What’s the business use of e-mail?” It’s not that the technologies are similar or play the same role; it’s that Twitter has the potential to filter into every possible aspect of business as a versatile communications platform and problem-solving tool. Both technologies are extremely open communication platforms that have uses way beyond the marketing and customer-engagement layer. Twitter can impact pretty much everything, from the way enterprise software works to how project status is shared. It can fundamentally change communication and problem-solving, as well as match resources, accommodate HR challenges, and lower expenses. Most of the potential business applications of Twitter are just starting to become understood.

Twitter can have powerful effects on personal and professional networks. Sales professionals can use it to generate leads, journalists to locate sources, publishers to discover new content, or any business to create better relationships with customers. You can listen to and harness the massive flow of ideas and information passing through Twitter so that you can advance your business objectives.

You can use Twitter to create ad-hoc communities, organize and publicize live events, or extend an experience to a remote audience. You can sell directly — if you do it right — or you can just develop an inexpensive listening and conversation post among the very people whose problems your business solves. You can use Twitter to generate traffic to your business's Web site. You can use it to solicit feedback. It can even make your company and brands easier for users to find on search engines such as Google.

First, it helps to take a look at some ways Twitter might fit with your brand.

Putting Your Best Face Forward

Businesses can use Twitter to talk to their customers and potential customers, and generally increase brand recognition. Given that Twitter has so many potential uses that are so diverse, how can you get started?

You can probably guess that your profile is your business's face on Twitter. Even though many people use Twitter through a service on their phone or desktop, rather than through the Web page itself, assume that most everyone will at least look at your Profile page — if not the Web URL that you provide within that profile — before deciding whether or not to follow what you're doing on Twitter.



Dress nicely on Twitter: Fill out the whole Profile page when you set up your business's Twitter account and upload an avatar (in some cases, your company logo is appropriate, but in others an individual photo is better). Link back to your main Web site, and in turn, link to your Twitter account from your Web site. You need to verify that the business account is actually yours and promote the availability of the Twitter stream to all your customers. With a widget on your site, you can even tweet to your customers (keeping freshly updated content front and center) without them having ever even heard of Twitter.

Make sure that the Twitter Bio section, short though it may be, tells Twitter users about your business. Also, the content of your business's tweets needs to honestly, transparently show what you're doing on Twitter. Introduce the people behind your business's Twitter account — they're the people your Twitter readers and connections actually talk to, so let the individuals behind the keyboard shine through. (For more on polishing your profile, turn to Chapter 2.)

After you create a great Profile page, what do you do? Here are a few simple ways to get out of the Twitter background and into public awareness:

✓ **Listen.** Pay attention to what's going on around you on Twitter. Twitter users have fascinating things to say about pretty much everything, but more importantly for you, they may already be talking about you and your business. You're going to want to find as many ways as you can to tune in. From using Twitter Search to sophisticated social-media listening tools (see Chapter 9), you can get useful information from Twitter in many ways. If you think of Twitter as a giant consumer sentiment engine, you can start to understand its potential. You can learn a lot by listening.

✓ **Balance.** For the average business Twitter account, you need to have a good ratio of personal (or conversational) tweets to business (or promotional) ones. This ratio depends, in part, on how much you interact on Twitter and what you hope to accomplish — not to mention the nature of your business and your target audience or customer base.

You may want to come up with an approximate numerical ratio that accomplishes your balance goals. You might want to decide, for example, that you can make only one or two of every ten tweets personal. Alternately, you can opt to put a particularly personal or original slant on promotional tweets, making them notably funny, valuable, or interesting to your readers.

If you have a more conversational Twitter account that you still want to connect to your professional life, make about half your tweets personal, fun, or off-topic, and the other half about your business. If you prefer to deliver business value all the time, set up your account to curate and cultivate links about events, essays, news, and ideas that are relevant to your field, in addition to promotional tweets so that you can still push your brand (without making that the only thing you do). Whatever you do, be useful. Offer value. You want to keep people engaged, which is what Twitter is all about.

✓ **Engage.** While you listen and talk on Twitter, be sure to also interact with other twitterers. Twitter is a communications tool, and although it's based on a one-to-many concept, it works best when you make friends and have real conversations right in the Twitter stream. Sometimes when you find people talking about subjects relevant to your business you can offer helpful contributions to their conversations! When it comes to business, public relations, and customer service (which we talk about in the following sections), you absolutely need to engage other people on Twitter.

✓ **Connect.** Use the ability to take conversations offline and into the real world via tweetups, events, and meetings to your business's advantage. Twitter makes finding ways to meet and engage with customers in real life easy, and therein lies its largest business value. Bring your business's conversations and connections beyond the 140-character limit.

Public relations

You can use Twitter as a fantastic public-relations channel, whatever kind of business you work for. It offers global reach, endless connections, networking opportunities, a promotion platform, and immediate event planning and feedback. Best of all, if you float your ideas out there in genuine, valid, and interesting ways, others can pick them up and spread them around. Many twitterers — from individuals to large corporations — report scoring numerous press opportunities as a result of engaging other twitterers and sharing on the Twitter platform.

Some traditional public relations firms may be intimidated by Twitter's potential to connect stories, sources, and journalists. Many of them don't yet see the opportunity, or they're thinking about it too narrowly. Twitter is just one more tool — albeit a powerful and efficient one — to add to your arsenal if public relations is important to your business. Twitter simply gives you a way to make what you do more accessible to people who might otherwise not hear your message.

You may have heard about Twitter in the first place in the context of a mainstream news story about an event of global importance that was first reported via citizen journalism on Twitter — such as the emergency landing of a commercial airplane in the Hudson River in January 2009. Indeed, Twitter is an exceedingly powerful tool for detecting breaking events. You don't always get in-depth analysis (at least, not until links to longer writings about the story begin to spread), but you do frequently find yourself way ahead of the game when a story breaks if you're on Twitter.

Journalists and PR practitioners are among some of Twitter's most avid users, and they do some pretty interesting things with it. On Monday nights, professionals from both sides of the field gather to talk about current stories, their professions, and the future of media, all by simply tagging their tweets with the word **#journchat**. Because **#journchat** is an agreed-on tag and a longstanding event, people know to point their search tools (or <http://search.twitter.com>) at that word and watch the conversation scroll by.

It was Twitter innovator @PRSarahEvans who came up with the idea for **#journchat**, and the community she built catapulted her from obscure community college PR practitioner to an extremely well-known social-media innovator. John A. Byrne (@JohnAByrne) of *BusinessWeek* implemented a similar standing event (Wednesday nights, for those of you playing along at home) when he went onto Twitter one night to answer questions and encouraged the use of the **#editorchat** hashtag.

Because Twitter usernames are short and frequently easy to remember, they can be a powerful way to introduce people and pass along contact information. In an interview, a reporter was surprised how easily Laura could rattle off half a dozen sources that the reporter might like to talk to. Armed with

these Twitter handles, the journalist used the profiles behind those user-names to get a quick snapshot of those users' interests, abilities, and points of view, plus links to further detailed information about them and an easy way to make contact.

Here are some tips to make your Twitter-based public relations more user-friendly and successful:

- ✓ **Keep it real!** The be-genuine Twitter rule applies at all times, even when you're embarking on a publicity campaign (often *especially* when you're attempting to drive sales or awareness to your product, service, or site). Twitter's users can be very turned off by empty marketing banter.
- ✓ **Remember your balance.** Just because you want to see fast results doesn't mean that you should bombard your Twitter followers with *link spam* (numerous tweets that contain links to your business) or constant nagging about whatever you're trying to promote. Remember to space it out. On Twitter, overly aggressive promotions can slow your progress and reduce your audience. Tread with respect.
- ✓ **Give your idea wings.** Come up with a pithy or witty statement about your promotion that inspires people in your network to share and pass it along (to *retweet* the statement, or RT) to their own networks. Getting your message retweeted is much more effective than hammering your point home on your own.
- ✓ **Be genuinely helpful.** Watch for conversations about topics relevant to your company or product, and provide unselfish solutions, ideas, and help to those conversations.
- ✓ **Listen to feedback.** If someone asks you a question, answer it in your own public feed so that you can continue to generate organic interest in your promotion. Answer others who happen to tweet related questions, but make sure that your answers aren't selfish or too pushy. How can you tell? Watch for effectiveness. Do people click your links? Do they retweet your messages without you having to ask? Do they complain that you're being promotional, or worse, do they just not say much at all? Use trackable link shorteners so that you can see which of your tweets people are bothering to click or, even better, retweeting themselves (and passing your messages along for you). Sometimes, you may need to tweet a little less frequently to avoid letting spamminess make you less effective.
- ✓ **Offer incentives.** We don't mean free giveaways or money, but value. Give people an unselfish reason to pay attention to you. It takes more than just promotions. Followers listen to you for the value you add, and if you consistently add insightful and worthwhile thoughts to their Twitter streams, they'll be there for you when the roles reverse and you need them.

Twitter provides all users access to influential journalists, bloggers, writers, and people from all walks of life. If you use it consistently and well, you can

find powerful, inexpensive ways to share messages that help solve people's problems and gain visibility for your work.

Customer service

Big name companies, such as Comcast and Dell, use Twitter as part of an overall strategy to reinvent their reputations for poor customer service and turn things around for their brands.

How did they do it? Or, more importantly, how can *you* do it? Both companies set up Twitter accounts (@ComcastCares and all the Dell accounts listed at <http://dell.com/twitter>) as hubs for public customer-service responses. They got in the trenches of social media through Twitter and engaged their customer bases by facing criticisms and complaints head-on, and by showing a desire to help and respond quickly without making excuses or shifting blame. Better yet, Twitter users around the world can witness this transformation and watch the companies respond to others' complaints, improving the company image for even more people.

By listening diligently for mentions of their companies and quickly extending a helping hand, Comcast and Dell have generated substantial goodwill (not to mention, press coverage). Even when the products and services sold under those brands elicit unpleasant reactions from the public, having a real person reach out to help in a public forum can do a lot to prevent or dissipate consumer anger. Used artfully, one-to-one contact via Twitter instills a sense of hope that the people behind the company walls aren't leaving customers hanging. Presence and timely response on Twitter can make the difference between a firestorm of complaints and a quickly-managed situation.



Here's the caveat: No one has yet figured out whether Twitter-based customer service will still be such a great shortcut once Twitter grows even bigger and more popular. If the company's customer service system has fundamental problems, remaining in closer contact with consumers alone will not fix that. Customer service on Twitter allows businesses to catch consumers in their moments of frustration and help them right away. But Twitter alone can't fix back-end customer-service infrastructure problems such as overloaded call centers or poorly trained representatives who have no real power to help.

You don't need to be a huge company (and you certainly don't need to be suffering from a bad reputation) to create an effective business presence on Twitter. Twitter provides a great customer-service channel for small and medium-sized businesses, too. If you're at a small company, Twitter can broaden your ability to reach out widely and listen carefully at almost no expense (only some time and possibly tools) while saving you the cost of having an entire customer-service department. Having a Twitter account for your business can make your business more accessible, not to mention

let you help people in real time who have real problems and see instant improvement in how consumers perceive your business.

Zappos (www.zappos.com), a sweetheart of the Twitter-for-business world, models an almost perfect implementation of the ideas laid out in *The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual*, by Christopher Locke (@clockerb), Rick Levine (@ricklevine), Doc Searls (@dsearls), and David Weinberger (@dweinberger) (Basic Books). At Zappos, employees literally have a mandate to create delightful experiences for customers. The catchphrase? “Deliver happiness.” Each employee who may come in contact with customers is encouraged and empowered to do whatever it takes to help. This policy holds true throughout the company’s interactions, but the Zapponian culture of helpfulness absolutely shines through Twitter. Over 430 Zappos employees use Twitter, whether they’re involved in customer service or not, and they all take a share in the “Deliver Happiness” mission.

When you first dive into Twitter for customer service, you may see negativity about your company, particularly at first. Keep going. The best part about Twitter as a customer-service channel is how you get feedback when a customer leaves satisfied. Many satisfied customers send out thank-you tweets that all their contacts see, which gives you instant good public-relations buzz — and that kind of buzz is priceless. Letting go of control (you don’t necessarily have control anymore anyhow) of your brand and engaging publicly with dissatisfied customers can really get that goodwill going.

Command and control is dead. Long live converse!

Many companies struggle to come to terms with how they might use social media because they are reluctant to let go of their old “command and control” models of corporate communications. What they need to realize is that they no longer “have control of the message” because anyone can publish — by commenting, posting on a message board, blogging, or yes, microblogging — complaints about the company in places that anyone can find them.

Twitter’s content is very search-engine friendly. When a static Web page, a blog post, and an

active Twitter account all contain the same keywords, the tweets will probably appear above the Web page or blog post in the search results for that keyword. Don’t believe us? Try searching the word *pistachio* and the word *dough* on Google on your computer right now. Chances are good you’re going to find Laura’s Twitter profile (<http://twitter.com/pistachio>) and Boston-area PR practitioner Doug Haslam’s profile (<http://twitter.com/DougH>) pretty close to the top of those respective searches.

Networking on Twitter

Whether you do it via Twitter or an old-fashioned Rolodex, your business, personal, and career success depends heavily on a little thing called your network. If you’re looking for ways to network more effectively — or you want to find interesting, valuable people efficiently — Twitter can help you build up a genuinely interesting, astonishingly relevant, and powerful network. Entire new horizons of opportunity can open up when you finally connect with the people that are right for you. Building a network comes naturally on Twitter. The platform makes it easy to interact and connect with people and businesses who share your interests and goals, and because of @replies and other links between Twitter networks and Twitter users, to randomly interact with and discover interesting new people along the way.

The more you interact on Twitter, the more your network increases. You can build almost any specific type of network on Twitter, too. Twitter offers access to all levels of people and businesses, from those seeking work or a better social life to CEOs and national politicians.

One of the most interesting phenomena on Twitter is the communication and collaboration that can occur while businesses network with one another in public. Twitter offers a level of transparency that erases normal boundaries and rivalries. Take, for example, the CEOs of competing companies IntenseDebate (<http://intensedebate.com>; @IntenseDebate) and DISQUS (<http://disqus.com>; @disqus), two companies that build comment management software for blogs. Through a debate in Twitter, they collaborated on some cross-functional features in their otherwise rival products to make both companies’ customers happy and solve a problem.

Twitter can also help business networking in the employment sector — it’s a fantastic way to meet and evaluate new employees, and also to find new work. This movement towards a “Hire 2.0” culture (applying so-called *Web 2.0* technologies to the job market), creates a more open and flexible hiring environment for all kinds of companies. You can observe potential employees while they talk about what they know, get referrals from people who know them, and introduce yourself — all in real time. Twitter also efficiently harnesses networks of loose ties — the friends of friends who are more likely to know about job opportunities and job candidates.

Freelancers who network and collaborate on projects can use Twitter to find former colleagues from past companies with whom they lost touch, and to get to know their existing employees and customers. We really can’t overstate how versatile a networking tool Twitter can be. In so many ways, Twitter acts as a portable business networking event that you can pop into when the time and availability suit you. Bonus: You don’t have to talk to anyone whom you don’t want to.

Offering Promotions and Products

If you represent a company that has something to sell, you can find a unique home on Twitter. You may need to adjust your messages a bit so that you can shift from a hard-sell philosophy to an attitude of interaction and engagement that doesn't necessarily follow a direct path to a sale. But after you find and flip that switch from "talking at" to "talking with" potential customers, people on Twitter can interact with and respond to your company's information ideas and products in ways that often lead to benefits for both sides.

You can sell-without-selling just about anything on Twitter. Whether you want to sell something large (such as used cars) or something small (such as shoes), you can probably find people on Twitter who need and want them. These potential customers have questions for you about your item, your company, your staff, and *you* — and you can let them talk to you on Twitter about their concerns. You're in business because you solve problems and fulfill needs for people. Spend your time on Twitter being useful and informative about the types of problems you solve, and the rest really does follow.

One of the most popular examples of products and how Twitter can help sell them is @Zappos. Zappos has been a pioneer in business microblogging because a large number of its employees all use Twitter and all, in their own way, promote the brand and its products. Having more than 400 employees active on Twitter has improved communication and connection between Zappos' employees, increased its visibility and reach, banked large amounts of *social capital* (potentially valuable connections with people who know you and care about your work), and led to extensive press coverage and speaking opportunities.

Zappos is fronted by CEO Tony Hsieh, who tweets about his life, including his schedule, his company, and his personal thoughts — he even operates a separate Twitter account for his cat. The Twitter community embraced Tony and Zappos early on, and in return, Zappos periodically offers Twitter-only bonuses to its followers, such as free shoe giveaways.

But Zappos isn't the only company finding sales success on Twitter. @DellOutlet is another Twitter success story. We talk about Dell as a company that used Twitter to start reversing its reputation as a struggling brand with a poor customer image in the section "Customer service," earlier in this chapter. But Dell, like Zappos, has also started offering Twitter-only promotions, tweeting links to deep discounts that have generated over \$1 million in revenues. Most notably, you can attribute more than \$500,000 in revenues to less than 1,000 followers — demonstrating that the coupons not only got passed along on Twitter, but that they probably also got passed along via e-mail to people not even on Twitter. The airline JetBlue (@jetblue) has also

had great success advertising deals on Twitter: A special \$14 cross-country flight offer was snapped up by Twitter users almost instantly, and retweets helped spread the word. And, in 2010 for their tenth birthday, JetBlue gave away 1,000 tickets to anyone who found them on the streets of New York City. Of course, the @jetblue team tweeted their location. Dozens of coupon-aggregating accounts (like @dealtaker) and even Web sites (<http://www.coupointweet.com> and <http://www.cheaptweet.com>) are emerging to organize these coupons and find the best ones.

Two women making exceptional use of Twitter for discovering gift-givers in need are Melanie Notkin (@SavvyAuntie) and GiftGirl (@GiftGirl). Those who sell any kind of gift resource can use Twitter to reach their audiences and magnify their impact. Notkin and GiftGirl have found unshakable niches with their custom gift-finding service. How to find the right gift for loved ones for birthdays, weddings, and anniversaries is actually a pretty commonly tweeted question. The advice these women provide on their Twitter accounts and the commerce they offer through their Web sites (<http://savvy-auntie.com> and www.giftgirl.com), place them squarely in Twitter's elite when it comes to product sales and knowledge contribution.

You can replicate their success by keeping these tips in mind:

- ✓ Be interesting.
- ✓ Be accessible.
- ✓ Be genuine (mean what you say).
- ✓ Be yourself.
- ✓ Don't hard sell.
- ✓ Don't link spam.
- ✓ Follow the 90/10 advice — 90 percent unselfish tweets to 10 percent promotional tweets.

Promoting Bands and Artists

If you're in any way in the business of creating, whether it's art, music, film, photography, or what-have-you, Twitter can become a home away from home. Twitter users are incredibly receptive to creative people who tweet — just ask MC Hammer (@MCHammer). The former rapper turned preacher turned producer had a terrible image: bankruptcy, bad decisions, and excess. But he joined Twitter around the same time that he co-founded a new Web startup, DanceJam (<http://dancejam.com>), and conversing with followers on Twitter let the world see another side of him.

MC Hammer is a pretty cool example of how you can use Twitter for rebranding, marketing, and self-promotion as an artist, but Twitter can also help relatively unknown people make it to the top for the first time.

Twitter also helps artists such as Natasha Wescoat (@natasha) increase their prominence in the art world. Westcoat's work is finding a home in art galleries, movies, and more, and she can attribute some of that increasing reach to contacts that she made on Twitter.

So, how can you (as an aspiring musician, artist, photographer, or other person who makes a living in the creative industries) find success on Twitter if you aren't already on the level of Dave Matthews (@DaveJMatthews), MC Hammer, Ryan Adams (@ryanada_ms), John Mayer (@johnmcayer), Ashton Kutcher (@aplusk), or Oprah Winfrey (@Oprah)? Here are some simple tips that you can follow:

- ✓ **Surround yourself with successful people.** We don't mean just others in your profession or field who are more successful than you! We also mean people in other fields or areas of creativity that inspire you. You can start to find them by finding out which of your real-world contacts in the industry are on Twitter or by doing a few Twitter searches to find like-minded people while you build your network.
- ✓ **Take it offline.** Take the connections that you make on Twitter and organize events and get-togethers that bring the experience offline. You can also find out about other members' tweetups that are relevant to your business. In creative industries, the talent is what counts, and so real-world connections can really lead to new opportunities, fan segments, and opportunities to build your loyal fan base.
- ✓ **Share your content.** You don't have to give away all your hard work, but put your music, art, videos, or other work out there for people to sample and play with. Start a Blip.fm (<http://blip.fm>) channel, upload a short video to YouTube, offer free mp3s on your Web site, or set up a page that features a few Creative Commons-licensed photos. Whatever you do, give people a way to take a look or have a listen so that they can get to know you and what you make.



Creative Commons (<http://creativecommons.org>) is an organization that makes it easy for people to license their work so that they retain their copyright but allow it to be shared. For more information on how Creative Commons works, go to <http://creativecommons.org/about>.

- ✓ **Tweet on the go.** Give your fans and potential fans a look backstage, in the van, behind the canvas, on tour, or behind the lens. Take them with you by tweeting while you travel with your music, art, film, or other creative medium. Also, let them know where you are! Many fellow Twitter users would love to hang out with you if you happen to be in town.

- ✓ **Engage your fan base.** Don't just post static links to content or schedule changes! Talk to your fans and respond to them through Twitter. They probably want to ask you about the thoughts behind your work, your experiences, and you. Let them. Answer them. Engage them in good conversation, and watch as they spread the word about your work to their friends and followers.
- ✓ **Be yourself.** Put a good face forward, yes, but don't try too hard to project a persona that really isn't authentically you. Twitter is a medium that rewards authenticity, candor, and transparency. Try too hard to put your best face forward and you may lose yourself and stop being genuine. Twitter people notice if you aren't being real. Don't worry about impressing people — just do what you do and be yourself, and the fans will follow.

For the most up-to-date examples of how musicians (<http://wefollow.com/tag/music>), TV personalities (<http://wefollow.com/tag/tv>), actors (<http://wefollow.com/tag/actor>), comedians (<http://wefollow.com/tag/comedy>), and other celebrities (<http://wefollow.com/tag/celebrity>) are using Twitter, check out some of the top most-followed individuals in each category on user-generated Twitter directory We Follow or follow Leslie, who focuses two-thirds of her business on helping those in the film and music industries and who often shares advice on Twitter for up and coming creatives. For more in-depth reading on how musicians can use Twitter, see (<http://pistachioconsulting.com/musicians-guide-to-rocking-twitter>).

Sharing Company Updates

If you have a new or growing company that you want to introduce to the world through Twitter, start a separate account for the company, just as Laura did with @oneforty. You may find balancing traditional corporate professionalism with the level of transparency that Twitter users have come to expect to be a little tricky sometimes, so keep these guidelines in mind when you start your new account:

- ✓ **Provide value to the Twitter community.** Your company account can become a source of news, solutions, ideas, entertainment, or information that's more than just a series of links to products and services. Educate your Twitter followers. Reach out to people whom you can genuinely and unselfishly help. You can even offer sales incentives for products, in the way that @DellOutlet does, as long as what you offer has genuine value. Establish your company's leadership in providing ideas, solutions, and innovation.
- ✓ **Attach a real-world face to the account.** If you need to use a company logo as the avatar because of internal regulations or because multiple people are maintaining the account, make sure to list the names of the actual people who are tweeting in the Bio section of your business's

Twitter profile, and consider signing each tweet with the author's initials. This approach lets your followers become familiar with who's behind the company voice and it makes them feel more engaged. People like to talk to other people, not brands.

- ✓ **Don't spam.** Don't flood the Twitter feed with self-promotional links or product information that don't deliver genuine value to readers. Whether self-promotional or not, you never want to clog up peoples' Twitter streams with irrelevant information. You might not talk about your cat or your marriage on a company account, but you can still make it personal. Profile an employee, talk about milestones for employees, or talk about what's going on in your office. You can even hold tweetups at your office and invite your followers to stop by, like Boston's NPR news station WBUR (@WBUR) does. This approach gives people a peek at what makes your company run.



Before tweeting in earnest for your company, it's a good idea to openly discuss your plans to demonstrate that you're taking a productive, innovative approach and to prevent any misguided fears that twittering means you will somehow suddenly start to leak sensitive company information or otherwise break reasonable corporate policies. As with any public communications platform, you do need to consider just how much you can say about what goes on inside your business. Transparency is key, but you don't want to disclose industry secrets in a public forum. Every company has a different style. It helps to have a good plan in place and make sure that the employees assigned to the company Twitter account are trustworthy and have solid judgment.

Building Community

Community-building sometimes suffers from a kum-ba-ya perception that devalues the importance of using tools such as Twitter to connect with people. But building a truly engaged community is extremely valuable.

Apple is an example of a company that benefits tremendously from its engaged community in terms of promotion, sales, and even customer support administered from one Apple fan directly to others. Apple built its community by building great products people get passionate about, not by worrying about any particular tools. So as you approach the Twitter opportunity, remember how powerful and engaged community can be and remember what people actually engage around — the things they really and truly care about.

At its best, the community concept of sharing and connecting can help you spread a positive image and good comments about your company; done wrong, it can veer into feel-good, self-help banter that's ultimately empty. Again, don't fuss too much about Twitter as a tool. Think more strategically about the community and what they care about and engage them with substance and real contributions.

Building a community is not necessarily the same as building a network:

- ✓ **Network:** Your network is there for you and your business, a kind of foundation for concrete professional growth.
- ✓ **Community:** Building a community means inspiring the people who follow you on Twitter to embrace your brand and create a feeling of solidarity around your business, service, staff, or product.

With a community, you can build a loyal corps of evangelists: people who are passionate about your brand, even though they have no professional or financial stake in the company. If you can engender the community feeling through your use of Twitter and how you interact with your customers, your customers begin to feel emotionally invested in your success online.

#SB44 and #BRANDBOWL

When NBC and the NFL decided to both broadcast Superbowl XLIV simultaneously across the U.S. and hashtag it, they may have become the first duo to use a branded event to promote and encourage a shared community experience, nationally.

By publicizing the #SB44 hashtag for the game, NBC and the NFL encouraged participants around the country to discuss the game on their social networks. There was a buzz in the online air as people were able to root for (or against) each team. The play by play online was vastly more interesting than the commentators onscreen, and it made the game just that much more fun to watch.

Layered onto the #SB44 hashtag experience was the #brandbowl hashtag. This was created and promoted by the people behind the Superbowl ads and the people who were planning to follow along for the commercials and give their opinion on them. For some, this hashtag proved even more interesting than the #SB44 game itself — after all, many people watch the Superbowl each year just for the commercials.

Not only did legions of Twitter users give advertisers ongoing, real time, voluntary feedback on their ads, the hashtag took a few of the better ads viral. Already “I’m on a horse” from the Old

Spice commercial is being used as a group joke, and thanks to the innovative use of hashtags and Twitter, people get it.

The #brandbowl hashtag also offered a peek into how people feel about the brands that chose not to pay for regular television spots this year but to use social media marketing instead. Pepsi was the most notably absent — and one of the most talked about using the #brandbowl hashtag. This means that without spending a dime on an expensive Superbowl ad, their brand received all of the benefits of national awareness during the biggest sporting event of the year, and their Pepsi Refresh social media and social good campaign got a huge boost.

So far, other television events and shows like *American Idol*, the Olympics, and *Lost* opted not to simulcast or use official hashtags, missing a chance to build a community (and to prevent “spoilers”, plot revelations that happen when someone on the East Coast, for example, tweets a plot point or award during the show before the West Coast gets to see it).

The U.S. government is a different story, however, using the branded hashtag #HCR to drive awareness of and real time feedback on the recent health care reform bill, and planning more branded hashtags in future.

You can see this community feeling with Zappos. The Twitter users who follow the shoe retailer are so dedicated that they act like they're legitimately invested in the brand's success. Zappos fosters this effect by staying on top of what people on Twitter are saying about them, or about shoes in general, through the use of monitoring tools. Then they jump in with help, as needed. If you tweet about having trouble finding any kind of shoe, for example, you can expect a Zappos employee to send you a direct message (DM) or @reply in less than a day that includes links to the proper pages on the Zappos site. Plus, Zappos has spent so much time building a strong community that Twitter members who don't even work for Zappos will routinely pass along information they see or hear and will even reach out on behalf of the company and connect potential customers with Zappos.com.

You can also see the community around less popular products, such as Comcast's cable offerings. Even while people express frustration about their cable service, members of their Twitter network still point them to @Comcastcares to find help.

Community is also a huge aspect of many musicians' and artists' Twitter experiences, such as Imogen Heap (@ImogenHeap) and John Mayer (@johnmcayer). Heap uses Twitter to interact more directly with her fan base, which increases the loyalty of her listeners, who have come to see a more human side of her and feel like they've even come to know her. If someone tweets something about Heap that her Twitter followers don't like, you can watch the community leap to her defense. At the same time, tweets from her Twitter community usually reflect the tone of her own calm tweets, remaining mellow and not shrill.

Musicians, actors, and other celebrities are really personality-based businesses, and bringing forth those personalities on Twitter by asking questions and sharing parts of their lives cements a valuable engagement between the artist and fans.

You can build community through

- ✓ Genuine interaction
- ✓ Asking questions
- ✓ Honesty
- ✓ Transparency
- ✓ Following people back who follow you
- ✓ Not over-automating
- ✓ Being more than a link list
- ✓ Providing value

Conducting Research

Twitter is an excellent tool for crowd-sourcing and focus-group research. You can easily get the answers you seek after you establish a relationship with your followers that encourages participation, conversation, and sharing. The real challenge is finding reliable methods to extract and analyze the data: Twitter is still a very new medium, and analytics tools associated with it aren't yet that advanced. Larger corporations are diving in to conduct their own research and build their own tools that can make sense of the tremendous amount of data being generated on Twitter all the time.

If you're willing to experiment with different ways to watch the Twitter stream, you can collect *passive data* (what people happen to be mentioning), do *active research* (asking questions and conducting polls), and even engage actual focus groups and ad-hoc communities in live events.

As you build your network and start gaining more followers on Twitter, it becomes a very useful tool for informal conversational research. If you ask a really good question and send it into the world with a #hashtag to make the answers easier to find, you can even do research with a very small following, because the tag attracts curious bystanders who may later become new followers. As you ask questions, you can use any number of polling tools or even a simple manually generated tracking system (such as a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet) to collect the answers and data that you receive.

Twitter can be thought of as a global, human-powered, mobile phone-enabled sensing and signaling network. What Twitter knows about the world is pretty incredible, and once businesses understand how to work with that information, it can contribute toward closing some pretty important gaps in our economy between supply and demand.

Growing your numbers naturally

Although effective questions and good tagging can help your research spread beyond your direct network, in order to do most kinds of research on Twitter, you need a healthy following first. This network will have much more value in the long run if you grow your numbers through natural conversational methods and organic back-and-forth follows. (**Tip:** Don't advertise "please follow this account" the way

that Ashton Kutcher did when he was trying to race CNN to a million Twitter followers.) When you know that you have a diverse crowd of intelligent people following you on Twitter, including those who are both fans and critics of your brand, then you can feel relatively comfortable starting to ask them for feedback and insight.

(continued)

(continued)

Take it slow and wait for a solid, engaged, relevant network to build up instead. But your business and you can begin to thrive on the real-time feedback about your products, services, and staff. Twitter can, among other things, help you find out before it's too late that a new flagship product is flawed, spread the word about your excellent customer service

directly from the customers that were involved, and invite interested customers to come to real-life tweetups to find out more about your brand. Any forward-thinking business that has transparency on the mind or wants to remain on top of brand perception at all times has started to use Twitter.

Going Transparent

Transparency is a crucial marketing buzzword for some businesses and a scary reality for others. Lest you think we're asking you to live out that unpleasant dream where you forget to wear your pants to school, relax. Transparency doesn't require exposing company data to corporate spies or baring your soul for the Internet. More than anything else, it simply means being honest, disclosing your biases, admitting to mistakes, and not trying to force your message and spin on everyone all the time.

Although many Twitter users find themselves becoming more casual in their use of the service over time, you need to find your own personal comfort level between acting like a real person and over-sharing. After you find that line for yourself, your business, and your employees, being genuine and transparent on Twitter becomes second nature. Transparency fosters trust and relationships. It's no secret — people like to work with people they like.

Here's how to achieve transparency:

- ✓ **Release control.** Stop worrying about what might happen to your brand. Instead, listen to what your customers are trying to tell you and respond to that feedback. The truth is, you haven't been able to control your message for a while now: You might just not have known it. For example, look at the hashtags #motrinmoms and #amazonfail. In the former example, painkiller brand Motrin put out an online ad campaign that targeted mothers; it failed spectacularly when real moms took offense at its content. They used Twitter to express their anger and ultimately get the campaign suspended. The Amazon Fail incident happened when books pertaining to gay and lesbian themes were suddenly pulled from the online retailer's bestseller lists. Again, Twitter users smelled something fishy and instantly started spreading the word. Both companies learned from going through this process that a better Twitter listening practice would have helped them address concerns early and prevent a conflagration.
- ✓ **Admit to problems.** When you acknowledge that your business and you occasionally have rough patches, you can form stronger, more genuine

connections with your community. That kind of open disclosure has limits when it comes to some professions. Obviously, people in the legal and medical professions, as well as government agencies, have to restrict and curtail their Twitter use because of privacy issues. But for most businesses, honesty is the best policy.

- ✓ **Reach out continually.** Don't stop seeking out the customers who are talking about you (you can find them by conducting regular Twitter searches; see Chapter 9) and reaching out to them. That personal touch goes very far in establishing and maintaining a positive perception of your business or brand.
- ✓ **Be proactive.** If you're engaged with the community in a genuine way, people forgive most mistakes. Twitter's community is pretty cooperative, and if you embrace it, you can be rewarded with unexpected benefits like loyalty, advocacy, and even organic, voluntary promotion of you and your work.

But, What If My Employees . . .

Like with any new tool, business owners often feel some uncertainty and concern about how to manage employees so that they don't waste time or make costly mistakes when using Twitter. Remember to apply common sense and manage based on behavior and results, not just specific tools. Your existing guidelines about e-mail, blogs, commenting on Web message boards and forums, and even conversations with outside individuals cover any concerns that you have about your employees' use of Twitter.

That said, it is important to take heed that information spreads fast on Twitter, and that Twitter is a very open and searchable public forum. Errors can — and will — go farther, faster, so the exercise of common sense is in order.

Before you start using Twitter for your business, provide staff with guidance on how to use it and what to be cautious about. Twitter is extremely new to many people, and they may not yet be familiar with just how public and open it is. Definitely set a few ground rules to help avoid common mistakes. You can simply write up a one- or two-page set of reminders or direct employees' attention to the parts of your existing HR policy that cover public communications.

Make the guidelines basic, clear, and easy to follow. Here are some thoughts to get you started:

- ✓ Remember that if you wouldn't say it in front of your parents, kids, or boss, perhaps you shouldn't say it on Twitter.

- ✓ If you do something confidential at a company, keep private information under wraps. Respect clients' privacy, as well as your company's.
- ✓ Respect the company brand when you're out at *tweetups* (Twitter-based meet-ups) and events. Anyone can get quoted at any time.
- ✓ Perception is reality. Even if the complaint you tweet right after a client phone call wasn't about the client, it can be misconstrued that way.
- ✓ Manage your time on Twitter well so that it doesn't interfere with your workload.

Unless your business has other issues that come into play (for example, if you work for a law firm or government agency), these basic rules should be enough to keep people from abusing their time on Twitter. Customize them however you want.



Twitter can be an extremely valuable tool when it comes to building your professional team and bringing them together. You can set up meetings, tweet notes, meet customers, and more — and your staff can connect more easily by using Twitter, as well. The more of a team you can build, the better you can weather any economic buffering.

Sharing Knowledge

You can also use Twitter to share knowledge, collaborate both inside the company and out, and gather business information and research. After you start to build a healthy network, you need to send out only a few tweets about your project, problem, or issue before people come out of the woodwork to try to help your business and you. If you haven't been building your Twitter network, you may have to wait a while for this aspect of Twitter to become useful for you.

Say that you come up with a major presentation about what your company does or sells, but you need something to complete it, such as a chart or a link to a relevant study. Twitter can probably help you find that missing piece. People on Twitter usually offer a helping hand when it comes to knowledge sharing, collaboration, and information gathering, especially if you spend time interacting on Twitter and building your network. Avid Twitter users are all aware of the same thing: By helping out others, they can get a hand when they need it.

The very existence of this book is an example of Twitter bringing people together for knowledge sharing and collaboration. Laura got to know two Wiley employees on Twitter and in person at conferences, which led to a

conversation about Laura writing *Twitter For Dummies*. Laura in turn had met Michael and Leslie via Twitter-related conversations and events, and they had all come to trust one another over time. We also reached out via our personal Twitter accounts and @dummies on Twitter to ask the broader Twitter community what they thought belonged in a book about Twitter. Moving forward, we'll continue to listen and interact via the @dummies account, our Web site, and, of course, via the community at Laura's Twitter-powered community on www.oneforty.com.

Chapter 12

The Social Side of Twitter

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using Twitter as a support system
- ▶ Connecting with people
- ▶ Making new friends
- ▶ Deciding who to follow
- ▶ Getting quick answers
- ▶ Sharing information

Just as businesses can benefit from using Twitter to build goodwill, communicate with stakeholders, and establish personal relationships with customers (which we talk about in Chapter 11), the service can likewise be used by individuals to build strong social connections. Through these connections, one can tap a wealth of resources that were heretofore unavailable due to limitations of time or distance.

As we show in this chapter, your Twitter network can help in a myriad of ways that range from the prosaic (such as recommending a favorite pizza place in an unfamiliar town) to life-saving (coordinating disaster relief efforts in real time). We also go into detail about the social benefits of strong Twitter connections and provide tips for building and participating in a supportive Twitter community.

Using Twitter as a Support System

Most people don't realize this, but Twitter is a support system for your support system. Twitter keeps you connected in real time with the people in your life, providing support to your support system itself.

Many users instinctively turn to their Twitter network when they need to commiserate over a loss for their favorite sports team, when they get a promotion or a new job, when they lose a loved one, or when anything else happens that they want to share with a supportive network of people.

Twitterers have used the service to help displaced families, victims of natural disasters, abuse victims, job-seekers, animals in need, and even researchers who need people to take part in focus groups. Twitter has also proved useful for couch-surfers, who have come to know interesting and accommodating people in different fields of expertise.

Because Twitter helps people get to know each other on a more personal level, new friends can successfully meet and interact with each other offline.



As always, exercise caution when meeting people for the first time. Meet them in a public place, like a cafe or restaurant, and if you can, bring another friend with you, so you're not alone. Pay attention to your instincts — if something doesn't feel safe, it probably isn't.

For many, Twitter has replaced search-based electronic resources (such as Yahoo!, Bing, or Google) and become their go-to place for help and support. Depending on the nature and the strength of your network, asking your friends on Twitter (both the ones you now have and the ones you're making) for guidance or opinions can yield more detailed and varied advice and help than you might receive if you had turned to only your offline network.

Of course, Twitter isn't meant to replace your offline network of lifelong friends and family — it's a technology designed to enrich that network. While connecting with your friends on Twitter, you may meet new friends and start to get a better feel for the people (both new and old) whom you can trust.



Although Twitter is useful for supporting global causes and events, the most poignant uses of Twitter can just as easily be found in the simple ways that users help each other, one at a time, all day, every day.

Twitterers reach out to one other through the trials and annoyances of everyday life (such as not having enough quarters at a laundromat) to crises of every size and measure. Twitterers have been support networks when loved ones are in the hospital, when couples divorce, when relationships break up, and more. When you use Twitter, your expressions of frustration and loss are often met with an immediate response. Twitter empowers humanity to act humanely.

Connecting with People

Because all Twitterers use the same toolset and (as far as Twitter is concerned) play on the same level, it is remarkably easy to connect with people on the service. The more people you connect with, the more your follower/following numbers go up, thereby increasing the breadth of your network to a sometimes embarrassingly large number of people.

Gaming for followers

Twitter networks are based on trust and reputation, and one of the first metrics that people tend to use when deciding whether to follow someone is how many followers that user already has, and the ratio of following to followers.

Consequently, some Twitter users try to improve their follower/following reputation by collecting as many followers as possible. These individuals aggressively follow hundreds of people with the hope that the followed users follow them back (and many do). These people then unfollow the users who don't follow them back within a couple of days. The more aggressive "follow spammers" unfollow everyone in order to keep adding more and more and more. In fact, a couple of tools (which we won't name, and some of which Twitter has already suspended) automate this process. Does gaming followers give you a really high number on your follower count? Yes. But this behavior is seen as obnoxious, unethical, and strongly against the overall Twitter community spirit. It's also pretty questionable how engaged those tens of thousands of "followers" actually are.

Twitter, in an effort to curb these users, has limited the number of people that users can follow to 2,000 until the user is followed back, in turn, by a similar number of accounts. This is why the more ruthless gamers follow and then unfollow everyone that they target, to avoid hitting the "follow ceiling." If for some reason you hit that ceiling, you don't have to do anything but wait for your ratio to balance out, and then you will automatically be permitted to follow more new people.

You personally can help curb these gamers by not following back anyone you suspect is doing this, or even by clicking the block button on their Profile page. When a Twitter account is blocked by a large number of users, Twitter's spam team investigates the account and suspends any that are violating the terms of service.

Do yourself a favor and do not be tempted to play any of these games. It is *not* a good way to quickly build a Twitter following. The network generated is random and low-value, and you run the risk of losing your account entirely if other users block you or report you for abusing the system.



Some Twitter users (and we won't name names) are addicted to increasing their follower count and will use many tricks to artificially increase their number of followers. For more information, check out the sidebar "Gaming for followers," in this chapter.

Anxious to have lots and lots of followers? First, it doesn't matter as much as you might think. Second, be patient and build a network of actual connections, not collections of usernames and large follower numbers. It takes time for people to notice you; you'll need to have posted a few updates or tweets first. But if you share posts that others find valuable (in other words, you

write tweets that people find interesting or informative), your follower count will grow organically. Getting more followers may take a while, especially if you have esoteric interests, but having a following of attentive and interested listeners trumps having a large number of followers any day.

The first time you make a real, organic connection with a stranger on Twitter, it might feel a little weird, but it's also a bit thrilling. Whether you do something as simple as get (or give) a much-needed answer to a question, connect for business, or bond over something fun (such as music or sports), you've just made your first Twitter-friend.



Twitter is based around people and their networks. These interpersonal networks are the most important aspect of this simple and (we admit) quirky service. Real connections power Twitter — those connections are the heartbeat of your Twitter community.

Adopting the Fail Whale

Twitter is still a young service, and although it has grown exponentially, it has had some growing pains. Most frequently, its growing pains revolve around service outages, which typically occur when the servers become overloaded.

Twitter has a variety of kitschy graphics that appear when the service has problems. Best known is the Fail Whale, who comes out to play, towed by seven Twitter-logo-like birds (four of them are flying backwards), each time the service goes over capacity. The Fail Whale started life as a birthday card design called "Lifting the Dreamer," designed by Yiyang Lu. There are other "failure" graphics — kitty cats with screwdrivers (no longer used), the unscheduled maintenance caterpillar, the "just chill" ice cream cone, an owl, and a Fail robot, but none has engendered the love and following of our dear Fail Whale.

Instead of becoming upset that their darling service was down, Twitterers reacted differently

to the Fail Whale. The shared experience of losing access to the service fostered a sense of community so quickly among its users that they ended up adopting the Fail Whale as their mascot for banding together in tough times. They made t-shirts. They created a contest for designing a label for the Fail Whale Pale Ale, a mythical brew (see <http://www.flickr.com/photos/7909366@N04/2879231531/>). You can find Fail Whale plushies, mugs, t-shirts, and more. Few companies are able to transform a potential disaster into a point of culture for its users, but Twitter pulled it off.

What makes that plot twist interesting is how emblematic it is of how users feel the service as a whole. That sense of family and community transcends obstacles and gets things done. The adoption of the Fail Whale by the twitterverse was a sign that Ev, Biz, and Jack, the Twitter founders, had indeed hit a home run.

In its early stages, Twitter went through some serious technological growing pains while it got more popular, leading to significant site downtime and unacceptable levels of quality of service. But the power of the connections and the format of the service kept it going. Without that network of connectivity, no one who uses Twitter would have had the patience to not only stick around while the people behind the service worked out the kinks, but also to embrace the problems and create solutions.

One of the most common issues with Twitter during its early days was downtime — the server frequently became overloaded with too many users writing too many updates. Although users couldn't access their Twitter accounts, the development team was nice enough to let you know what was going on: In place of whatever screen you expected to see, Twitter returned with a graphic of birds holding a whale out of the water. The picture and euphemism for Twitter down time was born: the Fail Whale, pictured in Figure 12-1.



Figure 12-1:
The Fail
Whale
appears
when
Twitter's
traffic
exceeds
its server
capacity.

So, what does all this connectedness have to do with you? If you listen to longtime Twitter users talk about it, you may start to feel like there are a whole lot of shared memories and assumptions that you're not a part of. Don't worry: New people are joining Twitter all the time. From the period of

November 2008 until the final touches were put on just the first edition of this book, Twitter doubled its user-base at least three times over. That means pretty much everyone is new, and you shouldn't feel shy about what came before. We're just filling you in on it so that you have some idea how these past feel-good moments apply to you.

For one thing, Twitter's past has established the underlying tone, lexicon, and conventions on Twitter. Also, the camaraderie among Twitter users is based on trust, and if you want people to trust you on Twitter (just like if you want people to trust you in any other circumstance), you really ought to give as much (or more) than you get back. To be effective, you really need to add value to the Twitter streams of others and act in a way that inspires trust. You will be rewarded with interesting new connections, ideas, and even life-long (virtual and real life) friends.

Making New Friends

In life, the word *friend* can have a number of different meanings. But on Twitter (and on most of the Internet), a friend is someone with whom you share a connection. Many Twitter users naturally follow people they know and trust; over time, however, many people start interacting with strangers. It's therefore not unusual to hear about the friends and real-life connections that people make on Twitter.

At first, you might have trouble believing it. Most people start out feeling like the stranger at a cocktail party, and existing Twitter users might not start a meaningful interaction with you right away. But most people will say hello and expect you to respond to them and tell them a bit about you — just as they would in a real conversation. Well, it *is* a real conversation.

Making friends on Twitter is much like making friends in the real world: If two people have things in common (for example, coming from the same home town), share a common interest (such as politics), or simply find each other fascinating, they may become friends. In fact, Twitter's interface makes it pretty easy to figure out if someone is worth following — just look at the person's Twitter Profile page, read her bio, check out her timeline, and follow her if she seems interesting.

Twitter users tend to share something unique or tell about themselves in their Twitter Profile page, either inside their biographies or URLs — or both. So, if you receive a flurry of tweets welcoming you to the service, take a look through those people's Profile pages and URLs to get a better feel for who they are, and whether you'd want to strike up a conversation with them . . . and then do so, if you want!

If you express interest in other people and what they say or do, they tend to reciprocate. In general, people love to know that you're interested in what they have to say, in real life and on Twitter.

You can find people with whom you want to start conversations through the public timeline, but if you want to look for individuals who share your interests, you can quickly and easily find those people by using Twitter Search (see Chapter 9) to see who's already talking about your interests. Laura frequently challenges new users to search for the most obscure keywords around their work or their favorite hobbies, to find people they have something special in common with.



You may find sending that first tweet to a potential Twitter connection a bit daunting. After all, what do you say to a total stranger? How do you say it? As a general rule, think of Twitter as a giant cocktail party. (In a perfect world, this party has cupcakes.) If you're the type of person who carefully chooses her conversations, Twitter gives you a lot of ammunition: Take a look at people's bios, their Web sites, and the things that they've tweeted so you can pick your conversations carefully. If you tend to be the life of the party, have at it! Go ahead and start @replying to people and stir up a conversation. You decide what approach you want to take, as there's no single right way to tweet. You'll ultimately find that your own personal style for meeting people in real life translates pretty similarly to Twitter.

Searching for topics of interest

Conversations crop up all the time on Twitter, so if you want to see what people are saying about something you're interested in, search for it.

Say that you're a huge cupcake fan and want to connect with other pastry buffs, so you want to see what people are saying. You can do this simply by running a Twitter Search for *cupcakes*. (We cover Twitter Search in detail in Chapter 9.)

Figure 12-2 shows a sample search for cupcakes. A recent search result, “about to bake cupcakes!<3<3” depicts a woman who seems excited at the prospect of making her cupcakes (those <3 characters are meant to be little sideways hearts showing how she loves cupcakes). By way of starting a conversation, you @reply to her, “I’m about to make cupcakes as well! What’s your favorite recipe?” The two of you can go from there and may happen to start a relationship about your mutual love for baking cupcakes. The fancy name for this is *social object theory* — the idea that two people who discover a common interest are more likely to form some kind of direct connection to one another because of their connection to (and feelings for) the shared interest. Put differently, a whole lot of what goes on on Twitter is about “What do we have in common?” more than it is about “What are you doing?”



Or maybe you find the prospect of maple cupcakes intriguing. That user seems like a great person to ask for a recipe if you want to make them, too!

While you're going through the public timeline or the search results to find people who have information you want or people with whom you want to interact, you might feel tempted to try to direct message them. However, direct messaging works only if the person is following you. And because, in all likelihood, you haven't talked to them yet, they're probably not following you. Start a conversation by replying to them directly, for example: "@AliciaSue82 hey! Hey you! Maple cupcakes sound fantastic! Where'd you find that recipe?"

On Twitter, you'll find yourself getting to know people a lot better than you expected. Because Twitter profiles link to other resources and relevant information on their profile owners, you can get a pretty good sense of who people are. So, Twitter-based relationships often transition into relationships in real life. (Or, as some techies abbreviate it, IRL.)

Figure 12-2:
Searching
for
cupcakes.

Twitter-based events

Through conversations on Twitter, many smaller communities have cropped up. The Twitter-based community occasionally organizes meet-ups in real life — the common thread being that they're all part of a community from

Twitter. As with nearly every term relating to Twitter, it should come as no surprise that these meet-ups are sometimes referred to as *tweetups*.

Because Twitter is just another medium by which people connect, and because the medium allows you to easily build relationships, you may not see meeting offline as such a stretch. In our experience, because Twitter connections are based on trust within a community (which you can measure by seeing who people talk to, what they say, and what they're like), meeting people offline doesn't feel as taboo as it used to.

In fact, because Twitter makes reaching out to new people so easy, some people have had great success in meeting people in the most random of places — for example, in between flights during a layover.

Say that you're traveling from New Jersey to Colorado with a layover in Texas. You might send an update to Twitter: "Flying EWR to DIA, via IAH. Anyone care for a game of Scrabble during my 2-hour layover?" A fellow traveler might be, out of curiosity or boredom, searching Twitter for new people to meet and might take you up on your offer.

So, if you happen to be in a new town on business, or visiting friends or relatives (and need to get away), you might be able to find people in that city to meet for coffee or drinks. Twitter is another avenue by which you can find people; and, having the ability to figure out who they are before agreeing to meet them certainly benefits you. Not only can you look for common interests to talk about before meeting people (which certainly jumpstarts the awkward early phases of any conversation), you can also make such meetings safer by screening people before meeting up with them. Your mom was partially right about not talking to strangers, of course, but by meeting in public and by finding people you actually know in common, you can be a bit safer in making the jump to an offline connection.

In addition to impromptu tweetups, the digital-media folk on Twitter (the *Twitterati*) have organized and promoted a number of charity events through Twitter; two popular charity events, as of this writing, are @SM4SC (Social Media for Social Change; www.sm4sc.com), shown in Figure 12-3, and @twestival (www.twestival.com). In just a few short weeks, @twestival jumped to international consciousness — and headlines the world over — by drawing out 10,000 twitterers to 200+ events in cities around the world. When all was said and done, a massive series of tweetups on February 12, 2009, raised \$250,000 for charity: water (www.charitywater.org) to build safe, clean drinking water wells in developing nations. In April 2009 the main @twestival organizer Amanda Rose (@amanda) traveled to Ethiopia with charity: water founder Scott Harrison (@scottharrison), Twitter investor Chris Sacca (@sacca), and others to film and dedicate the first @twestival well drilled.

The real Shaq story

At first, Jesse Bearden didn't believe that his friend Sean was getting regular updates from the real Shaquille O'Neal on Twitter. After all, anyone could be masquerading as the much-loved star of 1996's smash-hit genie coming-of-age comedy, *Kazaam*.

So, when @THE_REAL_SHAQ updated his status to tell his followers that he was having a meal at the nearby 5 & Diner, Sean and Jesse decided to stop by and settle the identity question once and for all.

Sure enough, Shaq's truck was in the parking lot, and the man himself was tucked in a corner booth. While the two friends worked up the courage to say hello, Shaq tweeted again: "I feel twitterers around me, r there any twitterers in 5 n diner wit me, say somethin"

Within moments, they were being invited to share Shaq's booth, trade notes on Shaq's Android Googlephone versus Jesse's Windows Mobile device, and take pictures. In Shaq's words:

"To all twitterers, if u c me n public come say hi, we r not the same we r from twitteronia, we connect"

Celebrities and brands who use Twitter to build audiences become approachable on their own terms — even in real life!

You can find more information about the story at <http://sesquipedalis.blogspot.com/2009/02/finally-use-for-twitter.html>.

By being active on Twitter — practicing the philosophy of transparency and having genuine interactions — you can increase your circle of friends and connections both on- and offline. You can also merge your offline circle of friends with your online circle of friends in ways you never could before, increasing your social reach exponentially. We talk more about being genuine in Chapter 10.

As it turns out, the more solid connections you have with your Twitter following, the more your network works for you. Although you may find meeting people in airports for board games an advantage to having some Twitter credibility, you can use your online network as quite a resource beyond the fuzzy stuff (which we discuss in the section "Using Twitter as a Support System," earlier in this chapter). If you have a valuable network, you can get your followers to answer questions you can't find answers to anywhere else!



Figure 12-3:
On the
Social
Media
for Social
Change
Web site,
you can
see what
events are
coming up.

To Follow or Not to Follow?

Everyone has their own methodology for whom they follow and how they follow people on Twitter. Some people tend to follow everyone they interact with, but others judiciously control their following counts. Some people diligently review who they follow and trim out users who are no longer relevant to their lives, and others never look through their Following list.

There is no single “right” way to go about deciding who to follow; other tweeters may use the Following tool differently than you — just because they don’t immediately follow you back doesn’t mean they’re not going to in the future. Our rule is simple: Follow someone if you have a reason to follow him, not just because he’s following you. (If you’re on Twitter for business purposes, we have different advice for you in Chapter 11.)



To prevent spam, the Twitter team has limited the number of tweeters that users can follow to 2,000 until they have roughly that number of followers themselves. Once a limited account reaches close to or over 2,000 followers, Twitter once again allows it to go out and follow more accounts.

Every user has a different ritual when she gets a new follower: Some people @reply their new followers to acknowledge the follow; some direct-message their new followers to say hello; and others do nothing at all. Twitter doesn't have an official protocol about what you're supposed to do, and you naturally gravitate towards a routine that works for you.

Some people and businesses choose to make first contact with their new followers by sending a direct message. You can write a very personalized direct message to say hello, thank the recipient for the follow, and mention why he might want to keep in touch. Some users enjoy receiving such direct-message greetings, but others might view a direct message as intrusive or antisocial. There's no hard and fast rule, and it's not always possible to tell which approach your new follower prefers, so play things by ear and develop your own personal style of what you are comfortable with.



Some Twitterers go so far as to use third-party services to automatically send a thank-you direct message to people who follow them.

If you decide to use that kind of technology, be forewarned that many users hate these automatic DMs. That sort of outreach can be antisocial and irritating; and, if the person doesn't like receiving direct messages from new people that she follows, sending her a DM can be insulting. So, use these technologies with caution.

As a side note, some Twitter users have rallied around the hashtag #end-autodm in solidarity against auto-direct messages. Search for the endautodm hashtag on Twitter Search to get a sense of how unpopular auto-direct messages can be. (We cover hashtags and Twitter Search in Chapter 9.)

If you're on the fence about what to do to acknowledge someone who follows you, make first contact openly to keep with the transparent and welcoming nature of Twitter. Direct messages are meant for private conversations, which usually happen only after you spend time to get to know someone, both in person and on Twitter.

Getting Quick Answers

Have you ever had a seemingly simple question that has bothered you for days and days? Well, why not ask Twitter?

If you have a solid network of Twitter friends, someone can likely answer your question. People tend to know a variety of things, or have unknown talents and knowledge bases, so go ahead and ask! You might be surprised by the answers you get.

In fact, someone probably knows what you're looking for or is having a similar conversation somewhere, whether locally or on the other side of the world. For example, if you're awake at 5 a.m. in California trying (vainly) to remember the name of the fifth Beatle so that you can stop obsessing and go back to sleep already, someone who knows the answer is probably awake on the East Coast or not yet asleep in Europe. Hop on Twitter and ask!

(The Fifth Beatle's name is Stuart Sutcliffe, according to some; you can read more about it here: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fifth_Beatle. So, go to bed already!)



Some people consider tweeting a question whose answer you can easily search on your favorite Internet search resource impolite. Try hunting down the answer first by yourself before asking your Twitter network. Some users consider it rude and inconsiderate to waste their time with silly questions, and they may unfollow you. So, perhaps asking the fifth Beatle's name is poor form. You might ask your followers if they have any movie recommendations, though.

In addition, some brands and companies are beginning to use Twitter as a customer-service tool, and are willing and ready to answer customer queries. For example, JetBlue, shown in Figure 12-4, uses Twitter to send customers information on flight delays. (In Chapter 11, we explain how businesses can use Twitter to their advantage to help, educate, and communicate with customers.)

Figure 12-4:
JetBlue notifies customers of weather delays and where to go for flight-delay information through Twitter.

Accessing the experts

By using Twitter, you can find quick, knowledgeable answers to more serious questions, not just to simple ones. If you're doing some research for work and want to find the most useful sources, ask Twitter. Of course, you still have to do additional normal research and fact-checking, but you can definitely get pointers in the right direction much faster than you can on your own.

While Twitter grows in popularity, more professionals, celebrities, and point people at companies are actively using the service to further their own publicity, knowledge, and outreach. For example, if you want to get a better sense of what it's like to be an Australian actor working in America, ask Hugh Jackman (@RealHughJackman). Want to know what Yoko Ono thought about when she was writing one of her pieces? Go ahead and ask her! (@yokoono). Despite their celebrity, they have the exact same tools that you do and are as accessible as they want to be on Twitter. If they have the time and see your question, you just might get an answer. But again, respect their time by asking something relevant and interesting to them, not just something selfish or easily looked up elsewhere.



As you can probably imagine, many celebrities and industry mavens have many, many followers — and those popular folks are often inundated with questions and @replies. If you ask something of them and don't get a response, your question may have just gotten lost in the noise. Feel free to try to talk to them in the future, but if you're sending them public messages in your timeline, remember that everyone else reading your updates gets all those messages, too. In short, don't be a rabid fan.

You'll also find many industry analysts, number crunchers, stats hounds, and fact checkers on Twitter who aren't famous but are eager to help you. So, with your Twitter account comes an army of experts and pundits who have research-heavy charts, graphs, and reports on a wide array of topics. People on Twitter can be very generous with their time, knowledge, and information. After all, many of the relationships you have on Twitter are with people whom you trust and who trust you.



Twitter is a trust-based network. In the process of building connections, interacting with the community, and sharing your ideas and knowledge, you earn trust. That trust-building goes both ways. Your growing network of contacts on Twitter also earns your trust. So, if someone in your trusted network sends you a link, you can probably trust that the link will take you to a page that's helpful to you. Always check your facts, but you can get valuable, reliable, and accessible information through Twitter.

Information about breaking news

The real-time nature of tweets makes Twitter an ideal resource for breaking news. If anything newsworthy happens on the local level, someone on the scene probably has Twitter and is telling his network about it as it happens. If the tweeter uses any of the services that can post to Twitter accounts (such as Utterli, TwitPic, or Brightkite), his network is also getting real-time pictures, audio, geo-location, and sometimes video information, as well.



Follow @breakingnews for the latest in breaking news, a favorite amongst many Twitter users.

Although Twitter has proven itself to be a great tool for getting live updates and eyewitness reports, traditional journalism and fact-checking still has a place. Sometimes, in the heat of an event or moment, rumors can spread as easily as facts across Twitter, so take each piece of information with a grain of salt. Depending on how much you trust the person who's providing the updates, you know how much legwork you have to do (if any) to validate her claim. By the same token, perpetually spreading false rumors reduces your reliability as a source to your followers.

Getting recommendations

Twitter's a great resource for getting recommendations from your friends and contacts. Say that you're an employer looking for a reliable office manager. A great way to start is by asking your Twitter network for help in staffing that position. In fact, your next office manager may come from your Twitter following.

Or perhaps you're looking for the best Chicago-style pizza in New York City. Ask your Twitter network for suggestions on where to go. If you have contacts in both Chicago and New York, you might have a bit of fun reading their tweets while they argue the finer points of crust thickness, cheese selection, and topping distribution. In the end, you'll likely have a few pizzerias and restaurants to try out (and more information about your contacts' food preferences than you bargained for).

Sharing Information

One of the things that new users notice quickly on Twitter is the abundance of shared information. You'll find that people share everything — from recipes to complex PowerPoint presentation files or *slide decks* — seemingly without a second thought.

Sometimes, people question the motives of those sharing or worry that the people who see and use the information might somehow steal it. Addressing that concern requires a fundamental psychological shift in thinking: Part of the success of Twitter is the concept of giving up some control over the information you release to your network. To quote an old adage, “Sharing means caring.” Sharing with your network increases the value that you have to that network and allows your network to grow. It also shows that you care enough about the people in your network to share what you know, what you’re doing, or what you’re thinking about.

Giving up control might sound a little scary, but it doesn’t have to be. You’ve built (or are building) a network of Twitter users whom you can trust. You can control who you interact with on Twitter and what kind of network you find value in cultivating. Whom you share with can be just as important as what you’re sharing.



Like with any online service (or any gathering of human beings for that matter), nefarious characters do crop up on Twitter. They might try to socially engineer networks, artificially build reputation, or poach information for not-so-up-and-up purposes. The nice thing about Twitter is that it’s pretty self-policing: If you’re concerned about a user, either block or simply ignore him. If you’re concerned about your information becoming public, protect your updates and allow only people you trust to receive your tweets.

Another way many Twitter users share information is by linking to other Web sites, blogs, and Internet resources. We cover linking in Chapter 9, including how to go about linking to other sites, ways you can reduce your character count so that you can maximize the information and commentary you can include, and linking etiquette.

Chapter 13

Changing the World, One Tweet at a Time

In This Chapter

- ▶ Twittering the globe for change
 - ▶ Organizing people online and in real life
 - ▶ Engaging in citizen journalism
-

Twitter is a great communications tool for businesses and persons alike, and it has the potential to connect people and create relationships over a variety of discussions, interests, and geographies. When people use Twitter to grow their communities and share observations and insights on issues and situations that matter to them, interesting things start to happen. Twitter becomes a touch-point by which users try to improve their worlds.

In this chapter, we share true stories of global and social-change initiatives that either started or were facilitated by the use of Twitter, as well as world and local events aided by Twitter. We close the chapter with a few examples that illustrate Twitter's ability to spread messages of goodwill and world improvement through its user base.

Twittering the Globe for Change

Twitter offers a platform for immediate news delivery and instant communication with millions of twitterers around the world. So, despite the seemingly confining 140-character limit, Twitter has become accepted by many as an extremely effective tool for social change on both a local and global level.

Quite a few individuals and organizations have begun to use Twitter for outreach, sharing news, publicizing activities and events, raising funds, mobilizing grassroots efforts, and a number of other ways for effecting positive change. Users who know how to tap Twitter's potential for swiftly spreading their ideas are able to get rapid and powerful results.



One can call attention to issues or events by consistently tweeting relevant information in digestible snippets, as well as occasionally sending links to valuable and verifiable information. You also increase your reputation as an authority on a given topic if you write credible posts and articles and share these with your followers.

But, on the simplest and most mundane level, tens of thousands of users have made strong personal connections on Twitter: new friendships and relationships, as well as new and fruitful professional connections. These connections spring up on Twitter all the time, and even new twitterers are likely to encounter someone who can share one of these only-on-Twitter stories. Heck, you may become a Twitter story yourself — you just have to reach out.

Charity events

Twitterer Amanda Rose (@amanda) is widely acknowledged as the driving force behind Twestival (www.twestival.com or @twestival), shown in Figure 13-1, a series of events that raised awareness and funding for a non-profit organization called charity: water (www.charitywater.org).

Twestival

The first Twestival, a worldwide event with more than 200 participating cities, was held on February 12, 2009, to benefit a nonprofit called charity: water (www.charitywater.org and @charitywater). This night of music and friends got its start in the U.K. from a single Twitter user who had fewer than 2,000 followers. But the idea caught on when some of those followers decided to make it a worldwide effort.

Ultimately, volunteers raised more than \$275,000 around the world for charity: water, which uses donations to build wells in developing countries, where access to clean water

is scarce. Generating the interest took a matter of days, and most Twestivals were put together in only a few weeks, thanks to Twitter's ability to rapidly disseminate ideas and information. In April 2009, Amanda traveled to Ethiopia to witness and share the drilling of the first Twestival well and to raise awareness of charity: water's work and provide a behind-the-scenes look at clean drinking water issues.

Twestival continues on. See @twestival and www.twestival.com for more information.

charity: water (founded by Scott Harrison, @scottharrison) is one of the best-known charities with a presence on Twitter, largely because of a note Twitter founder Biz Stone (@biz) included in an August 2008 e-mailed newsletter. Internet luminaries such as Mashable.com founder Pete Cashmore and Facebook developer Dave Morin have hosted Twitter campaigns for donations. Just as Twestival planning was kicking off, Laura's own Christmas-and-birthday wish effort @wellwishes raised \$25,000 and placed charity: water and the concept of microgiving (donations were \$2 each and made directly through Twitter) onto TechCrunch, The Huffington Post, Mashable, Howard Lindzon's blog (@howardlindzon), and dozens of other old and new media outlets.

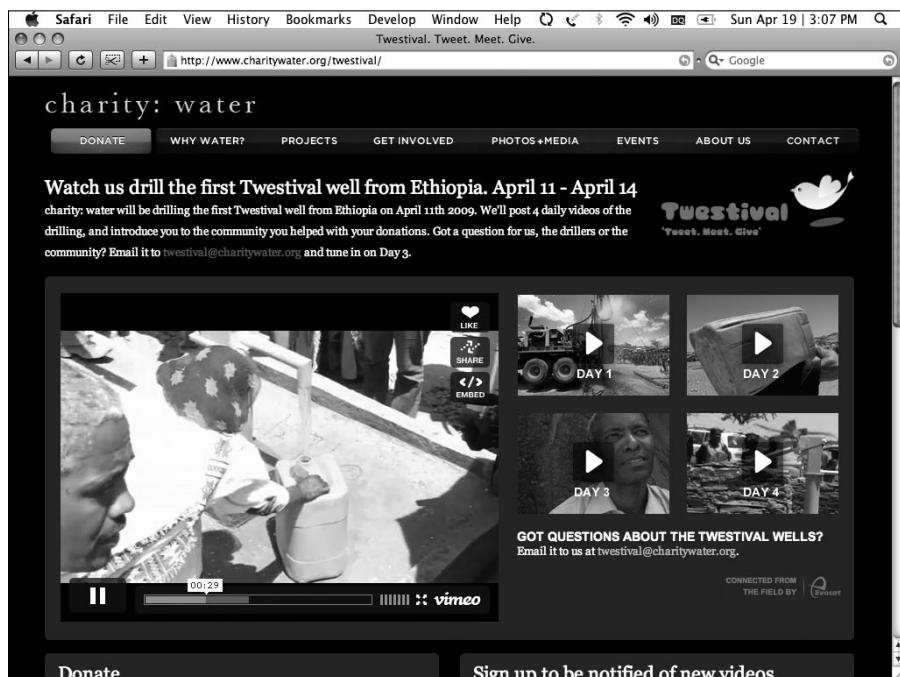


Figure 13-1:
Twestival
supports the
nonprofit
organization
charity:
water.

charity: water is not the only nonprofit to have benefited from Twitter's broad reach and influence. Social Media for Nonprofits guru Beth Kanter (@kanter) conducted the first Twitter-based charity fund drive we know of when she decided to send a young Cambodian woman to college with a little help from her friends. Beth's ongoing work usually benefits Cambodian orphans via The Sharing Foundation. Other twitterers donated money and gathered at a fundraising social event in Boston to help victims of domestic violence through Grardon Tripp's (@gradontripp) Social Media for Social Change (@SM4SC), shown in Figure 13-2.

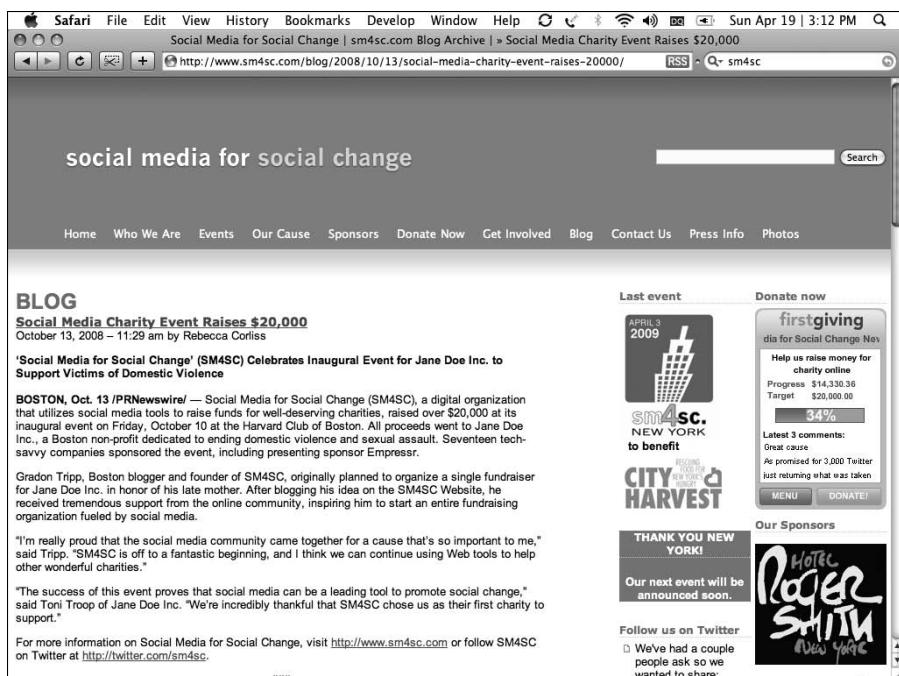


Figure 13-2:
@SM4SC
raises
\$20,000
for the
Jane Doe
foundation.

Politics

You can gauge the impact of an issue around the world by checking Twitter. During the 2008 United States elections, news junkies used Twitter to follow not just the issues, but also the sentiments of people from around the world: disillusionment with the administration of George W. Bush, the shortcomings of U.S. foreign policy, the rapidly deteriorating economic situation, and the rise of Barack Obama (@barackobama). In the weeks leading up to the election, Twitter even launched a page specifically for campaign-related tweets and worked closely with Al Gore's (@algore) company Current.TV on a video-text integration of tweets into their election-related broadcasts.

Twitter users began to follow and monitor politics in real time, bonding over some candidates, making fun of political gaffes and snafus, and overall creating a real-time political metric that instantly became a media favorite. Twitter users live-tweeted debates and stump speeches, and even less-active twitterers turned to the service to keep tabs on what was going on in the world of politics as it happened.

Staffers caught on to the fact that politicians can use Twitter to measure the buzz about them in real time. During the election, Barack Obama's team was in on the ground floor when it came to the use of Twitter as a publicity and organization tool, choosing the platform as an important way to interact with prospective voters.

The night of the U.S. presidential election, Twitter was nearly brought to its knees by millions and millions of shared concerns, excitement, questions, voting reports, and a massive buzz of connection around the events that were unfolding. Twitter's technological system took on massive traffic from all over the globe and managed not to crash, although there were time delays, especially in the SMS-to-Twitter message flow. It was amazing to share it all virtually with friends and loved ones from around the globe in real time on our phones and computers.

The reactions were varied, but no matter which side of the fence you were on, you were a part of the first, truly real-time, global reaction to a national election. Barack Obama's election victory was historic for twitterers, in more ways than one.

Twitter also helped people around the world aggregate their reactions from other social-media services. TwitPics, YouTube videos, Qik channels, Utterli and TalkShoe voice posts, and plenty of other services all fed into Twitter in a massive data stream that pretty much anyone around the world could access.

#iranelection

One of the most interesting evolutions in Twitter during 2009 was its real time use in times of unrest. As a mobile tool for immediate, portable, on the ground communication it has quickly become indispensable. One of the largest examples of this was its use during the Iranian elections.

As the elections moved forward and questionable practices were employed, Twitter users around the world began to see a trickle of tweets coming from inside Iran. These tweets, which grew exponentially in number, were being used by the Iranian citizens to keep the lines of communication open with the outside world as Iranian officials tried to silence their protests.

By tweeting the addresses of proxy servers, the locations of fallen or captive citizens, the areas of unrest and protest and violence, Iranians were able to bring to light the practices of an election that, from all appearances, was far from fair. People outside of Iran were able to help through the power of retweeting,

to use tweets to see if friends and family were still okay inside the country, to connect help to those who needed it, and to use Twitter's Locations feature to confuse the computer servers that were trying to track the Iranian people who were keeping the information flowing out of the country.

Twitter was so important to the Iranian protesters that the U.S. State Department requested that Twitter, Inc. hold off on a maintenance update that would have had a few hours of blackout during the Iran daytime.

In the end, the use of Twitter not only had the immediate benefit of keeping many safe, it also shone a light on an election that went against the citizen vote. The jury is still out on whether this created immediate change for Iran following the election, but it set a precedent of transparency and connection later employed in our own U.S. politics throughout the year, notably in the 2010 health care debate, leading up to and after the passing vote.

Natural disasters

Twitter has also caught on as an extremely important medium for natural-disaster reporting, such as hurricanes Gustav and Ike, wildfires and earthquakes in California, and the massive and tragic 2008 earthquake in China, as well as countless smaller hurricanes, earthquakes, volcanoes, and tornados. These days, with so many people using the service, news of major weather events often break on Twitter long before the mainstream media reports it.

You can use Twitter as a sort of tracking service for weather events and other surprises across the globe. Follow weather in real time while it moves from place to place, just by watching the tweets of people you follow.

Government agencies (see Figure 13-3) can find tremendous value by tapping into Twitter as a real-time system for sensing and signaling events around the globe. Because of Twitter's open application program interface (API), programs that use Twitter's search and trends data to help people survive and thrive in future disasters are only a matter of time.



Figure 13-3:
FEMA
embraces
Twitter.

Twitter has value to individuals beyond news reporting and storm tracking, too. Twitter users can also connect with far-off family, friends, and colleagues to check on their status after a major weather incident in their area. You can use Twitter as an immediate channel to get information about what's happening and, more importantly, do something about it.

Helping others

Using Twitter for social change goes beyond fundraising, though. People also use Twitter for some very unique problem-solving: Among the more unusual projects is one fronted by user @maratriangle, who has been on Twitter since its early days and uses the service to track and catch poachers in Africa (see Figure 13-4). With a standout avatar in a green beret, he has developed a network of Twitter users all over the globe who make sure no reports of poaching go unnoticed.

Figure 13-4:
@mara
triangle
makes
sure that
poachers
don't go
unnoticed.

The screenshot shows a Twitter profile for user @maratriangle. The profile picture is a black and white photo of a man wearing a green beret. The bio reads: "Three poachers arrested by Ngiro—are rangers in Kokamanga area." The timeline shows several tweets from April 17th:

- @iohn I think that might be the easiest. I've googled for answers but it seems no one has a solution. 4:24 AM Apr 17th from web
- I've just played around with the code – any difference? Or is there a website where I can simulate Explorer on XP? 4:09 AM Apr 17th from web
- Does anyone know how to fix it? So it's the same for all browsers? 4:06 AM Apr 17th from web
- Thank you. Trying to do some extra tweaking to make it look less jua kali. 5:49 AM Apr 17th from web
- Great thanks, does anyone know if wmode= transparent should fix it? Because it hasn't! 5:49 AM Apr 17th from web

The sidebar on the right shows the user's basic stats: Name (Joseph Kimojino), Location (Maasai Mara, Kenya), Web (http://www.maratr...), Bio (Wildlife protection in the Mara Triangle.), Updates (355), Favorites, Actions (block maratriangle), Following (a list of 20 small profile pictures), and an RSS feed link.

Twitter can effect real global change by facilitating data-sharing for professionals across borders. One teaching hospital tweeted during a live surgery to educate students who couldn't actually be at the surgery. Other people have suggested using Twitter to share medical and prescription data anonymously from doctors to pharmaceutical companies so that pharmaceutical firms can see in real time which prescriptions are being prescribed where. The ability to collect this type of data also has implications for disease tracking and outbreak control, though anyone trying this must tackle the obvious privacy issues before such a use could be considered.

Twitter certainly has lofty potential for global connections on a large scale. So, how can you use it yourself? Be patient. After you build a following on Twitter and become a respected member of a strong network, you can help rally others to a cause, or even get a hand when you need some help. Your Twitter network can help you relocate across town or across the globe, find a new job, reconnect with lost family members, and even research your history and genealogy.

In one dramatic example, the use of Twitter helped someone escape potentially dire circumstances. When James Karl Buck was arrested in Egypt, he immediately tweeted a single word: "Arrested". Instantly, his followers and colleagues were alerted to his situation and mobilized the help needed to secure his release. Read the story at www.cnn.com/2008/tech/04/25/twitter.buck.

Organizing People Online and in Real Life

Twitter makes organizing group activities both online and in real life easy. People have used Twitter to solicit volunteers for events, rally a group around a cause, push get-out-the-vote efforts, find speakers for conferences, scout locations for get-togethers, or just have impromptu *tweetups* (a term twitterers use to refer to spontaneous real-life meet-and-greets).



Twitter helps people take online interactions into the real world. As Twitter becomes more popular and enters the mainstream, however, Twitter users may want to exercise some basic common sense when meeting people offline for the first time. Make sure to meet in groups and in public places, and tell someone where you're going and with whom. While the vast majority of the people we've met on Twitter are trustworthy, we advise you not to make rash decisions about your safety.

You can use Twitter in such a wide variety of ways because of — you guessed it — how open-ended it is. Because Twitter doesn't have any forced rules of use, beyond common courtesy and a few guidelines about balance in followers (see <http://twitter.com/faq>), Twitter users can craft their own strategies for how to use it. You can read more about Twitter etiquette in Chapter 7 and security and safety in Chapter 10.

Perhaps the best example of Twitter's organizational power is Barack Obama's 2008 presidential campaign. The Obama campaign used Twitter in conjunction with other social-media tools to rally grassroots support. Representatives from Obama's team used the Twitter account @barackobama to post updates on the candidate's whereabouts, announce rallies and donation drives, and answer questions from ordinary twitterers. By using Twitter, the campaign helped to foster an idea of transparency and togetherness.

Even more interesting than Obama's use of Twitter was how his supporters used it. When Obama supporters on Twitter began to use their avatars and background images to display their support for him, the idea caught on and spread rapidly across Twitter. Twitter avatars changed to Obama-themed icons in solidarity to the cause; twitterers updated bios and tag lines; and people pointed their personal profile Web links to Obama's campaign site. For a service as simple and stripped-down as Twitter, Obama supporters certainly found creative ways to use it to show their affinity.

Now that Obama has been in office for some time, you can see an alternative organizational effort underway among conservatives on Twitter. Feeling underrepresented on Twitter, pugilistic, and calling themselves the Top Conservatives on Twitter, these individuals use the #tcot hashtag to represent themselves, and to stir support for their after-election goals and events (see Figure 13-5).

Organizing on Twitter does come with some risks. Because of the crowd mentality, Twitter opinion can turn on a dime. Everything discussed on Twitter is so real-time and in the moment that something can be trendy one moment and passé the next. Take the time to set up some foundation work first — a Web site that has accurate information, a universal hashtag, and keyword tracking. Your potential attendees and volunteers will know that you mean business if you use such tools. As we go to press, infighting amongst the #tcot community has disabled some of the Web sites built to support and display their efforts, but you really can't own or stop a hashtag. It belongs to those who use it most.

Figure 13-5:
A #tcot
search,
showing
politically
conserva-
tive tweets.

Realtime results for **#tcot**

0.02 seconds

Newer ▾ Page 2 ▾ Older

rwlibrarian: @BarrackObama not a big fan but I'm glad you are not giving into this anti-West, anti-Semitic charade that is the UN racism conference **#tcot**
3 minutes ago from web · Reply · View Tweet

SusanHW: US to boycott Durban II, Cong. Black Caucus "deeply dismayed"
<http://tinyurl.com/d8cm6x> (expand) #44a **#tcot #lhirs #tbsr**
3 minutes ago from TweetDeck · Reply · View Tweet

dvd493: @gisher If you think the story of Noah is not true. How would you account for over 500 cultures having a story of a worldwide flood? **#tcot**
3 minutes ago from web · Reply · View Tweet · Show Conversation

joshbranson: @MaryBeth65 Easier said than done, of course, when any attempt to explain his policy gets you a right wing extremist label. **#tcot**
4 minutes ago from web · Reply · View Tweet · Show Conversation

MarkUrbin: RT @pir8gold: funny the left didn't like it when Bush increased the deficit, but it's OK that Obama increases 10 fold??? **#tcot #teaparty**
4 minutes ago from TweetDeck · Reply · View Tweet

americanandiges: THE DUMBTHT DEEPENS: "Shut down West Point, Annapolis, Air Force Academy, savings to expand ROTC scholarships." **#tcot** <http://bit.ly/MGLGQ> (expand)
4 minutes ago from BigTweet · Reply · View Tweet

Feed for this query
Twitter these results

Show tweets written in: Any Language

Trending topics:

- #asot400
- Susan Boyle
- JG Ballard
- Everton
- #herebeforeoprah
- #pusycatstlnd
- Earth Day
- Yankees
- Oprah
- Cochella

Nifty queries:

- cool filter:links
- "is down"
- movie :)
- "happy hour" near:SF
- #haiku
- "listening to"
- love OR hate
- flight :(

Organizing on a small scale

You can use Twitter to rally people around a cause at any level. We mention some bigger examples in the preceding section, such as Beth Kanter (see Figure 13-6), who once raised \$9,000 for The Sharing Foundation orphans in 90 minutes onstage and via Twitter during the Gnomedex technology conference, and Twestival nonprofit raising \$275,000 for charity: water. But what can you do in your own communities?

Even if your big idea is a local one, you can take advantage of Twitter to make it happen. Twitter empowers the user to locate and organize like-minded people online around a common goal or idea. If you need volunteers to fund-raise for your child's class trip or school supplies, you can probably find them through your Twitter network. If you want to start a book club, try using Twitter to find members.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Beth's Blog: How Nonprofits Can Use Social Media'. The title bar reads 'Safari File Edit View History Bookmarks Develop Window Help Sun Apr 19 | 3:37 PM RSS Google'. The main content area has a header 'Beth's Blog: How Nonprofits Can Use Social Media' with a subtitle 'A place to capture and share ideas, experiment with and exchange links and resources about the adoption challenges, strategy, and ROI of nonprofits and social media.' Below the header is a section titled 'Reflection and Analysis: Gnomedex Real-Time Social Fundraising Experiment'.

ONLINE

- Beth's Blog Network
- 30% repeat donors
- 10% friend of friend
- Back channel matching challenge
- 35% friend of a friend
- Influencers: donated b/c hear about it from influencer

OFFLINE

- Long Pitchfork
- 50% total donors gnomedex
- 30% of total \$
- Influence tweeted link
- beth kanter

Bottom Text: Click to see the larger image
My most recent experiment involved Twitter, fundraising, and an integrated offline component at the Gnomedex Conference in Seattle. I was able to raise \$2,657 to cover the costs of college tuition for Long Sopharath, an orphan in Cambodia in just 90 minutes. By the end of the conference, the total had climbed to \$3,774. I've been a little shell shocked for the past few days, but wanted to share this reflection and analysis of the Gnomedex fundraising experiment.

Figure 13-6:
Beth's
Blog is a
resource for
how non-
profits can
use social
media,
including
Twitter.

Organizing on Twitter does help serious causes, but it doesn't have to be all work and no play. You can use Twitter as a tool to organize whatever kind of group you want, including those on the lighter side of life. Food and spirits enthusiasts have been taking advantage of Twitter lately: A thriving foodie community, for example, socializes online and plans dinner parties, restaurant weeks, and other offline excursions to celebrate their passion for food. This community is both international and local, at the same time. They trade recipes and ingredients, solve cooking problems, and spread the word about new restaurants together (see Figure 13-7).

Banding together for creative purposes

If you want to drum up user-generated content for your company or clients, or use that content on a Web site or blog, then you can often find enthusiastic participants by reaching out via Twitter. Twitter users have banded together on creative projects of all sizes, some of which were started by corporate marketers. Tyson Foods uses Twitter and its blog to generate blog comments that trigger in-kind donations to food pantries. Marketer HubSpot often gathers people in the Boston area — both company employees and

outsiders — to “star” in musical videos about inbound marketing (a marketing strategy that encourages companies to get found by customers, contrasted with outbound marketing or pushing marketing onto customers) on YouTube, and they do it by rallying the troops on Twitter.

Creative content from Twitter is definitely not limited to commercial purposes. Twitter users have planned, written, and cast whole online *Webisodics* (television-style video series based online only) via the service. When they need to change a plot or scout a location, Twitter can come to the rescue, letting interested participants help the project in real time.

Do you need to organize an audio or music challenge, such as the RPM Challenge (www.rpmchallenge.com), shown in Figure 13-8? Twitter can help you do that, by allowing people to participate or express interest in your idea. Twitter is also a fantastic tool for collaborating on projects. You can find co-authors, lyricists, people who play various instruments, and more, just by shooting out a few strings of 140 characters into the Twitter universe.



Figure 13-7:
Planning
to eat food.
Mmm!

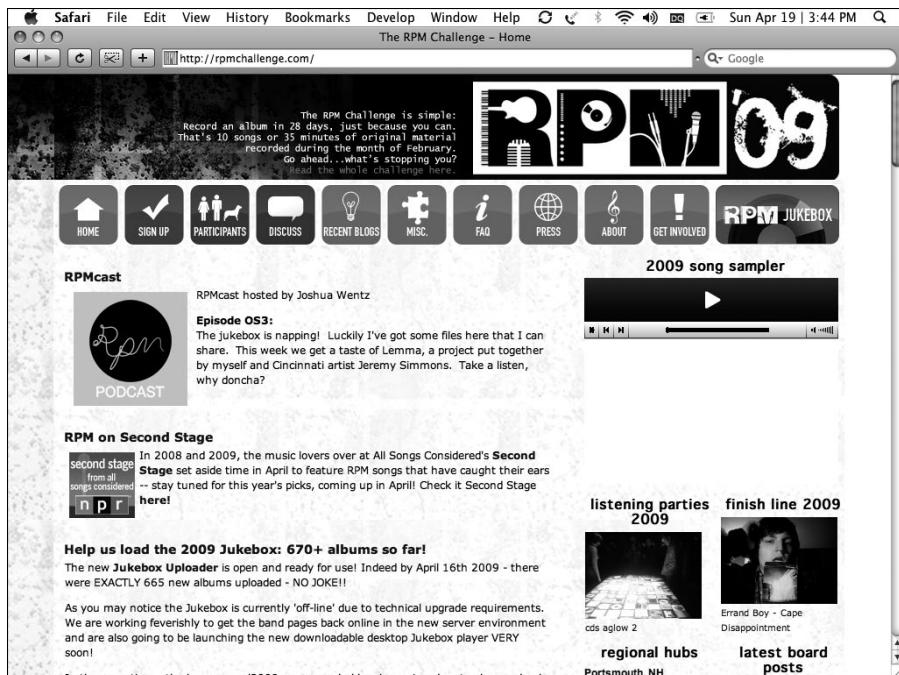


Figure 13-8:
The RPM
Challenge
Web site.

Planning an event

If you plan events — whether they're small, impromptu meet-ups or large weekend workshops or seminars — Twitter can help. You can use Twitter to find speakers, scout locations, score discounts, locate equipment, and drive attendance.

Here's how you can make the most of Twitter for your event:

1. Create a landing page.

Even though you're doing most of your organizing on Twitter, Twitter itself isn't feature-heavy enough to provide all of the information to your potential event-goers and volunteers. Make the landing page an off-site location for signing up, recording offers of help, and generating interest. Your landing page can be a blog, a Web site, or an event page on a site such as EventBrite, Amiando, or Upcoming. TwtVite is a relatively new event-planning site purposely built for Twitter that incorporates the Twitter avatars and profiles of those who sign up.

2. Choose a hashtag (keyword) for your event.

Take a minute to check [Hashtags.org](http://www.hashtags.org) (www.hashtags.org) or Twitter Search (<http://search.twitter.com>) to make sure that no one else is using that hashtag. A unique hashtag will eliminate confusion.

3. When your event landing page is ready, set up basic alert tracking for your event.

Several free services such as Google Alerts or BLVDStatus conversions (see Chapter 9) will meet your basic requirements.

You can also use a paid media monitoring service such as those offered by Radian6 (see Chapter 9) to track your event. When you need to decide what to track as your keyword, your hashtag is a great place to start. You can also track the venue, the theme, and other related keywords.

4. Now that you have laid the foundation for tracking interest and attendance to your event, start spreading the word!

Don't let talk of the event completely dominate your Twitter stream — you can lose followers that way — but make sure to highlight your event adequately. You can generate interest and allow the tweet to get legs and be retweeted (RTed).



If you're planning something larger than a simple two-hour tweetup, make sure to keep up with who has volunteered assistance, who signs up for the event, and venues that have offered help (see Figure 13-9).

The screenshot shows a web browser window for the TwtVite website. The URL is <http://twtvite.com/7m5ioh>. The page title is "twtvite :: Lowell Tweetup". The main content area displays the following information:

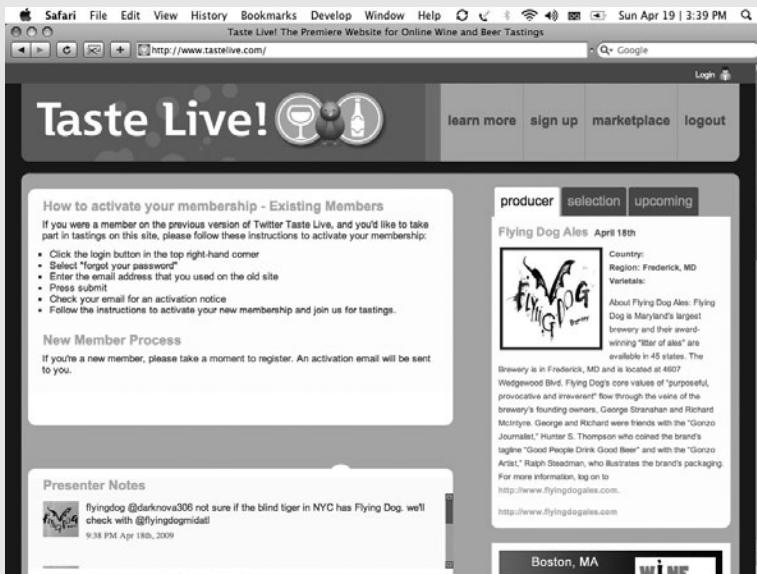
- Create a tweetup. Invite your tweepie!**
- Invite** (selected tab), **Who is going? (7)**, **Comments (0)**, **Tweets (9)**, **Embed**
- Another tweetup in the making.**
- @marketingprofs invites you to:**
Lowell Tweetup (#lowelltweetup)
- Great music & BBQ in downtown Lowell featuring the awesome @amyblack!**
- Where?** Village Smokehouse, 98 Middle Street, Lowell, MA
- When?** May 7, 2009 **What time?** 7:30 - 11pm
- Add to:** Outlook | Google | iCal | Yahoo!
- Will you join us?**
- This is a public event.** Click on the button to tweet your RSVP. You can add a personalized message after the URL.
- (Yes (5))**, **(Maybe (2))**, **(No (0))**
- Location:** Village Smokehouse, 98 Middle Street, Lowell, MA
- Share Options:** Re-tweet it, Share on FriendFeed, Add to Facebook, ShareThis

Figure 13-9:
A tweetup
in Lowell,
Massa-
chusetts, on
TwtVite.

Taste Live

Wine and spirits enthusiasts have caught on to using Twitter as a community platform, especially the international community of wine lovers that organizes virtual tastings and real-world events. If you turn to Twitter on most Saturday nights, you can catch a glimpse of the Twitter Taste Live phenomenon (#ttl).

This online event was started by Massachusetts wine shop Bin Ends Wines, and it has taken off as a concept all over the U.S. and abroad. The store didn't just stop with Twitter Taste Live online events, though: They tapped the power of their Twitter network to take it offline, as well as onto other social-media channels, such as Ustream.



Can you plan a full-blown conference by using Twitter as your main tool? Yes, you can! Planning a conference takes a little more finesse than a short tweetup or business function, but it's very doable.

If you do plan to go big by organizing a large event on Twitter, keep thorough records to help you manage all the tweets related to it. You can even use a free tool such as WebNotes (www.webnotes.net) or EverNote (<http://evernote.com>) to track what people have offered to do, who's coming, and other logistical issues. Coupled with your tracking methods, you may find planning a big event the 140-character way relatively painless.

Engaging in Citizen Journalism

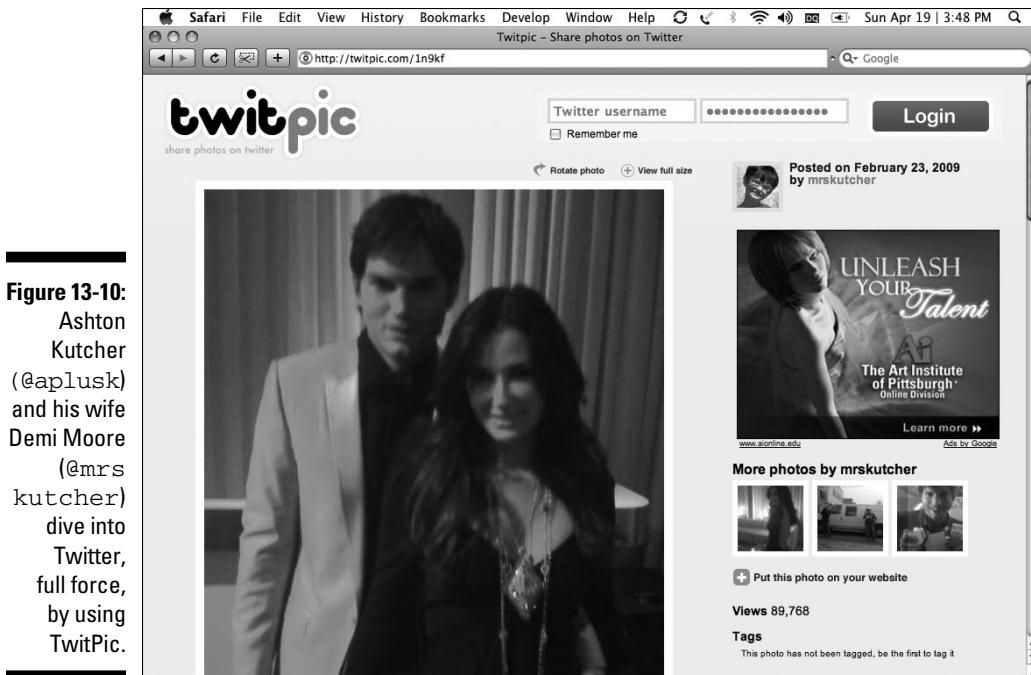
You may have first been turned onto Twitter by hearing about it in the mainstream media. News outlets such as CNN (@cnn, @cnnbrk) and popular shows such as *The Ellen Degeneres Show*, *The View*, and *The Oprah Winfrey Show* have all begun to incorporate Twitter and the global, real-time conversations it fosters into their on-screen time.

Twitter is cropping up in print media, too. Celebrities are adopting it as a way to beat the paparazzi at their own game and give their fans a more direct voice to listen to (see Figure 13-10). Musicians are tweeting to bypass regular radio and sell more music, as well as interact with more fans. Twitter is even making it into nontechnical print publications such as *The New York Times*.

Even before its exposure on mainstream media, Twitter had already become a natural outlet for the phenomenon known as *citizen journalism*. Thanks to service technologies like mobile phones and portable video cameras, real people can report on real events as they're unfolding.

Citizen journalism hits the mainstream

Mainstream media outlets have been turned on to the social-media craze, and CNN has been at the forefront with its *iReport initiative* (see Figure 13-11), which allows anyone to upload photos, videos, or stories to CNN's Web site; CNN then features some of those iReports on TV. Twitter is a big part of this phenomenon. We don't know whether CNN was the first national news outlet to embrace citizen journalism, but they were the first to embrace it so openly via Twitter. Now, thanks to Twitter; the CNN iReporter interface; and other technology, such as Pure Digital's popular Flip video camera and better phones with Twitter-friendly services (such as Qik), man-on-the-street reporting has become a reality — and an important part of 21st-century journalism.



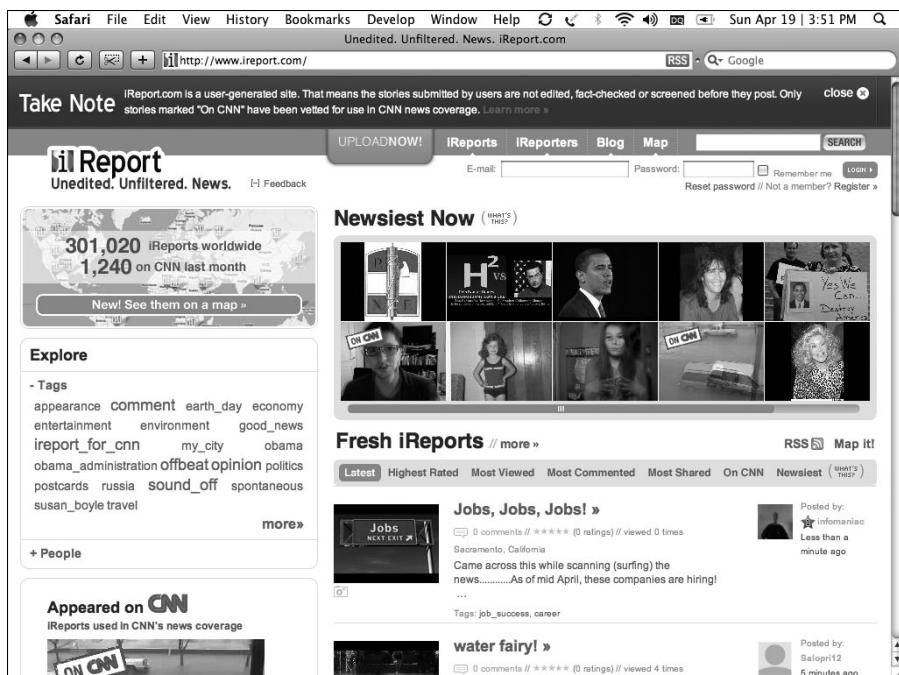
That man on the street can be any person who has access to computers, phones, cameras, video cameras, or audio recorders. Now, anyone can be the journalist, and Twitter brings that roving band of citizen reporters into sharp focus.

How does Twitter fit in? Twitter is the darling of the instant-gratification crowd, and it allows you to report events right away with no fact-checking at all, so do take everything you read with a grain of salt. If it's a story that's not being reported on by the major, respected media outlets, do a little fact-checking before you take it as the gospel truth.

Being a Twitter journalist

Twitter, like user-created encyclopedia Wikipedia, seems to be very good at self-policing. When a fraud starts making the rounds on Twitter, sharp-eyed users are quick to catch onto it and are just as quick in telling their friends and colleagues what's going on. Twitter users offer a kind of natural checks-and-balances system for the twitterverse.

Figure 13-11:
iReport and
citizen
journalism.



A January 2009 news event that highlighted Twitter's potential for citizens to act as journalists was the emergency landing of a plane in the Hudson River in New York City after a run-in with migrating birds led to the loss of both engines. Twitter users were arguably the first people to hear about it because eyewitnesses posted instant reactions.

Janis Krumms, @jkrums, a Twitter user on board a ferry that raced in to rescue passengers, took an incredible iPhone picture of the floating plane and the passengers being evacuated. He instantly posted it to Twitter (<http://twitter.com/jkrums/status/1121915133>) using a third-party service, which hosts photos and tweets a link to them on the user's Twitter account. The astonishing photo was retweeted and passed around Twitter so quickly that it hit international media outlets within minutes (see Figure 13-12). The Web traffic going to the photo was so overwhelming that TwitPic's servers temporarily went offline.

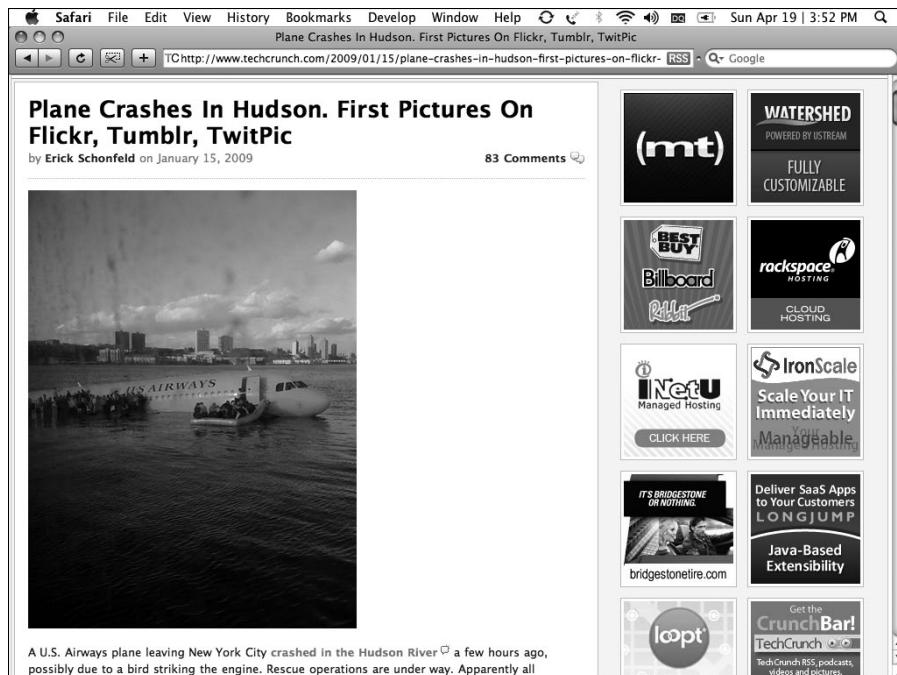


Figure 13-12:
Pictures
of the
plane that
landed in
the Hudson
River first
ended up
on Flickr,
Tumblr, and
TwitPic,
directed by
the Twitter
users who
took them.

Citizen journalists can do more than just observe — Twitter’s immediacy and portability (because of its availability on mobile devices) makes it possible for people to report during the moment, not just afterwards. During the November 2008 terrorist attacks in Mumbai, Twitter was used to pass word of a blood drive to help victims.

As a part of the citizen-journalism movement, Twitter is helping make the world safer for children. Recently, the number of Twitter-generated #AmberAlerts has risen, and several children have been reunited with their families because of the observations of regular people who cared and paid attention (see Figure 13-13).

Help Find My Child and other similar organizations have also been working on finding lost children through Twitter. Unlike the unofficial #AmberAlerts, which don’t come from a centralized source, @helpfindmychild is an organized international effort coordinated through one office to use Twitter to find missing children.

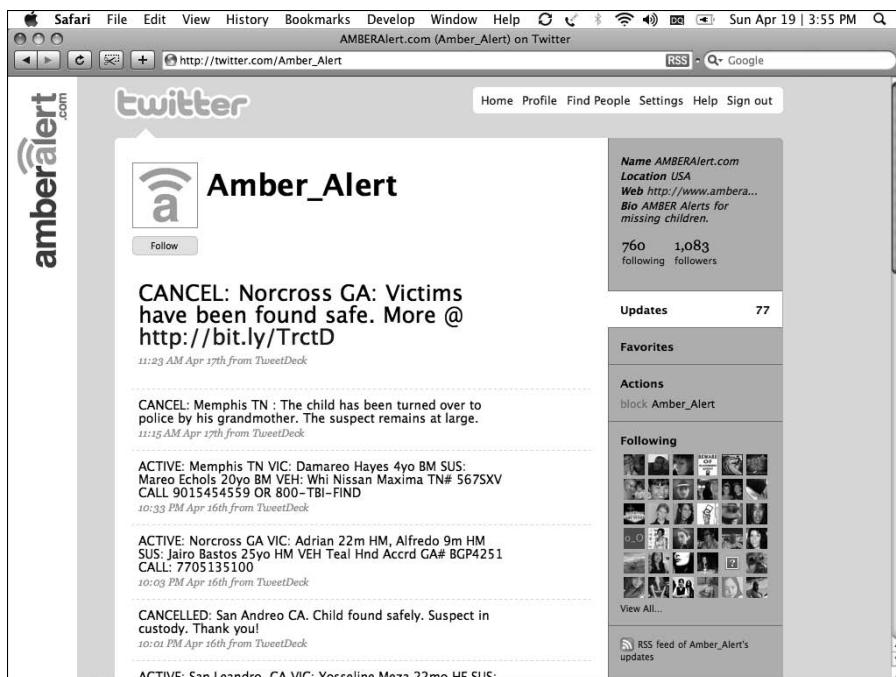


Figure 13-13:
Amber Alert
on Twitter
for missing
children.

Twitter and other forms of citizen journalism are changing the world for the better, but users need to fact-check, credit the proper sources, and flag those twitterers who are inaccurate or worse, deliberately misleading. While Twitter and the rise of the citizen journalist both augment and replace mainstream news, you must be vigilant and ensure that the news you're spreading is true.

Tweeting accurate info

How do you credit a source on Twitter or assure people that the news you tweet is accurate? As much as possible, offer proof that your news is valid. Here's how:

✓ **Include a link.** The most basic thing you can do is link to a reliable source or, if you can't verify, post the item as a question, asking others to share verification. The BBC learned this lesson the hard way when they posted an unverified rumor during the November 2008 Mumbai attacks. Their page said Twitter was the source but did not link to a tweet that would support or deny its validity. Once BBC had reported the rumor, subsequent tweets linked to the BBC page, and the rumor persisted, where most Twitter rumors tend to die out.

- ✓ **Create a companion blog.** In this blog, you have more space to credit the sources of your news. Link to that blog in your tweets. Make sure to go into your blog after you send your tweets and credit each story wherever possible.
- ✓ **Build a network based on trust and continued reliable information.** Not only should you make sure that the people you follow and associate with are trustworthy, but you should also be certain that the people in your network feel the same about you.
- ✓ **Don't underestimate the power of the retweet.** The retweet (where one of your followers repeats your tweet for the benefit of her own followers) is critical to networking and viral spread. Retweets of your posts give them a level of validity because retweets prove what you say is worth repeating. Most third-party Twitter clients have built-in buttons next to each tweet in your stream that let you easily set them up for a retweet, just like Twitter.com and its official mobile apps.
- ✓ **If you retweet, try to credit the original poster.** Sometimes when retweeting, the 140-character limit means that you have to take out names or letters to make the message fit. Always make sure that you leave the name of the tweeter you are retweeting to acknowledge your source. Twitter has added a feature that quotes the tweet verbatim, leaving you no way to comment. Twitter clients offer you a choice between the two retweeting methods, each of which have different applications depending on why you are sharing the other user's tweet and what you may want to add to it.

Gathering your journalistic tools

You can use these tools to prepare for your Twitter-inspired citizen-journalist moment:

- ✓ **A mobile phone that has a camera and/or video camera:** Most cell-phones have at least the former these days. And make sure that you have a cellular data plan so you can send your photos.
- ✓ **Qik:** A free Web application (www.qik.com) that lets you record short, live videos and broadcast them for free online. It posts a link to Twitter so that your followers can view the stream live, and even chat, and the video posts to YouTube, as well as to the Qik site. Two different videos of pro-Tibet protests made it to the world from the 2008 China Olympics because of Qik, even though both videographers were detained.
- ✓ **A Flip video camera:** A nice, affordable way to grab live video of an event while it happens, then post it to the Web. Pure Digital Technologies manufactures this video camera, but several other

electronics companies (such as Kodak) make similar, pocket-sized video cameras.

- ✓ **An account on a free photo-sharing service:** These services include TwitPic and Flickr, which accept mobile uploads for sharing your still photos.



If you ever take live video or pictures of people, it should be common sense to get their permission or, if circumstances don't require permission, to at least warn them that you plan to broadcast the images or post them online. Depending on where you are, it may be illegal to post those images without the subjects' permission. If you intend to capture video or pictures for distribution online with regularity, consult a legal professional.

Part V

The Part of Tens

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

©

RICH TENNANT



"I'd just like to announce to all of you who've been following me around—I now have a Twitter account!"

In this part . . .

Like every *For Dummies* book, we include The Part of Tens in *Twitter For Dummies*. In this part, we highlight neat tools, services, and uses for Twitter that you may want to check out while you're tweeting away.

Chapter 14

Ten Twitter Tools

In This Chapter

- ▶ Organizing your Twitter world with the right applications
- ▶ Getting down to business with the help of Twitter tools
- ▶ Connecting your Twitter account to your other online accounts

T

You need the right tools to get the most out of Twitter. New tools, services, Web sites, and applications are created for Twitter users every day, so the list of tools that you can choose from is always growing. To help get you started, we want to tell you about a few of our favorite examples, which give you a fun sampling that will give you some sense of different ways you can use Twitter.



Each time we tried to come up with a list of the top ten tools, we realized it's just not possible — too many great innovations are being built on Twitter's "platform." What is the best tool for you really depends on your needs, and, of course, popular new tools emerge all the time. Literally, because of this problem, we've compiled a list of tools at Laura's oneforty.com at <http://oneforty.com/i/toolkits>. The following tools are the best that we find right now, but that might change by the time the book goes to print. So, check out oneforty.com for the latest and greatest.

TweetDeck: Connecting with Many

www.tweetdeck.com

Type: Desktop client

TweetDeck is an Adobe Air application that gives you the tools you need to keep track of large numbers of people in your Twitter stream. (For more on Adobe Air, see Chapter 9.) It allows you to put people in groups, keep permanent search windows open, view your Facebook account (and post to it selectively, as well), keep track of who's talking to you or about you, and much more. It does all this in a customizable interface.

Six essential types of tools

The Twitter ecosystem is really complex. It can be overwhelming. A shortcut to make sense of it is to think about six essential types of tools that most any tweeter should try. We also include some of the best examples for each:

- ✓ **Networking (Twellow, FriendorFollow):** Your network is *the* most important thing about Twitter, but tools to find, follow, and keep track of your connections aren't that great yet. For now, we have directories.
- ✓ **Desktop client (TweetDeck & Seesmic Desktop):** Dedicated software on your computer that makes interacting with Twitter easier.
- ✓ **Smartphone client (Tweetie/iPhone, TwitterBerry/BlackBerry, PocketTwit/Windows Mobile):** Dedicated software

on your phone that makes interacting with Twitter easier.

- ✓ **Search and listening (Twitter Search):** Search tweets in real time, monitor keywords and hashtags, and subscribe to search results.
- ✓ **URL shortener (bit.ly):** Make links fit into 140 characters, keep track of what you've linked to, and preferably, keep some kind of records of how many people clicked, repeated, or also shortened the link.
- ✓ **Multimedia sharing (TwitPic, Qik, Last.fm, Utterli):** Embed and share links to photos, video, or audio, to make your Twitter stream a whole lot more than a bunch of text.



Recent contender to the throne is Tweetie for Mac OS X (www.atebits.com/tweetie-mac). Tweetie used to also be an iPhone app, however it was acquired by Twitter, Inc., and has since become the official iPhone mobile Twitter app.

Seesmic Desktop: Managing Multiple Accounts

www.twhirl.org

Type: Desktop client

Twhirl is owned by Seesmic, a video messaging company that has fully integrated its video service into the new desktop application for Twhirl. Twhirl is missing a few key features for managing (and listening to) many followers, but it makes up for its shortcoming in the ability to have multiple accounts open at the same time.

Also available from Seesmic is Seesmic Desktop, (http://seesmic.com/seesmic_desktop) which offers a great deal of functionality beyond Twhirl and beyond Twitter.com



Twhirl offers ways to interact with some of your other favorite social services, such as identi.ca (<http://identi.ca>) or 12Seconds (<http://12seconds.tv>), Facebook (www.facebook.com), and FriendFeed (<http://friendfeed.com>), for example.

CoTweet: Corporate Tweeting

<https://cotweet.com>

Type: Business dashboard

If you want a corporate solution that lets multiple users monitor and update a single account and displays all of your Twitter accounts in a single interface, you should look at CoTweet. Like the social media listening tool Radian6, CoTweet lets companies assign individual tweets to employees for follow-up. Still in *beta* (meaning that new features and functions are being added all the time), this service is hit or miss on features, but the planned feature set should take care of most of your company or organization's Twitter needs, from keeping organized and letting more than one person maintain an account to scheduling tweets ahead of time.



Make sure that you have full disclosure in your profile somewhere if you have multiple people tweeting for your company or you have a ghost tweeter tweeting for you. For shared accounts, authors usually sign the end of their tweets with an ^ and their initials.

Smartphone Clients Twitter, PocketTwit, and TwitterBerry

<http://code.google.com/p/pocketwit>
<http://blackberry.com/twitter>

Type: Smartphone clients

If you have a mobile phone, you may have trouble finding the perfect Twitter client. Even more frustrating, all carriers use different browsers and standards,

making it impossible to find one client to fit all phones. Here are some of our favorites for each platform:

- ✓ **Twitter:** If you have an iPhone, the official Twitter iPhone app (previously called Tweetie 2) is the way to go. It's like having TweetDeck on your phone, in a slick iPhone interface. It also has a companion desktop client — an added bonus. (We talk about TweetDeck in the section "TweetDeck: Connecting with Many," earlier in this chapter.) Find it in the iTunes App store on your Apple device.
- ✓ **PocketTwit:** For Windows Mobile phones that have touch screens, PocketTwit is made by Google Labs and offers several nice features, multiple-account management, and a nifty, avatar-included interface.
- ✓ **TwitDroid:** For Android phones, the best client out there, as of April 1, 2010. (And that's not an April Fool's joke.)
- ✓ **Twitter for BlackBerry:** The folks at RIM have cooked up their own Twitter application for BlackBerry handsets. Though there are other options on the market for the BlackBerry, for the most pure Twitter experience, try the one by RIM.



Check your carrier's data and text charges before using these services. Twitter may be free, but some of the attached services may come with hidden costs for use if your phone is not already on unlimited data.

Twellow: Finding People to Follow

www.twellow.com

Type: Networking

Many directory sites have come and gone, but Twellow was the first. It doesn't have the sexiest interface, but it has a fantastic database of easily searchable, accurate information about people, companies, and categories.



Use more than one solution to find followers if you want to get a more interesting and beneficial demographic.

FriendorFollow: Managing Followers and Followings

<http://friendorfollow.com>

Type: Networking

This Web site lets you see whom you're following, who's following you, and which follows are mutual — all in a nicely tabbed, avatar-based grid. And you can fix any follower/following discrepancies right from the site interface.



Don't unfollow people just because they don't follow you back. Twitter doesn't require you to follow someone back, and you never know whether that user might have just missed you. Try saying hi with an @reply to see whether you can get to know that person better.

TwtVite: Event Planning

<http://twtvite.com>

Type: Miscellaneous

This quick and easy Web site lets people tweet out their RSVP to your event. It then keeps track of who has RSVPed for you. This service offers the added bonus of marketing before the event while people tweet about their attendance.



Also make an EventBrite (www.eventbrite.com) or Facebook Event (www.facebook.com/apps/application.php?id=2344061033) page to make sure that you're giving people a way to connect if they don't use Twitter yet.

It's worth mentioning that TwtVite parent www.TwtApps.com also offers eight more helpful and nicely integrated Twitter tools covering polls, jobs, greetings, travel, business, and even virtual pets.

Twitterfeed: Getting Your Blog Posts to Twitter

<http://twitterfeed.com>

Type: Publishing

This handy service lets you schedule periodic scrapes of your blog for new posts, and then link these blog bits up on Twitter. Twitterfeed gives you a simple and easy way to drive traffic to your site or alert friends to a new post without having to remember to do it separately.



Set Twitterfeed to check your blog only every few hours to prevent your Twitter stream from seeming spammy.

TwitPic and YFrog

www.twitpic.com / yfrog.com

Type: Multimedia sharing

TwitPic and YFrog are popular image-sharing services for Twitter. Users can upload photos via camera or mobile phone and then share those photos on Twitter. You can also add comments on the pictures themselves.

Xpenser: Keeping Track of Your Expenses

<http://xpenser.com>

Type: Financial

Xpenser is a neat tool that integrates with sites such as FreshBooks (www.freshbooks.com) and applications such as Quicken to help you keep track of your business and personal expenses on the go. After configuring your account, simply send a direct (private) message to xpn to keep track of your spending. Now, reporting your business lunch or tracking your gas mileage is only a tweet away.



You can use Xpenser to get yourself in the habit of recording your expenses. Because the updates are made via direct message, you don't have to worry about your followers seeing the information.

Chapter 15

Ten Useful Twitter-Based Services

In This Chapter

- ▶ Staying in touch with the world through Twitter services
 - ▶ Organizing your Twitter life
 - ▶ Keeping up with the folks on Twitter
-

With events like the Hudson River plane crash, and Demi Moore, Ashton Kutcher, and Oprah coming to Twitter, buzz about the service is making Twitter go mainstream fast. Because of that, many businesses, causes, and people are creating Twitter-based presences, and hundreds of innovative Twitter-based services are emerging to support that. Some have separate Web sites, and some you just use directly through Twitter. In no particular order, here are ten that stand out because of their usefulness and overall appeal to Twitter audiences.

BreakingNews

`@BreakingNews http://www.bnnews.com`

Type: News. This simple feed gives you ongoing breaking news from around the world. Actual humans maintain and update it, not an automatic RSS feed. It has a good track record of beating many of the major news outlets for breaking news — and it has a good track record for accuracy, as well.

StockTwits

`@StockTwits http://www.stocktwits.com`

Type: Financial. Cofounded by Howard Lindzon, best known for mashing up Wall Street with video podcasting to create the highly successful WallStrip,

StockTwits plays off the fact that investors who tweet like to tweet about stocks. StockTwits is essentially a community and social exchange of snippets of conversation about stocks, using Twitter as the conversation medium at its core. You can use StockTwits at its Web site, by following @stocktwits, or by using the TweetDeck plug-in.

Tweecious: Use Delicious to Organize the Links You Tweet

<http://friedcell.net/tweecious/get>

Type: Publishing. If you post links to Delicious (<http://delicious.com>; a social bookmarking service that allows you to share links with your friends), this little tool makes it easy for you. Now, your posts to Twitter that include links can also automagically go to Delicious. Tweecious even looks at the rest of the tweet and automatically tags the link with relevant categories or keywords. Once you have a Delicious account, Tweecious takes only a moment to set up, and it even reads shortened URLs and extracts the original link.



People who like to keep track of a variety of Web pages and tend to lose them on Twitter may find this tool very handy.

Tweetworks

@Tweetworks or www.tweetworks.com

Type: Social threading and conversation tracking. This service, a creation of Mike Langford (@mikelangford) helps you track your Twitter use by group or thread, online or on your iPhone with the use of public or private groups.



Tweetworks allows you to engage in fully threaded conversations, join and create groups on any topic imaginable, and share media with single-click tagging.

ExecTweets

www.execweet.com

Type: Networking. Like millions of other people, Laura pretty much laughed at Twitter when she first heard about it. Turns out that's pretty normal. But what made the difference for her was noticing that she could use it to

surround herself with successful, interesting people who would motivate her as a homebound working mom.

Nowadays, we have ExecTweets to let you easily follow the tweets of some of the world's smartest, most successful executives. Richard Branson? Check. Jack Welch? Check. Dive in and find inspiration, leadership, ideas, and resources from some of the brightest business minds in the world.

TweetGrid

www.tweetgrid.com

Type: Search Utility. TweetGrid is a powerful Twitter Search Dashboard that allows you to search for up to 9 different topics, events, conversations, hashtags, phrases, people, groups, etc., in real-time. As new tweets are created, they are automatically updated in the grid with no need to refresh the page.

TweetGrid supports Boolean Search Operators and other advanced search techniques. An example: **Boolean Operator AND**

If two or more words are specified in the search, “AND” is assumed, meaning you do not need to type “AND” into the search. The search results will include all of the search terms by default. However, if you wish, you may still type **AND** (in all capital letters) between search terms.

Link Bunch

<http://linkbun.ch>

Type: URL shortener. In Chapter 7, we discuss that you can use Twitter to link to one URL, but Link Bunch offers a URL shortener for bundles of links. It takes several links and shortens them into one minimal URL that people can click to access the links. When the user clicks the Link Bunch link, he's taken to a page where he sees all the links you bunched together and can click on whichever ones he's interested in.

Tweetree

www.tweettree.com

Type: Reading. This little service threads your tweets into a tree, which includes inline links, videos, and other files. If you think the Adobe Air application that you use to view Twitter leaves your stream looking cluttered, or if you have a hard time following conversational “threads” back and forth, Tweetree might be your answer to making your Twitter conversations easier to read.

TwitterGrader

<http://twitter.grader.com>

Type: Directory. This Twitter-based service ranks you using a secret formula developed by its creators at HubSpot. The system takes into account not only how many followers you have, but how you converse and engage, who follows, talks to, and retweets you, who you follow, and more. Your TwitterGrade of ## is a percentile, claiming that you are more, well, gradeable, than ##% of other tweeterers. The service helps you see how you measure up to other tweeters around the Web and specifically in your area, and helps you find people whom you may want to follow because they mesh well with your ranking, interests, and location. Ultimately the grade doesn’t mean a whole lot, but it will definitely show you who is active in your area.

Blip.fm

<http://blip.fm>

Type: Multimedia sharing. You can use this Twitter-based music service to DJ songs onto Twitter. It has an outstanding database of songs, and the service allows you to make mixes for your Twitter following.

Chapter 16

Ten Cool Ways to Use Twitter

In This Chapter

- ▶ Making education fun and accessible
 - ▶ Getting a planned event up and running
-

You can use Twitter for much more than keeping up with your friends and family. Track your expenses, get your latest homework assignment, get restaurant reviews or recommended wines. . . . The possibilities are endless and expanding every day. In this chapter, we introduce you to ten cool ways you can use Twitter.

Plain Old Networking

Twitter is an extremely powerful networking tool for several reasons. As contrived as it is when you think about it, in practice, Twitter actually mimics the natural process of how humans get to know one another. People don't like demanding, confrontational, face-to-face interaction; they prefer side-by-side, random interaction around gradually discovering the things they have in common. Routine, random, low-level interactions weave the fabric of community that builds trust and holds us all together. Twitter also creates an environment of random interactions that's really conducive to discovering new people with shared interests and for getting to know a more total picture of who someone is and what interests them.

On a strictly utilitarian basis, just being able to forge an electronic connection using something as short and simple as a Twitter handle is incredibly powerful, especially since you can make that connection via mobile phone right when you first meet. Since October 2007, Laura has barely used business cards at all. It's so much simpler for her to connect to the person she's just met on Twitter by sending **f username** as a text message to 40404. It leaves an easy breadcrumb trail back to someone she's chatted with and sets the stage for gradually getting to know more about them — or not — over time.

Breaking News

Twitter continues to grow as a resource for breaking news. Events like the recent earthquake in China, terrorist attacks in Mumbai, or the Hudson River emergency landing in January 2009 all broke first on Twitter and were then picked up by the mainstream broadcast media. Journalists and media organizations, along with consumers, now look to Twitter as a legitimate source for news.



Sourcing standards for journalism still apply, of course, and you can easily lose what really has happened until a definitive account is posted on a major news site, such as *The New York Times* or CNN.

CNN, in fact, is now one of the top Twitter accounts, at least by following. Anchors have integrated Twitter into their on-air shows, and @CNNBrk competed with Ashton Kutcher (@APlusK) to be the first on Twitter to get a million followers. (Ashton won, by the way, and donated 20,000 malaria nets to charity.)

Travel

Airlines, trains, car companies, and more all use Twitter to keep their corporate finger on the pulse of a lot more than just brand perception. Some airlines, like Southwest (@SouthwestAir), have taken it one step further and use Twitter to track flow at various airports, monitor problems in real time, report delays, and so on.

You can connect with many travel-focused companies using Twitter. If you lose a bag or are experiencing flight delays, some airlines, like JetBlue (@JetBlue), are trying to reach out and help customers through Twitter. You can even find cab companies on Twitter that offer more innovative ways to find a ride once you're on the ground, especially if you have an iPhone.

Finance

As new Web applications like StockTwits, Xpenser, and more crop up to help you manage your money, Twitter has become a more viable method to track spending. Add in helpful financial advice from your fellow Twitter users, and you can see how Twitter might become a genuine force in the financial world.

Food, Wine, and Spirits

Yelp, Chowhound, food blogs, and endless Web sites that aggregate reviews or impressions of the restaurant industry are on Twitter. They're looking to consumers, many of whom are sharing thoughts on where and what they're eating in real time, right from the mobile phone.



If you're wondering about a specific restaurant, increasingly you'll be able to search for the name and see what people are saying about it.

Wine lovers have found a whole new world for their passion for the grape on Twitter. Whether it's Twitter Taste Live (#TTL) by Bin Ends Wine (@binends_wine), live streaming of tastings from personalities like Gary Vaynerchuck (@GaryVee), or just on-the-fly commentary about what and where people are drinking, Twitter is bridging serious gaps in the wine industry. More people are discovering wine or spirits that they might not have encountered before, thanks to the real-time recommendations of Twitter friends.

Books

Authors and readers alike have discovered new books to read and recommended books to others on Twitter. Famous writers, such as Neil Gaiman (@NeilHimself) or Paulo Coelho (@PauloCoelho), actively engage fans around the world. Some authors have been able to land publishing deals through Twitter. Others release serials, one chapter at a time on Twitter. One service, 140Story, actually uses tweets to write stories.

However you look at it, Twitter is full of readers. When you start listening, you'll find book clubs, writing groups, and more. And when you begin contributing, you'll often discover a phenomenal amount of instant connection and support available on both sides of the pen through Twitter.

Music

Musicians, both signed and unsigned, are finding Twitter an effective tool to build a fan base, connect more deeply to fans, and get the word out about their music. John Mayer (@JohnCMayer), Dave Matthews (@DaveJMatthews), Britney Spears (@BritneySpears), and P. Diddy (@iamdiddy) are among the most famous musicians twittering, but thousands of recording artists at all

levels are making innovative use of it, including Twitter veterans Matthew Ebel (@MatthewEbel) and Samantha Murphy (@thehighwaygirl).

Fans find Twitter a great place to discover new music, as well — especially with tools such as Blip.fm around. (Blip.fm allows you to share your favorite songs with your followers on Twitter.)

Education

Teachers are starting to tweet their lessons. Students are tweeting questions about their homework. Schools are using Twitter to communicate with their communities, quickly getting out information and cutting down on the cost of mailings. Conference attendees share insights and links from the conference, creating a virtual community for remote colleagues. Classes with a Twitter-fueled *back channel* (ideas, observations, questions, and comments coming from the audience) have been taught at colleges and universities around the world, including the esteemed Harvard Business and Law Schools.

Charities and Causes

Charities and causes find Twitter an easy way to get word out about their passions. You can even use Twitter to give microdonations to your favorite charity. The charity Social Media for Social Change (@SM4SC) exists only because of people who came together on Twitter. People use Twitter to raise awareness and money for a wide variety of international causes and charities. The ease of use makes it appealing to many agencies and groups.

Event Planning

The immediacy and reach Twitter allows can really help you get your next conference, party, or social-networking event off the ground. You can find everything you need, right in your Twitter stream. You can manage events on Facebook using a custom application within the platform, pulling tweets right into the launch page. You can even update both at once with TweetDeck or Seesmic Desktop. Twitter is also integrated with other event planning Web sites, such as EventBrite, allowing attendees to find and follow each other before and after the event itself.

Glossary

AFAIK: Abbreviation of As Far as I Know.

bot: An account run by an automated program. You can find good bots, such as the ones that pull in all breaking news headlines from a media outlet. But you also can find bad bots, which put out only generic tweets, usually filled with links to Internet marketing sites or porn. You can often spot these bots by a generic “hot chick” avatar or their uneven follower/following ratio (meaning that they’re following hundreds or thousands of people but have only a few following them back).

DIAF: Abbreviation of Die in a Fire; expresses extreme anger with a person or about an idea.

direct messages: Private messages sent to specific Twitter users in your network (abbreviated DMs).

dweet: A tweet sent while under the influence. Drunken tweeting can be amusing for your Twitter stream, but it can have lasting consequences for you because Google indexes all tweets. Be careful with dweeting!

early adopter: The enthusiastic people, often closely tied to the Silicon Valley digital-media community, who tend to be the first to use a new gadget or technology. Twitter’s early adopters, for example, are the ones who joined before or during the SXSW (South by Southwest) conference in March 2007, when Twitter made its first big splash.

FailWhale: The image of a cartoon whale that appears when you try to load a page on the Twitter.com domain when the domain’s servers are overloaded. In Twitter’s early days, the tiny startup was known for unreliability because its rapid growth had outpaced its server power. Back then, the FailWhale made an appearance as often as several times a day, and many Twitter users casually use the expression FailWhale to show disapproval of anything on or off Twitter that isn’t working properly. But don’t get too worried: The days of the FailWhale’s rampant appearances on Twitter have been over for months.

FTL: Abbreviation of For the Loss. The opposite of FTW, FTL is a quick way to show disappointment or dissatisfaction.

FTW: Abbreviation of For the Win; a quick way to show appreciation or enthusiasm. The term comes from gamer and hacker speak. Many of the shorthand abbreviations on Twitter have their roots in the vernacular that arose in video games, hacker forums, or instant-message programs as far back as the 1980s.

FWIW: Abbreviation of For What It's Worth.

hashtag: Words preceded by the # symbol. Basically, hashtags flag something as a keyword for searches. They're surprisingly powerful, as real-time (but virtual) events, and even communities can (and do) form around them. At the time of writing, #journchat is a community of PR pros and journalists who discuss their trade every Monday evening.

IMO or IMHO: Abbreviations for In My Opinion or In My Humble Opinion.

metrics: A way to measure what the service means for business and individuals as it relates to return on the time invested. Because Twitter has so many analytical applications built on its API, you can find tons of Twitter metrics out there.



After using Twitter for a little while, check out your Twitter grade at TwitterGrader.com (<http://twitter.grader.com>).

microsharing or microblogging: The niche of social media that encompasses Twitter. Other services — such as Jaiku, Pownce, and Plurk — have also specialized in microblogging, but none of them has achieved anywhere close to the following that Twitter has. Several microsharing services have already been shut down by their creators.

mistweet: A tweet that you send in error, either because you send it to the wrong person or you accidentally send a public tweet that you intended as a DM. Either way, it's a tweet you regret sending.

noise river: While you add more and more people to your Twitter stream, or if you turn on Show All @Replies (in your Twitter settings), you're going to see more and more tweets. You may have to put forth more effort to sift through to the good stuff. Twitter users who start to encounter this problem sometimes start to refer to their Twitter stream as the noise river.



OH: An abbreviation for overheard. Used to anonymously quote something funny that you heard, usually in real life. OHs look like this: "OH: 'Did somebody smell bacon? Because I sure did.'"

To see all tweets that are prefaced with OH, follow @overheard on Twitter.

@replies: Public tweets directed at specific people — anyone can see them and jump into the conversation. Also called @mentions. In your Twitter sidebar, it will be your username with an @ tacked on the front.

RT or R/T: Stands for retweet, Twitter's equivalent of quoting. If you come across a tweet that you want to quote, giving credit to the original user, type

RT at the start of a new tweet, put the twitterer's username in an @reply format, and copy the contents of the tweet. A retweet looks like this: "RT @ pistachio Boston - outdoor skating party this weekend, Sunday at 1pm. DM me if interested?" By putting RT at the front of the retweet, you also make sure that everyone can see your tweet because some members choose to turn off @replies that are not directed at them.



Keep in mind, however, that retweeting adds characters to a tweet and may force it over the 140-character limit. If that's the case, you might just want to link to it directly, instead. When prolific Twitter users put out a tweet that they want people in their network to retweet (for example, when they announce an event or charitable cause), many of them consciously keep it short to prevent that problem.

spammers: Spammers clutter up your Twitter stream (if you choose to follow them) and, just like with e-mail and other Internet tools, they send you useless content, usually trying to sell you something. Luckily, spamming on Twitter is hard because you don't have to follow anyone, and because Twitter works hard to remove accounts that are trying to take advantage of others and violating their terms of service (TOS).

tweeple or tweeps: Some Twitter users say tweeps to refer to the Twitter community overall, whereas others use it to refer only to those in their networks.

tweet: Either a noun or a verb. Your 140-character updates on Twitter are called tweets, and you can also say, "I tweeted."

tweetaholic or twitterholic: Someone who's addicted to Twitter. Many avid users toss this term about in a self-deprecating way if they find themselves using Twitter more often than seems normal. Also, the term *twitterholic* can refer to Twitterholic.com (<http://twitterholic.com>), a Twitter metrics application that measures the relative popularity of Twitter users.

tweetup: A pun on meet-up, tweetup refers to a gathering of Twitter users organized through Twitter. Tweetups can take many forms: a get-together for Twitter users who happen to be in the same town for a concert or festival, locals who want to try out a new restaurant or bar, or even a late-night meeting of karaoke enthusiasts.

twinfluence: Short for twitter influence. Can be based on criteria such as number of followers, how often they're retweeted, how many people @reply to them, or any other variety of metrics. An actual site at www.twinfluence.com that does social network analysis to approximate the influence of different Twitter accounts.

TwitPic: One of the most popular third-party applications built on Twitter's API. TwitPic lets you upload a photo, often from the camera on your cell-phone, to TwitPic (www.twitpic.com), which automatically sends a tweet that links to the picture and provides the caption of your choice.

twittcrastination: Using Twitter to procrastinate on a project or an unpleasant task.

twitter: Can be used as a verb ("I twitted that") but not a noun. **Note:** Don't say "twit" ("send a twit" is never correct, for example) because of that word's negative connotations in some parts of the world.

Twitter squatter: Much like a domain squatter on the rest of the Web, someone who claims the Twitter username that corresponds to a popular brand name or the name of a famous person, often in hopes of some kind of personal gain or monetary profit. Luckily, the guys behind Twitter deal with these people quickly if the person or brand in question wants that name back (William Shatner, Steve Wozniak, and others have been victims of squatters). You're also not allowed to *squat* on any account name without using it as an active account. New users can request (and frequently receive) usernames abandoned for more than six to nine months.

Twitter stream: The constantly updating and flowing timeline of everyone that you choose to follow on Twitter; also called a feed.

Twitterati: A pun on *literati* and *glitterati*, these are Twitter's perceived A-listers whom users want to follow or be followed by. It's a lot beside the point of Twitter, which is to connect to the people that interest *you* the most, not just the most popular. Fortunately, bona-fide celebrities are starting to tweet, and with time, this word won't mean very much.

twitterverse: The universe of people, tools, applications, and services on Twitter, meaning the entire Twitter community and ecosystem of other related things.

Index

Symbols and Numerics

@ (at sign), 24
... (ellipsis), 44
_ (underscore character), 24
12Seconds, 134
100TWT, 170

• A •

abbreviation, 107
abuse, 106
account
age requirement, 106
co-authored, 101
managing multiple, 256–257
signing up for, 19–21
Verified, 93–94
accurate information validation, 250
active research, 210
actor, 206
Adams, Ryan, 205
address, 193
Adobe Air, 148, 152
advanced searching, 78–79, 140–142
age requirement, 106
aggregate tweet, 101
aggregator, 112, 156–157
AIM (AOL Instant Messenger), 10
alert
Amber, 13, 249
conversion tracking, 165
Google, 163–165
use of Twitter, 13
Amazon Fail incident, 211
Amber Alert, 13, 249
American Idol, 208

Android, 71, 127, 153
annual report, 171
answer, 226–227
@anywhere platform, 67–68
AOL Instant Messenger (AIM), 10
API (application programming interface)
defined, 133
Open Twitter, 68, 71
revoking application permission, 135
security, 133
Apple, 207
Armstrong, Lance, 15, 98
Arrow icon, 45–46
artists, 204–206
at sign (@), 24
audience, identifying with
diversifying your network, 182
measuring influence, 183–185
targeting specific networks, 183
understanding of extended network,
185–186
viewing your network, 181–182
authentic tweet
being genuine, 190
importance of, 186
joining the conversation, 187
profile page authenticity, 188–189
sharing links, 187–188
voicing support for social causes/
charities, 190–191
author, 267
auto-tweet, 137
avatar
changing, 34
defined, 32
editing photo for, 33
thumbnail image, 34

• B •

back channel, 268
background
 customizing, 37
 free images for, 36
 logo as, 36
 pre-made, 35
 profile page, 35–36
 template, 37
 text, 36
 tiled image in, 35–36
backup, 134, 170
Backupify, 170
badge, 135–136
balance, mixing business with pleasure, 179–180
Baldwin, Micah, 81
bands, 204–206
Bearden, Jesse, 224
beta testing, 154, 257
Bing, 57–58
biography, 37
bit.ly, 155–157, 188
BlackBerry
 mobile clients for, 152
 Twitter applications for, 127
TwitterBerry, 69–70
as way of using Twitter, 68–69, 258
Blackbird, 127
blank slate, 23
Blip.fm, 205, 264
blog post, 132
Blogger, 10, 135
Blogline, 131
BLVDStatus, 164–165
BoinBlog, 37
book, 267
bookmark, 50–52. *See also* favorites
bot, 269
Branson, Richard, 263

breaking news, 229, 266
BreakingNews feed, 261
Brightidea, 16, 51
Brightkite, 229
Buck, James Karl, 238
BudURL, 155
Bush, George W., 234
business card, 31
Business Week, 198
businesses
 advancement through Twitter, 195–196
 band and artist promotion, 204–206
 building company relationships, 94–97
 caution of following company regulations
 of what to share, 178
 community-building, 207–209
 company updates, 206–207
 conducting research, 210
 confidential information of, 213
 connections, 197
 customer service, 200–201
 dashboard, 257
 employee use of Twitter, 212–213
 favorites use, 51
 in finance and budgeting, 96
 in food, drink, and nightlife, 95
 impacts on Twitter, 195
 importance of engagement, 197
 importance of listening, 197
 incentives, 199
 journalism, 198
 knowledge-sharing, 213–214
 large, 177
 listening to feedback, 199
 logo, 36
 managing presence on Twitter, 177
 mixing with personal interest, 179–181
 networking by, 202
 personal to business tweet ratio, 197
 PR practitioners, 198
 presentation, 213
 proactive, 212
 problems, admitting to, 211–212

profile page, 36
promotion and product offering, 203–204
public relations, 198–199
in publishing, 96
reaching out, 212
record keeping, 171
resort and hotel, 96
in retailing, 95
separate Twitter accounts for, 177
small, 177
social capital, 178
in tourism and travel, 96
trend toward transparency, 211–212
tweetup, 213
Twitter Bio section, 196
Twitter profile page, 196
use of Twitter, 14
usernames for, 25, 176
using Twitter to make business look good, 196–197

button
Create My Account, 21
Find Friends, 27
Find on Twitter, 30
Follow All, 27
Next Step, 22
Sign Up Now, 20
Byrne, John A., 198

• C •

Cameron, David, 97
CAPTCHA code, 21, 23
Cashmore, Pete, 233
cautions, 194
celebrity
following on Twitter, 98
impersonator, 99
use of Twitter, 13, 90, 98–99
cellphone
associating with Twitter, 38–40
as citizen journalism tool, 251

Java-enabled, 153
number, caution of posting on Twitter, 193
sending direct message by, 89
setting tweet quiet time, 39–40
setting up to receive tweet, 126–127
signing up for Twitter on, 22
turning tweet notifications on/off, 40
as way of using Twitter, 62–64, 68–69
ceTwit, 153
charities
microdonation, 268
social change initiative, 232–233
as Twitter-based event, 223
use of Twitter, 13
voicing support for, 190
charity: water, 232–233
children, lost children alert, 249
China earthquake, 266
church, use of Twitter, 13
citizen journalism
accurate information validation, 250
Amber Alerts, 249
engaging in, 245–246
Hudson River emergency
plane landing, 248
lost children alert, 249
mainstream media, 246–247
social change initiative, 245–251
tools for, 251
Cleese, John, 98
client
desktop, 147–150
mobile, 151–154
The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual, 201
Cloudlet, 161
CNN, 101, 246, 266
Coldplay, 98
color, 36
Color Wars, 159–160

Comcast
community-building, 209
use of Twitter, 95
using Twitter as strategy to customer service, 200

Comcast Cares account, 95

comedian, 206

commentary, 87

community efforts, 13

community leads, 81

community-building, 207–209

companion blog, 250

company. *See* businesses

company update, 206–207

computer crash, 170

confidential information, business, 213

connecting, as use of Twitter, 12

contacts. *See also* friends

- connecting with people, 217–219
- finding, 26–29
- finding by geographic location, 27
- importing, 26–27
- importing from e-mail account, 78
- inviting, 29–31, 79–80
- making new friend, 220–224
- meeting in public, 216

contest, 90

conversation, joining, 86

conversion tracking, 165

corporate tweeting, 257

CoTweet, 18, 189, 257

Cox, James, 101

crash, computer, 170

Create My Account button, 21

Creative Commons, 205

creative purpose organization, 238–239, 243

Current.TV, 234

customer query, 227
customer service, 200–201



Dalai Lama, 98

DanceJam, 204

dashboard, business, 257

data-sharing, 238

date, searching by, 142

deceptive activity, 106

Defren, Todd, 28

Degeneres, Ellen, 245

deleting tweet, 58

Delicious bookmarking service, 52, 112, 262

Dell computer, 14, 95, 200

desktop client

- about, 147–148
- list of apps, 148–150
- searching for, 150
- as way to use Twitter, 65

DIAF (Die in a Fire), 269

Diddy. P., 267

Digsby, 150–151

direct message. *See* DM

Direct Message page, 49–50

directory, 99–100

DISQUS, 202

DM (direct message)

- accidental sending as tweet, 50
- alternative to, 88
- compared to @replies, 48
- compared to tweet, 48
- defined, 41, 269
- length constraint, 88
- private notes via, 48–50
- @replies compared to, 48
- sending by cellphone, 89
- sending using Direct Message interface, 49–50

setting up to be sent to e-mail box, 128–129
 shorthand for sending, 88–89, 118
User Does Not Follow You
 error message, 55
 when to use, 89
domestic abuse, 233
donation, 13
Dorsey, Jack, 11, 17–18
downtime, 219
dweet, 269

• E •

early adopter, 269
earthquake, 236, 266
eBay, 67
Ebel, Matthew, 268
education, 268
Eliason, Frank, 95
ellipsis (...), 44
e-mail
 direct message sent to, 128–129
 importing contacts from, 78
 inviting people through, 79–80
 notifications, turning on, 55
 picking people from address book, 79–80
 signature line, 31
 third-party clients for Twitter, 129–130
 using Twitter through, 128–130
employee use of Twitter, 212–213
enthusiast, 13
etiquette, 87, 105–107
event planning, 243–245, 259, 268
EventBrite, 259
EverNote tool, 245
Everyone timeline, 52–53
ExecTweets, 14, 262–263
experts, accessing by using Twitter, 228
explicit language, 106
extroverted and introverted people, 92

• F •

Facebook, 67, 136, 156
Facebook Event, 259
fact checker, 228, 250
Fail Whale, 218–219, 269
Fallon, Jimmy, 98
favorites
 bookmarking tweet as, 84, 112
 business use, 51
 marking tweet as, 50–51
 shorthand code for sending, 119
 uses for, 51
 viewing favorites of others, 51
feature changes, 2
feed. *See update stream*
feed reader, 64–65
feedback, 199
FeedDemon, 131
Feltron, Nicholas, 171
FEMA, 236
finance and budgeting businesses, 96, 266
financial status, caution of posting on Twitter, 193
Find Friends button, 27
Find on Twitter button, 30
Find People link (Home screen), 42
finding contacts, 26–29
Firefox browser, 66
Flickr, 110, 156, 251
Flip video camera, 247, 251
Follow All button, 27
followers
 artificially increasing numbers of, 217
 encouraging more, 89–90
 figuring out who's following you, 55
 finding your, 168
 gaming, 217
 how to find, 82

identifying your audience, 181–185
listening to, 89–90
notification when lost, 171
patience in building network of, 217
User Does Not Follow You
 error message, 55
viewing your network, 181–182
FollowFriday, 81
following people
 cautions of following new people, 28
 creating your own criteria for, 76
 deciding to follow, 225–226
 finding people to follow, 75–82, 169–170
 finding users by location, 170
FollowFriday, 81
 how to follow, 83
 identifying with audience, 181–186
 importing contacts from
 e-mail account, 78
 joining the conversation, 187
 by networking, 168–169
 searching for people, 77–78
 by searching for them, 31
 seeing who you follow, 54–55
 shorthand for sending, 118–119
 targeting specific networks, 183
 tools for, 168–169
 using Hover feature, 83
food businesses, 95, 240, 267
FourSquare, 18, 115–116, 135
Frank, Ze, 159
freelancer, 202
FreshBooks, 260
FriendFeed, 112, 134, 156
FriendorFollow, 55, 168–169, 258–259
friends. *See also* contacts
 making new, 220–224
 searching for topics of interest with,
 221–222
 through tweetup, 222–224
FTL (For the Loss), 269
FTW (For the Win), 269
fundraising, 13. *See also* charities
FWIW (For What It's Worth), 270

• G •

gadget, 67
games, 159–161
gaming followers, 217
genuine, being, 89, 190, 199, 209
Get command, 121
GiftGirl, 204
Gimp image editor, 37
giveaway, 90
global change initiative, 231–235
Gmail, 64, 163
Google
 finding people to follow, 77
 searching specific tweet, 57–58
Google Alert, 163–165
Google Buzz, 157
Google Reader, 64, 131
Gore, Al, 97, 234
Greeley, Matthew, 16
Gustav hurricane, 236

• H •

Hammer, MC, 204–205
handle. *See* username
harassment, 106
Harpers, 101
Harrison, Scott, 223, 233
Harvard Business and Law School, 268
hashtag
 defined, 81, 145, 270
 event planning, 244
 pros and cons, 145
 results of search for, 145–146
 retweet, 132
 tips for creating, 147
Haslam, Doug, 201
health details, caution of posting on
 Twitter, 193
Heap, Imogen, 209
HelloTxt, 136
Help Find My Child organization, 249

Help link (Home screen), 42
helpfulness
 social change initiative, 237–238
 Twitter-based public relations, 199
Herzog, Ari, 51
hexadecimal color code, 36
history of Twitter, 11
Hodgman, John, 12
Home screen
 about, 41
 Find People link, 42
 Help link, 42
 Home link, 42
 illustrated, 41
 Profile link, 42
 Settings link, 42
 sidebar, 43–44
 Sign Out link, 42
 “What’s Happening?” box, 44
honesty, 209
HootSuite, 18
hot topic. *See* Trending Topics
hotel and resort business, 96
Hover feature, 83
Hsieh, Tony, 94, 203
HubSpot, 243
Hudson River emergency plane landing, 198, 248, 266
The Huffington Post, 233
hurricane, 236

• J •

identity, determining your, 175–177
iGoogle, 64
Ike hurricane, 236
IMHO (In My Humble Opinion), 270
IMO (In My Opinion), 270
impersonator, 99
importing contacts, 26–27
impromptu tweetup, 238

incentive, business, 199
indexing tweet, 52
information-sharing, 229–230
instant messaging, 10
IntenseDebate, 202
interesting, being, 90
interface, 61–62
Internet Explorer, 66
introverted and extroverted people, 92
Invite command, 122
inviting contacts, 29–31, 79–80
involved, being, 90
iPad, 152
iPhone
 mobile clients for, 152
 mobile Twitter site for, 127
 official iPhone Twitter client, 18
 Twitter applications for, 127
 as way of using Twitter, 68–69
Iranian election, 235
iReport initiative, 246–247
iTunes App Store, 68

• K •

Jackman, Hugh, 228
Java-enabled cellphone, 153
JetBlue
 customer flight information, 227
 presence on Twitter, 14
 promotion and product offering, 203–204
journalism
 by citizens, 245–251
 public relations, 198

• K •

Kanter, Beth, 191, 233, 240
keyword searching, 78
keyword tracking, 144

knowledge-sharing
in business, 213–214
caution, 230
giving up control, 229–230
Krums, Janis, 248
Kutcher, Ashton, 90, 98, 205,
210, 246, 266

• L •

Lady Gaga, 98
landing page, 243
Langford, Mike, 262
language
explicit, 106
language-specific account, 132
Twitter-speak words, 107
Leave command, 121
Levine, Rick (*The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual*), 201
Lifting the Dreamer (Lu), 218
Lindzon, Howard, 233, 261
link blog, 132
Link Bunch, 263
link spam, 199
LinkedIn, 136
links
inserting into tweet, 109–111
sharing, 187–188
shortened, 109–111
listening
for businesses, 197
to feedback, 199
importance of, 90
monitoring service for, 167
social media presence tools, 162–167
lists
adding users to, 113–114
assigning people to, 80
creating, 112–115
defined, 43
following/unfollowing, 114

private, 113
public, 113
themed, 113
viewing who has listed you, 58–59
as way of finding people to follow, 80–81
LocalTweeps, 170
location
finding users by, 170
searching by, 142
location-based tweet, 114–116
Locke, Christopher (*The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual*), 201
logo
as background, 36
Verified, 94
Lost, 208
Lu, Yiyi (Lifting the Dreamer), 218

• M •

Marvel Entertainment, 101
Mashable, 233
mash-up, 171
Mathews, Dave, 205, 267
Mayer, John, 13, 98, 205, 209, 267
McAfee, Andrew, 9
McCaskill, Claire, 90
measuring your reach, 183–185
media, use of Twitter, 101
meeting people in public, 216
meme, 160–161
mentions, 43, 46–47
metrics, 270
microblogging, 11, 203, 270
microdonation, 268
microgiving, 233
microsharing, 11, 270
Microsoft PowerPoint, 37

mistweet, 270
 mobile device. *See also cellphone*
 about, 151
 clients for, 152–154
 as way of using Twitter, 126
 monitoring service, 167
 Moore, Demi, 98, 246
 Morin, Dave, 233
 motivation, 2–3
 Mozilla Firefox Web browser, 66
 Mr. Tweet, 170
 multimedia sharing, 260
 Mumbai terrorist attack, 249, 266
 Murphy, Samantha, 268
 musician
 promoting bands and artists, 204–206
 use of Twitter, 13, 267–268
 MySpace, 135–136, 156

• N •

name. *See username*
 natural disaster, 236–237
 NetNewsWire, 131
 networking
 about, 168–169
 building-community versus, 208
 in businesses, 202
 diversifying your network, 182
 freelancer, 202
 identifying your audience, 181–182
 measuring influence, 183–185
 support system, 215–216
 targeting specific networks, 183
 understanding of extended
 network, 185–186
 as way to use Twitter, 265
 new features, 2, 101
The New York Times, 9, 67, 101,
 110, 246, 266
 The New Yorker, 101
 News Feed function, 157
 news story, 101, 229
 Newsgator, 131

Newsweek, 9
 Next Step button, 22
 noise river, 270
 Notices screen, 82
 Notkin, Melanie, 204
 NPR, 101
 nudge (shorthand code), 120

• O •

OAuth (Open Authentication), 133–135
 Obama, Barack, 13, 97, 125, 234–235, 239
 Obvious Corp. company, 11
 Odeo Web company, 11
 OH (overhead), 270
 O’Neal, Shaquille, 98, 224
 OneForty company, 3, 71, 126, 134,
 139–140, 214
 100TWT, 170
 online organization, 238–245
 Ono, Yoko, 228
 On/Off command, 119
 On/Off username command, 121–122
 Open Authentication (OAuth), 133–135
 Open Twitter API, 68, 71
 OpenBeak, 127, 152
 organization
 for creative purpose, 238–239, 243
 event planning, 243–245
 food and spirit enthusiast, 240
 how this book is organized, 4–5
 online, 238–245
 in real life, 238–245
 small scale, 240–241
 use of Twitter, 13
 Overheard meme, 161

• P •

passive data, 210
 password
 security, 26
 Twitter account, 21

- PDA
mobile clients for, 153
Twitter Web applications for, 127
- people. *See contacts*
- People Search function, 77
- Pepsi, 208
- permalink, 84
- permalink URL, 52
- permission, revoking, 135
- personal use of Twitter
being yourself, 180–181
maximizing privacy and safety, 193
mixing with business interest, 179–181
private tweet consideration, 178
protecting personal details, 192–193
Twitter presence considerations, 178
username for, 176
- photo
editing for avatar, 33
uploading, 34
- photo-sharing service, 251
- Photoshop program, 37
- Picasa, 64
- Ping, 136
- Pipes, 132
- Pistachio Consulting, 14, 24–25,
97, 132, 201
- Plaxo, 157
- plug-in, 66–67
- PocketTwit client, 71, 127, 153, 258
- podcasting, 11
- politics
social change initiative, 234–235
use of Twitter, 90, 97
- pornography, 106
- positive/negative tweet,
searching by, 142
- PostSecret Web site, 101
- PowerPoint (Microsoft), 37
- PR practitioner, 198
- preacher, use of Twitter, 13
- pre-made background, 35
- presentation, business, 213
- presidential election, 235, 239
- print media, 246
- privacy, personal use of Twitter, 193
- private list, 113
- private messaging, 48–50. *See also DM*
- private tweet, 178
- proactivity, 212
- problems, admitting to, 211–212
- product and promotion offering,
203–204
- Profile link (Home screen), 42
- profile page
background, 35–36
being authentic, 188–189
biography, 37
business, 36, 196
changing avatar, 34
color, 36
customizing, 32–37
expanding by using
background images, 37
personal considerations, 33
searching specific tweet, 56
tweet history, 112
- promotion and product offering, 203–204
- public list, 113
- public meeting, 216
- public page. *See profile page*
- public relations, 198–199
- Public Timeline, 52–53
- publishing company, 96



- Qik channel, 235, 251
- question
accessing the experts, 228
asking good, 226–227
fact checker, 228
- Quicken, 260

quiet time, tweet, 39–40
Quit and Stop command, 122
Qwitter, 171

• R •

Radian6, 163–164
readability, about this book, 3
real world, moving from Twitter into, 206–207
Really Simple Syndication. *See* RSS feed
recommendation, 229
record keeping, 171
RentWiki, 125
@replies feature
about, 46–47
compared with direct message, 48
compared with Reply icon, 47
defined, 41, 270
direct message compared to, 48
displaying/not displaying, 47
illustration, 85
joining conversation, 48
links associated with, 85
RSS feed, 65
shorthand code for sending, 119
Twitter and Facebook comparison, 16
viewing all, 47
Reply arrow, 84
Reply icon, compared with @replies, 47
research, conducting, 210
resort and hotel business, 96
restaurant, 13, 241
retail business, 95
retweeted (RT)
about, 16, 45
commentary on, 87
crediting original poster, 250
crediting yourself for, 86
defined, 270–271
etiquette, 87
hashtag, 132

how to, 86
a link, 86
old-fashioned way of, 87
Retweet feature, 87
Rick Sanchez Direct, 101
river. *See* update stream
Rose, Amanda, 223, 232
Rose, Kevin, 169, 186
RPM Challenge, 243
RSS (Really Simple Syndication) feed
access, 116–117
dedicated application of Web site to
handle, 131
defined, 130
grabbing, 131
@replies, 65
sending back to Twitter, 131–132
sending items to Twitter as individual
tweet, 116–117
subscribing to, 66
using to pull in Twitter stream, 130
as way of using Twitter, 64–65
RT. *See* retweeting

• S •

Sacca, Chris, 223
Safari, 66
safety
meeting people in public, 216
through personal use of Twitter, 193
Sanchez, Rick, 101
Sareilles, Sara, 98
school, 268
Schwartz, Jason, 102
Schwarzenegger, Arnold, 97
scrapbooking, 171
screenshot, 3
search engine optimization (SEO), 24–25
Search text box, 43

- searching. *See also* Twitter Search
advanced, 78–79
for desktop client, 150
following people by, 31
Google search engine, 77
keyword, 78
for people to follow, 77–78
shorthand code list, 122–123
for specific tweet, 56–58
topics of interest, 221–222
users to add to lists, 113
- Searls, Doc (*The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual*), 201
- Seashort image editor, 37
- SecretTweet, 101
- security
API (application programming interface), 133
password, 26
third-party application, 133
- Seesmic, 18, 127, 148, 256–257
- Seesmic Mobile, 153
- SEO (search engine optimization), 24–25
- Settings link (Home screen), 42
- Shake Shack, 102
- Shareaholic tool, 112
- sharing
data, 238
information, 229–230
links, 187–188
multimedia, 260
as use of Twitter, 12
- The Sharing Foundation, 233, 240
- SHIFT Communications, 28
- Short Message Service (SMS), 10, 38. *See also* text messaging
- shorthand code
caution of using, 118
direct message, 118
favorites, 119
following people, 118–119
- Get command, 121
- Invite command, 122
- Leave command, 121
- nudge, 120
- On/Off command, 119
- On/Off username command, 121–122
- Quit and Stop command, 122
- @ - reply, 119
- stats, 120–121
- viewing code list online, 122–123
- Whois command, 121
- sidebar, Twitter screens, 43–44
- Sign Out link (Home screen), 42
- Sign Up Now button, 20
- signature line, e-mail, 31
- signing up for Twitter
from cellphone, 22
from computer, 19–22
Create My Account button, 21
Terms of Service, 21
- small scale organizing, 240–241
- smartphone
clients, 257–258
- Twitter Web applications for, 127
- Windows Mobile-based, 153
- SMS (Short Message Service), 10, 38.
See also text messaging
- social capital, 178, 203
- social cause, 190
- social change initiatives
charity event, 232–233
citizen journalism, 245–252
data-sharing, 238
FEMA, 236
global change initiative, 231–238
helping others, 237–238
natural disaster, 236–237
politics, 234–235
- Social Media for Nonprofits, 233
- Social Media for Social Change, 223, 233
- social network
adding tweet to, 135–136
badge code, 135–136
defined, 135
Twitter as, 10
- social object theory, 221
- SocialMedian, 157
- SocialOomph, 137
- SocialThing, 112, 157

Southwest Air, 266
South by Southwest Interactive Festival (SXSWi), 11, 91
spam, 28, 82, 106, 199, 207, 271
Spears, Britney, 13, 90, 267
splash page, 19–20
Spokeo, 157
Star icon, 45
Starbucks, 14
stats, 43, 120–121
Stewart, Martha, 92, 183
StockTwits, 261–262
Stone, Biz, 11, 233
Stop and Quit command, 122
stream. *See* update stream
student, 268
successful people, surrounding yourself with, 205
Summize, 29. *See also* Twitter Search
support system, Twitter as, 215–216
SXSWi (South by Southwest Interactive Festival), 11, 91
syndicated material, 100–101

• T •

tag cloud, 161
tag word, 158–159
TalkShoe voice post, 235
Taste Live, 242, 267
teacher, 268
TechCrunch, 233
technological change, 139
technological growing pains, 219
template, profile page background, 37
Terms of Service, 21, 99, 106
text messaging
adjusting settings, 38–40
compared with tweeting, 10
controlling message-flow, 39–40
mobile phone setup, 62–63
receiving tweets, 39

selecting notifications, person by person, 40
setting tweet quiet time, 39–40
setting up to receive tweet, 126–127
turning tweet notifications on/off, 40
Twitter sign up, 22
unlimited plan, 63, 126
as way of using Twitter, 62–64
themed lists, 113
third-party applications
about, 17–18, 132–133
current favorites, 133
security concerns, 133
social-media service compatibility, 134
as way to use Twitter, 65
Time magazine, 9
timeline. *See* update stream
timestamp, update, 44
TinyTwitter, 127, 153
TinyURL, 155
topics of interest, 221–222
Topify, 129–130
tornado, 236
TouchBase blog, 97
tourism and travel business, 96
transparency, 211–212
Trash Can / Delete icon, 45, 58
travel
and tourism business, 96
as way to use Twitter, 266
Trending Topics
about, 144
adjusting scope, 159
defined, 43
geolocation feature, 159
as good resource for global events, 159
how to use, 158–159
keeping up, 158–159
pros and cons, 159
tag word, 158–159
tracking trends, 57
Tripp, Gradon, 233
troll, 191
trust-building, 228

- TwapperKeeper, 146
Tweecious, 262
tweep, 271
tweeple, 107, 271
tweet
 adding to social network, 135–136
 aggregate, 101
 authentic, 186–191
 auto, 137
 automatic translation, 132
 character limit, 10
 defined, 1, 17, 271
 deleting, 58
 direct message compared to, 48
 erasing your tracks, 116
 famous, viewing, 44
 frequency of posts, 108–109
 getting started, 31–32
 indexing, 52
 links in, 109–111
 location-based, 114–115
 marking as favorite, 50–51
 private, 178
 quiet time, 39–40
 searching specific, 56–58
tweetaholic, 271
Tweetake, 170
TweetDeck, 18, 65–66, 133, 147–149,
 255–256
TweetGrid, 159
Tweetie, 18, 68, 71, 256
Tweetie 2, 127
Tweetree, 264
TweetScan, 111
TweetStats, 182
tweetup
 defined, 213, 271
 impromptu, 223, 238
 making new friends through, 222–224
Tweetsworks, 262
Twellow, 28, 158, 169, 258
Twellowhood, 170
12Seconds, 134
Twestival, 223, 232
Twhirl, 18, 65, 133–134, 256
Twidroid, 153
twinfluence, 107, 184, 271
Twinkle application, 68
Twistory, 112
TwitBacks, 37
TwitDroid, 258
TwitGrid, 263
TwitPic, 229, 235, 251, 260, 272
Twitroid, 71, 127
TwitScoop, 143–144, 161
TwitStory, 160
Twittelator, 127
Twittelator Pro, 71
Twitter
 business use, 14
 defined, 272
 Facebook compared to, 16
 history of, 11
 individual use, 12–13
 instant messaging compared with, 10
 organization use, 13
 origin of name, 18
 reasons for using, 12–13
 uses for, 1
Twitter Development portal, 68
Twitter Fan Wiki, 154
Twitter feed, 131
Twitter For Dummies Web site, 2
Twitter Karma, 168–169
Twitter Lists. *See lists*
Twitter Search. *See also* searching
 about, 29
 accessing, 29
 advanced search, 140–142
 fast search, 78–79
 finding people to follow, 77
 as listening tool, 165–167
 results page, 56–57
 searching by date, 142
 searching by location or distance, 142
 searching by positive/negative tweet, 142
 searching by user, 142
 searching by word, 141–142
Twitter squatter, 272

Twitter stream, 272
 Twitter Taste Live, 242, 267
 Twitterati, 223, 272
 TwitterBerry, 69–70, 152
 TwitterCounter, 129
 twitterer, 12, 92
 Twitterfeed, 259–260
 TwitterFon application, 68, 71, 127
 TwitterFox, 66
 TwitterGrader, 170, 184, 264
 twitterholic, 271
 Twitterific, 127, 134, 149
 TwitterKarma, 55
 TwitterLess, 171
 TwitterLocal tool, 27, 170
 Twittermail, 129–130
 TwitterPatterns, 36
 Twitterrific, 65, 68, 133
 twitterverse, 28, 272
 Twitterville, 76
 Twittervision, 171
 TwitToday, 127
 Twitula, 127
 Twobile, 127, 153
 TwtVite, 259
 Tyson Foods, 243

• U •

unconventional twitterer, 92
 underscore character (_), 24
 unique resource locator (URL), 10, 52
 update stream
 defined, 1
 flow of, 45
 permalink, 44
 timestamp, 44
 uploading photo, 34
 up-to-date information, 43
 URL shortener
 about, 110–111, 154–155
 added services, 155
 defined, 109

URL, 10, 52
 U.S. Democratic Congressional Campaign Committee, 97
 U.S. National Republican Congressional Committee, 97
 U.S. presidential election, 235
 username
 for businesses, 25, 176
 case-sensitivity, 24
 changing, 177
 e-mail address related, 24
 length consideration, 25
 nickname as, 25
 for personal use, 176
 picking, 24–25
 searching by, 142
 selection considerations, 24
 SEO (search engine optimization), 25
 Twitter account, 21
 use of real name versus nickname, 192–193
 Utterli, 229, 235

• V •

Verified Account, 93–94
 Verified Logo, 94
 video, 171, 247, 251
 video-chat, 148
The View, 245
 VIP notifications, 40
 voice post, 235
 volcano, 236
 volunteer, 240

• W •

Walken, Christopher, 106
 We Follow, 169
 weather events, 236
 Web site, putting Twitter on, 68
 Webisodes, 243
 Webmail software, 129

WebNotes tool, 245
WeFollow user list, 100
Weinberger, David (*The Cluetrain Manifesto: The End of Business As Usual*), 201
Welch, Jack, 263
Wescoat, Natasha, 205
“What are you doing?” question, 15
“What’s Happening?” box, 15, 31, 44
Wheaton, Wil, 98
White House, 97
Whois command, 121
widget, 67, 165
wildfire, 236
Williams, Evan, 11, 67, 118
Wilson, Rainn, 98
Windows mobile phone, 71, 127
Windows Mobile-based smartphone, 153
wine and spirits enthusiast, 241–242, 267
Winer, Dave, 131
Winfrey, Oprah, 90, 98, 205, 245

Wired News, 101
word, searching by, 142
Wordle, 161–162
WordPress, 10, 135

• X •

XMPP feed, 170
Xpenser, 260

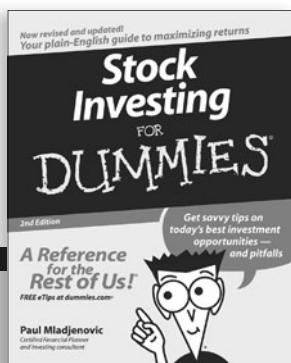
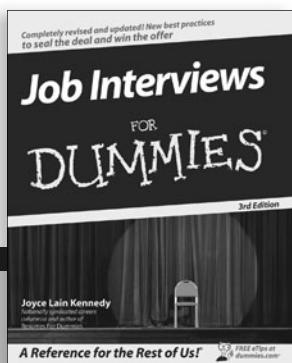
• Y •

YFrog, 260
yourself, being, 206
YouTube, 156, 205, 235

• Z •

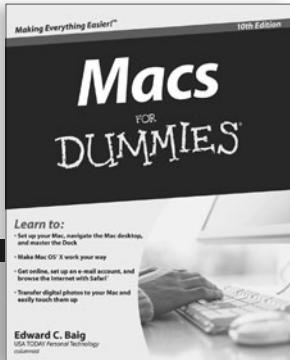
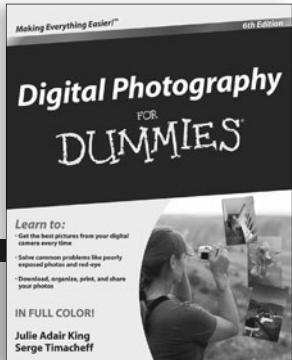
Zappos
CEO Tony Hsieh, 203
community-building, 209
promotion and product offering, 203
use of Twitter, 14, 94, 201

<u>Business/Accounting & Bookkeeping</u>	Laptops For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-27759-1	Gardening Gardening Basics For Dummies 978-0-470-03749-2	Hobbies/General Chess For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-8404-6
Bookkeeping For Dummies 978-0-7645-9848-7	Macs For Dummies, 10th Edition 978-0-470-27817-8	Organic Gardening For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-43067-5	Drawing For Dummies 978-0-7645-5476-6
eBay Business All-in-One For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-38536-4			Knitting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-28747-7
Job Interviews For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-17748-8	Cooking & Entertaining Cooking Basics For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-7645-7206-7	Green/Sustainable Green Building & Remodeling For Dummies 978-0-470-17559-0	Organizing For Dummies 978-0-7645-5300-4
Resumes For Dummies, 5th Edition 978-0-470-08037-5	Wine For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-0-470-04579-4	Green Cleaning For Dummies 978-0-470-39106-8	SuDoku For Dummies 978-0-470-01892-7
Stock Investing For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-40114-9	Diet & Nutrition Dieting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-4149-0	Green IT For Dummies 978-0-470-38688-0	Home Improvement Energy Efficient Homes For Dummies 978-0-470-37602-7
Successful Time Management For Dummies 978-0-470-29034-7	Nutrition For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-0-471-79868-2		Home Theater For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-41189-6
Computer Hardware BlackBerry For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-45762-7	Weight Training For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-471-76845-6	Health Diabetes For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-27086-8	Living the Country Lifestyle All-in-One For Dummies 978-0-470-43061-3
Computers For Seniors For Dummies 978-0-470-24055-7	Digital Photography Digital Photography For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-25074-7	Food Allergies For Dummies 978-0-470-09584-3	Solar Power Your Home For Dummies 978-0-470-17569-9
iPhone For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-42342-4	Photoshop Elements 7 For Dummies 978-0-470-39700-8	Living Gluten-Free For Dummies 978-0-471-77383-2	



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit www.dummies.com or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit www.wileyeurope.com or call (0) 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit www.wiley.ca or call 1-800-567-4797.

Internet Blogging For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-23017-6	Macintosh Mac OS X Snow Leopard For Dummies 978-0-470-43543-4	Parenting & Education Parenting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5418-6	Self-Help & Relationship Anger Management For Dummies 978-0-470-03715-7
eBay For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-49741-8	Math & Science Algebra I For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-55964-2	Type 1 Diabetes For Dummies 978-0-470-17811-9	Overcoming Anxiety For Dummies 978-0-7645-5447-6
Facebook For Dummies 978-0-470-26273-3	Biology For Dummies 978-0-7645-5326-4	Pets Cats For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5275-5	Sports Baseball For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-7645-7537-2
Google Blogger For Dummies 978-0-470-40742-4	Calculus For Dummies 978-0-7645-2498-1	Dog Training For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-8418-3	Basketball For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5248-9
Web Marketing For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-37181-7	Chemistry For Dummies 978-0-7645-5430-8	Puppies For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-03717-1	Golf For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-471-76871-5
WordPress For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-40296-2	Microsoft Office Excel 2007 For Dummies 978-0-470-03737-9	Religion & Inspiration The Bible For Dummies 978-0-7645-5296-0	Web Development Web Design All-in-One For Dummies 978-0-470-41796-6
Language & Foreign Language French For Dummies 978-0-7645-5193-2	Office 2007 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies 978-0-471-78279-7	Catholicism For Dummies 978-0-7645-5391-2	Windows Vista Windows Vista For Dummies 978-0-471-75421-3
Italian Phrases For Dummies 978-0-7645-7203-6	Music Guitar For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-9904-0	Women in the Bible For Dummies 978-0-7645-8475-6	
Spanish For Dummies 978-0-7645-5194-9	iPod & iTunes For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-39062-7		
Spanish For Dummies, Audio Set 978-0-470-09585-0	Piano Exercises For Dummies 978-0-470-38765-8		



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit www.dummies.com or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit www.wileyeurope.com or call (0) 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit www.wiley.ca or call 1-800-567-4797.



How-to? How Easy.

The screenshot shows the Dummies.com homepage. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like "Business & Careers", "Computers & Software", "Consumer Electronics", "Cooking & Entertaining", "Education & Languages", "Food & Drink", "Health & Fitness", "Home & Garden", "Hobbies", "Music & Creative Arts", "Personal Finance", "Photography & Video", "Relationships & Family", "Religion & Spirituality", "Sports & Outdoors", "Games", and "Travel". Below the navigation is a "Live Search" bar with the placeholder "Find the lowest gas prices wherever you go!" and a "Search" button. The main content area features several "Featured Videos": one titled "Creating a Morning Stretch Routine" showing a person stretching, and another titled "Trimming and Slicing Mushrooms" showing step-by-step instructions. There are also sections for "Featured Step-by-Steps", "Expert Help", and "Most Popular How-Tos". A sidebar on the right lists "Most Popular Topics" such as Digital Photography, Green Living, Fitness, Food & Drink, Crafts & Hobbies, Cleaning & Recipes, Healthy Eating, Personal Finance, Home iPod & iPhone, and Home Improvement. At the bottom, there's a "Visit Dummies.com" section with a link to "Go to www.Dummies.com" and a cartoon character pointing towards it.



From hooking up a modem to cooking up a casserole, knitting a scarf to navigating an iPod, you can trust Dummies.com to show you how to get things done the easy way.

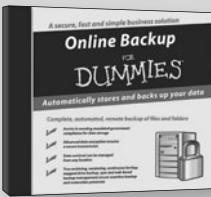
Visit us at Dummies.com



Dummies products make life easier!

DVDs • Music • Games •
DIY • Consumer Electronics •
Software • Crafts • Hobbies •
Cookware • and more!

For more information, go to
Dummies.com® and search
the store by category.



Mobile Apps FOR DUMMIES®

There's a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you'll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:

www.Dummies.com/go/mobile from your computer.

www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps from your phone.



Enter the fun, productive, supportive, and powerful world of Twitter!

What do you have to tell the world in 140 characters? With this guide, you'll figure out what to say as you use Twitter to enrich your life and your business. It walks you through all the opportunities available with this social networking tool. You'll quickly gain a strong understanding of the Twitter landscape and begin tweeting like a pro.

- ***Get down to the basics*** — figure out how to find your friends, invite them to Twitter, and start communicating with them in public and in private
- ***Follow and be followed*** — determine how to search for the sorts of people you want to follow and how you can start communicating with them in a way that makes sense
- ***Put Twitter into high gear*** — learn all the ways that you can interact with the Twitter interface, from desktop clients to mobile phone tricks to shorthand commands
- ***Cultivate your presence*** — explore the different ways in which people, businesses, not-for-profits, and other organizations can use Twitter
- ***Make it work*** — take advantage of the many resources that are useful in getting Twitter to work best for you



Open the book and find:

- How to sign up, pick a name, and invite contacts
- Tips for sending private messages
- Steps for building a company relationship
- Tricks of the Twitter gurus
- Ways to share your tweets through social networking
- All about staying on the cutting edge of Twitter
- Techniques for finding your tweet voice
- How to connect with people and make new friends

Go to Dummies.com®
for videos, step-by-step examples,
how-to articles, or to shop!

For Dummies®
A Branded Imprint of


\$21.99 US / \$25.99 CN / £16.99 UK

ISBN 978-0-470-76879-2



5 2 1 9 9
9 7 8 0 4 7 0 7 6 8 7 9 2

Laura Fitton is founder of oneforty.com, a portal for Twitter services, and a top independent Twitter advisor. **Michael E. Gruen** assists startup companies to get off the ground with the help of cutting-edge technologies. **Leslie Poston** is founder of Uptown Uncorked, a firm offering training and consulting on social media marketing.